This book is no orphan
So don't adopt the damn thing
Samuel Fromson

IV Form

Latin IV

Mr Waldrip
CAESAR IN GAUL

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGÉ

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON
ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO
PREFACE

THE modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of Ritchie's "The Argonauts," Nepos's "Hannibal," and a simple biography of Cæsar.

The text, which is Meusel's with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the "Gallic War" and interesting episodes from the remaining books, with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. To remove a real obstacle to progress, the long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in the direct form. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form, for purposes of comparison and for the use of such teachers as prefer a more strenuous course. The text closes with Cæsar's account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the "Civil War," and events that immediately follow. These will be found particularly valuable for sight work; they are provided with footnotes and special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the "Gallic War."
In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Cæsar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses the fundamental constructions. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil’s imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings.

This book covers the requirements of the New York Syllabus. The special vocabularies of one thousand words prescribed by the Syllabus for the first and second years are reprinted in a form valuable for drill. Provision is made, also, for the study of the formation and derivation of words, as suggested in the New York course.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
# CONTENTS

## INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>The Life of Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Gaul, Britain, and Germany</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Roman Military Affairs</td>
<td>xxv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## RITCHIE, THE ARGONAUTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xli</td>
<td>The Argonauts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NEPOS, THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ivii</td>
<td>The Life of Hannibal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>The Life of Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## THE GALLIC WAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Book I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Book II</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Book III</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Selections from Book V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>138</td>
<td>Selections from Book VI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Selections from Book VII</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## THE CIVIL WAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>167</td>
<td>Selections from Book III</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE FROM BOOKS I AND II OF THE GALLIC WAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## NOTES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>213</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISBN</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>305</td>
<td>A. Declensions and Conjugations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342</td>
<td>B. Syntax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENTS</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN COMPOSITION</td>
<td>405</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN WORD LIST</td>
<td>447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD LIST</td>
<td>448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WORD FORMATION</td>
<td>469</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES</td>
<td>473</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabularies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Latin</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin-English</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical Index</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illustration</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surrender of Vercingetorix to Cæsar (In colors)</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus</td>
<td>xii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Remains</td>
<td>xxii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman Legionary Soldier</td>
<td>xxiv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castra Romana</td>
<td>xxxv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General View of Siege Operations</td>
<td>xxxvii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hannibal</td>
<td>lvi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Assassination of Cæsar, 44 B.C. (In colors)</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar Imperator</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est&quot;</td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besançon (Vesontio)</td>
<td>41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference between Cæsar and Ariovistus, King of the Germans</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnatum est</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Reliquos sub corona vendidit &quot;</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; Milites nostri in castra inruperunt&quot;</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing of the Romans on the Coast of Britain (In colors)</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Druid Sacrifice</td>
<td>144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Germans</td>
<td>148</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alise-Sainte-Reine (Alesia)</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar Consul</td>
<td>170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus</td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ides of March (In colors)</td>
<td>305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Map/Plan Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gallia Antiqua</td>
<td>viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Route of Hannibal</td>
<td>lix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 58 B.C.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Helvetii</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Campaign against Ariovistus</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 57 B.C.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle on the Aisne (Axona)</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Nervii</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octodurus and the Surrounding Territory</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Veneti and Neighboring Coast Region</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 55 B.C.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second Invasion of Britain, 54 B.C.</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 52 B.C.</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defeat of Vercingetorix at the Vingeanne</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 48 B.C.</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C.</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE: The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.
INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

THIS is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history—Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

I. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar’s birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar’s time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean
INTRODUCTION

Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. Political Conditions and Parties

At the time of Cæsar’s birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome: the nobility, or aristocracy (optimātēs), and the democratic, or popular, party (populārēs). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The optimātēs, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all optimātēs. The two great political leaders during Cæsar’s early years were Sulla for the optimātēs, and Marius for the populārēs. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.

Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator
for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimātēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. Cæsar's Political Affiliations

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Æneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."
4. Cæsar’s Education and Training

Cæsar’s early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Cæsar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Cæsar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade’s life. His education for the highest offices was ample.

5. Roman Political Offices

The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of quæstor, aedile, and prætor.

The quæstor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty quæstors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The aedile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very
A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS
fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the aediles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of aediles was four.

The praetor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of praetors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the praetorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-praetor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called pro-praetors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. Cæsar's Political Career

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quaestor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was aedile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,
and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the ædileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was prætor, and during the following year served as proprætor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his ædileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the optimætes, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Cæsar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Cæsar's moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the optimætes. Backed by the triumvirate Cæsar gained the consulship without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.
7. **Cæsar in Gaul**

Cæsar’s restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political “slate,” agreed that Cæsar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Cæsar’s term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Cæsar tells us in this book.

8. **The Civil War**

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Cæsar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,
made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar’s reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reëstablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar’s career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate’s demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning
of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led
to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar’s grandnephew
and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he
had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the
interest of good government, and began the construction of
many remarkable public works.

10. The Conspiracy and Assas
sination

In spite of all political disturb-
ances the Romans had always
been proud of their republican in-
stitutions, and from the time that
the Tarquins had been expelled
they had repudiated the idea of
royalty. Now Cæsar’s unlimited
power and his readiness in using
it began to breed apprehension
and suspicion. There were ru-
mors that he wanted to be king
in name, as he already was in fact.
This resulted in a conspiracy to
assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius.
These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic
and liberty, calling themselves in fact liberātorēs, attacked Cæ-
sar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of
March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.

II. Cæsar’s Personal Appearance

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius
Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked.
Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty
years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Caesar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages 1, 11, and 170.

12. Cæsar's Accomplishments and Character

Cæsar's accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar's orders were barbarians—Gauls and Germans—for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He
certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

13. Cæsar as a Writer

Cæsar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

14. Conclusion

In the following pages are presented such parts of Cæsar’s works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of
their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. Important Events in Cæsar's Life

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100 B.C.</td>
<td>Born, July 12th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83 B.C.</td>
<td>Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80-78 B.C.</td>
<td>Serves with the army in Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76-75 B.C.</td>
<td>Studies oratory at Rhodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 B.C.</td>
<td>Quaestor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 B.C.</td>
<td>Ædile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 B.C.</td>
<td>Pontifex Maximus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 B.C.</td>
<td>Prætor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 B.C.</td>
<td>Proprætor in Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 B.C.</td>
<td>Forms the First Triumvirate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 B.C.</td>
<td>Consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58-49 B.C.</td>
<td>Proconsul in Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 B.C.</td>
<td>The trouble with Pompey begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 B.C.</td>
<td>Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48 B.C.</td>
<td>The battle of Pharsalia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 B.C.</td>
<td>The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 B.C.</td>
<td>The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

I. GAUL

The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or Citerior Prōvincia, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar’s time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also Ulterior Prōvincia or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar’s attention.

The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar’s province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (Libera Gallia). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.
GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants; 2, military standard; 4, bronze trumpet; 5, iron boss of shield; 6, iron fastening; 7, sword-hilt and belt; 8, iron helmet; 9, iron belt-chain
The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also
used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore great horns and grotesque images of beasts.

2. Britain

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before. The people that he found there differed but little from those of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for almost a hundred years.

3. Germany

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown, and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is the first writer to give an account of Germany and the Germans. His description of this country and its inhabitants, in Books IV and VI of the "Commentaries," is full of interest.
A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Caesar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Caesar employs.

1. The Legion

The smallest division of the Roman army was the century, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men; two centuries made a maniple of 200 men; three maniples made a cohort of 600 men; and ten cohorts made a legion of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Caesar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows:

1 century (centuria) ............................................. 60 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple (manipulus) ......................... 120 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort (cohors) .............................. 360 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion (legio) ............................... 3600 men

The legion (of about 3600 men) was the regular unit of the infantry force of the army.
2. **The Cavalry**

Caesar's cavalry (*equitātus, equitēs*) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into *ālæ* of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (*decuriōnēs*).

3. **The Auxiliaries**

By the word *auxilia* Caesar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these *auxilia* were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (*militēs levis armātūrae*); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Caesar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

4. **The Artillery**

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called *tormenta*. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (*torqueō, tortus*) of rope, sinews, or hair.
They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar:

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

5. The Baggage Train

*Impedimenta* is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carri*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*. 
6. The Officers

a. Imperātor. The chief officer was the dux bellī, who after his first victory was called imperātor.

b. Lēgātī. The lēgātī were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. Quaestōrēs. The quaestōrēs were officers elected annually by the people. A quaestor attended each imperātor in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

d. Tribūnī. In each legion were six tribūnē militum. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the
nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their inefficiency was such that Cæsar transferred their military duties to the legātī, and employed them in an administrative capacity.

e. Centuriones. The centuriō, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called primus, or primipilus, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.

7. The Standards

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, aquila (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the vexillum, which was also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.
INTRODUCTION

The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.

8. The Music

The bucina, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The tuba, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the cornū, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The lituus, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.

9. Equipment of the Legionary Soldiers

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Cæsar’s main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the lōrica. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the lorica, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls insignia. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the umbō, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is scūtum (see p. 128).

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, gladius, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, pilum, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The pilum took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

NOTE. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.
d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, cibāria, and two stakes, vālli, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called sarcina (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word frūmentum was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.
No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, castra, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the porta prætòria facing the enemy, the porta decumāna in the rear, the porta principālis dextra on the right side, and the porta principālis sinistra on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the via principālis. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their
INTRODUCTION

attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (*pretorium*).

As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, *fossa*, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, *agger*, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, *vallum*, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

11. The March

An ordinary day's march was about fifteen miles. Cæsar, however, made many forced marches, *magna itinera*, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, *agmen primum*, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, *agmen novissimum*. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own *impedimenta*; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (*impedimenta*), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be *expeditae*. See page 45.

12. The Battle

The usual order of battle was what was called the *acīēs triplex*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the
CASTRA ROMANA

A, via principalis
B, via decumana
C, porta praetoria
D, porta decumana
E, porta principalis dextra
F, porta principalis sinistra
G, praetorium
H, forum
K, K, tribunii
L, auxilia
M, ara
N, tribunal
O, equites
P, pedites
Q, fossa
R, via quintana
S, agger
T, intervallum
V, vallum
three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions occupied the center of the battle line, *media acries*, and the auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, *cornua*.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or in disorder, it was relieved by the second while it recovered for another charge. The third line was constantly held in reserve and only brought into action when the first two were hard pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

13. THE SIEGE

Caesar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods of taking a town:

**a. Oppugnatiō Repentīna.** If there seemed to be a chance of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege preparations. This was the *opponguntiō repentīna*. The *tormenta* were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls. When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush
GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; ss, testūdīnēs aggestitiae, protecting those leveling the ground; hh, agger; xx, pluteī, protecting those working on the agger; efg, line of pluteī, manned with archers and slingers; tt, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; ro, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; lq, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; f’g’, position of pluteī covering the beginning of the agger; mn, covered gallery through the agger; nnn, steps and platforms of the several stories.
INTRODUCTION

and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a testūdō (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

b. Oppugnātiō. If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, oppugnātiō, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, agger, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the agger were protected by lines of large standing shields, pluteī, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called vineae, extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by tormenta standing
behind pluteī. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, turres, which stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called testūdinēs or mūsculi, instead of by the pluteī. When the agger reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called falcēs mūrālēs. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, ariēs, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram’s head. This, swung under a vinēa, or in the lowest story of a turris, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the turris without the agger.

c. Obsidiō. When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (obsidiō) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.
14. The Ships

Two kinds of ships were used by Cæsar:

a. The war galleys, nāvēs longae (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (röstrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.

b. The freight and transport vessels, nāvēs onerāriae (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.
The voyage of the Argonauts is one of the most famous of Greek stories. Pelias had expelled his brother Aeson from his kingdom in Thessaly, and had attempted to take the life of Jason, the son of Aeson. Jason, however, escaped, and grew up to manhood in another country. At last he returned to Thessaly; and Pelias, fearing that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, sent him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis, supposing this to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (called after Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Aetes, king of Colchis, who was unwilling to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plow a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon’s teeth. Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. Medea then fled with Jason, and to delay the pursuit of her father, sacrificed her brother Absyrtus.

After reaching Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, and was, with her husband, expelled from the country. They removed to Corinth; and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glauce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle

ERANT ĕlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aeson, alter Peliās appellātus est. Ex hīs Aeson rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgni cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quidam tamen ex amicīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam

A careless shoestring


The Golden Fleece

Constituit igitur Pelías Iāsoni negotium dare ut hoc vellere potirētur: cum enim rēs esset magnī periculī, sperābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse: Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessivit, et quid fieri vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillīmam, negotium libenter suscēpit.

The building of the good ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficisci; dimīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, qui causam itineris docērent et diem certam convegniendi dicerent. Interea, postquam omnia quae sunt usui ad armandās nāvēs comportāri iussit, negotium dedit Argō cuidam, qui summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In his rēbus circiter decem diēs consūmpti sunt; Argus enim, qui operī praerat, tantam diligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum transportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō mari īti consuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.

The anchor is weighed

Interea ea diēs adpetēbat quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regionibus Graeciae multi, quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōrieae movēbat, undique conveniēbant.
hōc numerō Herculem ferunt fuisse et Orpheum, citharœ-dum praeclāriissimum, et Thēseum et Castorem et multōs aliōs, quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex his Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda pericula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quinquāgintā délēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem déduxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake

Nōn multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt qui in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicīm attigērunt, et ē nāvī ēgressi ā rēge illius regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ībi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam pauca milia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tēmpestās subītō coōrta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et ēn ēandem partem īnsulae unde nūper proiectī erant magnō cum periculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimicam vēnisse arbitrātī arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredi prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, qui cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam dīlūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

The loss of Hylas

Postridīē eius diēi Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca milia passuum prōgressus ante noctem Mysiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorās exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam
quam sēcum habērent iam déficere: quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram egressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; qui, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae fontem colēbant, cum iuvenem vidisset, ei persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vi abstulērunt.

Comitēs eīus, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī diū frūstrā quaerēbant; Herculēs autem 10 et Polyphēmus, qui vēstigia puerī longius secūti erant, ubi tandem ad litus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

*Dining made difficult*


*The Harpies beaten*

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem adpulērunt. Phineus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs finēs egressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Sciēbat

The Symplegades

libenter ēgérunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ērepti essent; scīebant enim nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēliciter ēvēnisse.

A heavy task

Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Eō cum nāvem 5 adpulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētvē sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est, et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod scīebat Iāsonem 10 nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, si Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dixisset sē ad omnia pericula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ēstendit. Primum iungendi erant duo taurī specīe horribili, 15 qui flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, his iūncitis, ager quidam arandus erat, et dentēs draconis serendi. His auditīs, Iāsōn, etsi rem esse summi periculi intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occasiōnem reī bene gerendae ēmītteret, negōtium suscēpit.

The magic ointment

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvit 20 eum tantum periculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn mōrerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte clam ex urbe ēvāsit; et post- 25 quam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum sūcō expressō ungumentum parāvit; quod vi suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfirmāret. Hōc factō Iāsoni ungumentum dedit: praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō isti labōrēs cōnficiendi
essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Iāsōn, etsi paene omnibus magnītūdine et viribus corporis antecellēbat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis reī mili-
tāris cōnstiterat), cēnēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn negle-

gendum esse.

*Sowing the dragon's teeth*

Ubi ea diēs vēnit quam rēx ad arandum agrum ēdixerat, Iāsōn ortā lūce cum sociis ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō taurī inclūsi erant : tum portīs apertīs taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficul-
tāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mirātus est ; nesciēbat enim filiam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus adspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit ; quā in rē tantam diligenti-
tiam praebuit ut ante meridiem tōtum opus cōnfecerit. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit : quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magna cum diligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsi essent virī armāti mirō quōdam modō gignerentur.

*A strange crop*

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfecerat : imperā-
verat enim ei Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gig-
erentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn lassitūdine examinātus quīētī sē trā-
didit, dum virī isti gignerentur. Pauçās hōrās dormiēbat ; sub vesperum tamen cē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēvē-
nisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit : nam in omnibus agrī partibus viri ingenti magnītūdine corporis, gladiis galeīsque armātī, mirum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omissendum esse putābat ; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa)
in medīōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrerunt, et cum quisque sībi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictis gladiis, inter sē pugnāre coeperunt, et cum hōc modō plurīmi occisi essent, reliqui volneribus cōnfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negotiō 5 interfectī sunt.

**Flight of Medea**

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, irā graviter commōtus est: intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore 10 periculō sī in rēgiā mānisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, insciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrīmē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit 15 eum nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisse. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendi audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam primum eam in nāve 20 suā āvectūrum.

**The seizure of the Fleece**

Postrīdiē eīus diēī Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmis contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus celātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et 25 sociīs ad mare relictīs, quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās contendit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus vellus quod quærēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vidit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis: nōn modo
enim locus ipse egregie et natura et arte munitus erat, sed etiam draco quidam specie terribili arborem custodiébat. At Médæa, quae, ut supra dēmonstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rānum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō infécit. Hoc factō, ad locum adpropinquāvit, et draco cōnem, qui faucibus apertis adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit: deinde, dum draco somnō oppressus dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Médēa quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

**Back to the Argo**


**Pursued by the angry father**

His rebus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnsidendērant, et sublātīs ancoris prīmā vigiliā solvērant: neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in ēō locō manēre. At rex Aeētēs, qui iam ante inimīcō in ēōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse,
saepe etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hoc dolore gravius exæsìt. Nàvem longam quam celerrimè dèduci iussìt, et militibus impositis fugientès insecútus est. Argonautae, qui scièbant rem in discrimine esse, omnibus viribus rëmis contèndèbant; cum tamen nàvis quà vehèbantur ingenti esset magnitudine, nòn eàdem celeritáte quà Colchi prògredi poterant. Quae cum ita essent, minimum àfuit quin à Colchìs sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam quò tèlum adici posset. At Mèdèa, cum vidisset quò in locò rès essent, paene omni spè dèpositá infandum hoc cónsiliùm cèpit.

A fearless expedient

Erat in nàve Argonautarùm filius quidam rëgis Aëtæae, nòmine Absyrtus, quem, ut supra dèmonstrávimus, Mèdèa ex urbe fugièns sècum abdúxerat. Hunc puerum Mèdèa cónstituit interficere, eò cónsiliò, ut membris eius in mare coniectis cursum Colchòrum impediret; scièbat enim Aëtèn, cum membra filì vidisset, nòn longius pròsecútùrum esse. Neque opiniò eam fefellit; omnia enim ita évènèrunt ut spèrāverat. Aëtès, ubi primum membra vidit, ad ea conligènda nàvem dètinèrì iussìt; dum tamen ea geruntur, Argo- nautae, nòn intermissò rëmigandi labòre, mox (quod nècesse fuit) ex cónspectù hostium remòtì sunt, neque prius fugere déstitèrunt quam ad flùmen Èridanum pervènèrunt. At Aëtès, nihil sìbi pròfutùrum esse arbitràtus si longius prògressus esset, animò dèmissò domum revertit, ut filì corpus ad sepul- tùram daret.

The bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multà pericula Iàsòn in eundem locum per- vènit unde òlim profectus erat. Tum è nàví ëgressus ad rëgem Peliam (qui rëgnùm adhùc obtinèbat) statim sè consonùlit, et vellere aureò mònstrató ab eò postulàvit ut rëgnùm
sibi trāderētur: Peliās enim pollicitus erat, si Iāsōn vellus ret tulisset, sē rēgnum ei trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fieri vellet ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem tristitiā tacitus permānsit; deinde ita locūtus est:

"Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quin suprēmus meus diēs adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vivam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, cum ego ē vitā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

Boiled mutton


A dangerous experiment

Dum filiae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdea ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, si vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēci ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās
conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbo." His auditis, filiae rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn ommittendum putāvērunt: patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt et membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hoc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērāverant: Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniūge suō rēgnnum accep-tūram esse: at civēs, cum intellexerent quō modō Peliās ic periisset, tantum scelus aeggē tulērunt: itaque Iāsone et Mēdēa ē rēgnō expulsis, Acastum rēgēm creāvērunt.

A fatal gift


Flight of Medea, and the death of Jason

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum summō cruciātū ad-fecta ē vitā excessit. His rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre atque
āmentiā impulsa filiōs suōs necāvit: tum magnum sibi fore periculum arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō periculō auxilium sibi ferret. Sōl autem his precibus com-
mōtus currum quendam mīsit, cui dracōnēs ālīs ĵnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa nōn omissendam tantam occāsionem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumīs ad urbem Athēnās pervēnīt. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum īnfēli-
cem oppressit.
HANNIBAL
Hannibal as a general

ANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Karthāginiēnsis. Si vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentīā quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūntās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque cum eō congressus est in Italīā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domi civium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvicit unius virtūtem.

His hatred of the Romans

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sic cōnservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō mari arma cōnātus sit īnferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmāni, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrāre darentque operam cōnsiliis clandestīnīs ut Hannibalem in suspicīōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsis corruptus alia atque anteā sentiret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent,
idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliis sēgregāri vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hoc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispānīam imperātor proficiscēns Karthāgīne, Iovi optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepīsem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre īnstītuerat, eamque cēteris remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvi ut nēmini dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē, sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris; cum qui-dem bellum parābis, tē ipsum fruṣtrāberis sī nōn mē in eō principem posueris.'

He takes Saguntum, and marches to Italy

CORNELIUS NEPOS

fécit, cum omnibus incolis confluxit; nèminem nisi victum dimísit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Italiam ab Galliā séiungunt, quās nèmō umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē sal-
tus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitu concidit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus īre posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

He defeats the Romans, and advances into Apulia

4. Conflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipione cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc ēōdēm Clastidi apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum īs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōfīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Apennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. 15 Hōc itinere adeō gravi morbō adficitur oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasimēnum cum exercitu insidiis circumven-

He outwits Quintus Fabius Maximus, and wins other battles

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nullo re-
sistente. In propinquīs urbi montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ībi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur,

Hannibal is recalled to Africa, and is defeated by Scipio

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipōnem, filium eius Scipōnis quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertīō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus cupidīt imperātiārūm bellum compōnere, quō valentiō postea congrēderētur. In conloquium convenit: condicionēs nōn convēnērant. Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et
duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā
circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī
simul cum eō ex acīe exsesserant, insidiāti sunt ei; quōs

nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmēti
5 reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novis dilēctibus paucis diēbus
multōs contrāxīt.

Peace between Rome and Carthage; Hannibal flees to Syria
7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthā-
giniēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs compossērunt. Ille nihilō
sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit usque
10 ad P. Sulpiciūm C. Aurēliūm cōnsulēs. His enim magis-
trātibus lēgāti Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt qui senātui
populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent quod cum iis pācem
fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simul-
que peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis essent captīvique

Hannibal aids Antiochus

8. At Hannibal annō tertīō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quinque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cyrēnaeōrum, si forte Karthāginiēnsēs ad bellum inducere posset Antiochī spē fidūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisciueret. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Pōeni rescīverunt, Māgōnem ēadēm quā frātrem absentem adversērunt poenā. Illī desperātis rēbus cum solvisserant nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē
Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque alii naufragiō, alii ā servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōn-
siliis eius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat, pro-
pius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperi di-
micāset. Quem etsī multa stultē
cōnāri vidēbat, tamen nūllā déseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs
nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque
adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylō mari cōnflīxit.
In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum sui superārentur,
ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

Hannibal goes to Crete

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubīo
accidisset sī sui fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortyōniōs
vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsiderāret. Vidit autem
vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi
quid prōvidisset, propter avaritiam Crētēnsium; magnam
enim sēcum pecūniām portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse
fāmam. Itaque capīt tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complū-
rēs complet plumbō, summās operīt aurō et argentō. Hās
praesentibus principibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simu-
lāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. Hīs in errō-
rem inductīs, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omni
suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abīcit.
Gortynii templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus iis tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

Hannibal in Pontus


He helps Prusias to defeat Eumenes

11. Tāli cohōrtātiōne militum factā classis ab utrisque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam sig-num pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis quō
locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn alicuī dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad inridendum eum pertinērent. Cuius reī etsi causam mirābātur neque reperīēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit.  


Hannibal is demanded by the Romans; he takes poison

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgāti Prūsiae Rōmæ apud T. Quinctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex īs ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscriptī, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, lēgātōs in
Bithyniam misérunt, in iis Flāmininum, qui ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique déderet. His Prūsiās negāre ausnū nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitiī esset; ipsī, si possent, comprehenderent: locum ubi esset facile inventūros. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgāti Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā 10 prōspiciēns Hannibali dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs adpārēre. Quī imperāvit ei ut omnēs forēs aedificī circumīret ac properē sībi nūntiāret num eōdem modo undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendīsset, sēnsit id nōn 15 fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sībi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīstinārum virtūtūm venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

The date of Hannibal’s death. His writings

gesta multi memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo qui cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vixērunt quam diū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre. Sed nōs tempus est huius libri facere finem et Rōmānō-rum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius, conlātis utrōrumque factīs, qui viri praeferendi sint possess iūdicāri.
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
CAESAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS


Deinde Caesar in urbem Milētum properāvit classemque contrāxit. Hāc classe praedōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 342 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.
II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar créatus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret, parvus quidam vicus cōnspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illic est locus glōriae?" "Mālo," respondit Caesar, "ibi prīmus esse quam Rōmae secundus."

Aedilis créatus Forum et Capitolīum porticibus ōrnāvit. Etiam multōs et amplōs lūdōs fēcit. His rēbus in grātiam populi vēnit, sed in aes aliēnum magnum incidit.

Cōnsul deinde cum Bibulō créatus, societātem cum Pompeīō et Crassō iūnixit. Lēgem quandam cum tulisset et huic lēgi senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum rettulit. Bibulus in Forum profectus ut lēgi resisteret, a populō armīs expulsus est, et ex eō tempore Caesar unus erat cōnsul.
III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL


Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a
Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. a
Partitive Genitive, § 76
abeō, -ire, -ī, -itūrus, go away
fābula, -ae, f. story

Accusative of Extent of Space, § 96
Ablative of Time within Which, § 119
Pronouns īdem, ipse, §§ 25, 136
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, relate
ōlim, adv. once upon a time, once

IV. CĀESAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Interea Crassus apud Parthōs interfactus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris filiae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērupit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhuc in Galliā dētīnēbātur, neque Rōmam redīre volēbat ut cūnsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scripsit
se petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amīcis Pompēī permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindicaret, Ĉaesar in Italiam rediit.

Ĉaesar ad bellum gerendum parātus, cum exercitu Rubi-

5 cōnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae finem, trānsiit. Hoc ad

flūmen paulum cōnstitit, et cōgitāns quantam rem inciperet,

"Etiam nunc," inquit, "revertī possuimus; quod si hoc

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agi necesse erit." Postrēmō autem cum verbis "Iacta est ālea" exercitum

10 trādūci iussit. Plūrimis urbibus occupātis, Brundisium con-
tendit, quō Pompēius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73
Accusative as Subject of Infini-
tive, § 92
Ablative Absolute, § 117
Demonstrative Pronouns hic, ille,
§ 134. a

Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204,
92, 204. a
Tenses of the Infinitive, Present;
Perfect, § 166. a, b
Indirect Questions, § 201
V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA


Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Genitive of Description, § 77
Dative with Compounds, § 84

Aegeyptus, -ī, f. Egypt
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachiī, n. Dyrrachium (in Epirus)

Parthī, -ōrum, m. the Parthians
(a people living near the Caspian Sea)
Rubīcō, -onis, m. the Rubicon (a river in northern Italy)
vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, avenge

quamquam, conj. although
VI. CAESAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN TO ROME

VII. THE REFORMS OF CAESAR. HIS AMBITIONS


Ablative of Separation, § 101
Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160–162
Clauses of Result introduced by ut or ut nōn, § 179

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctūrus, rise
corrigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, correct
diādēma, -atis, n., royal crown
dictātor, -ōris, m., dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177
Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187.1

fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl., the calendar
Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., of March
merx, mercis, f., merchandise
peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj., foreign
repetundae, -ārum, f. pl., extortion
sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessūrus, sit
senātōrius, -a, -um, adj., senatorial
VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH


Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130
Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183
Causal Clauses introduced by cum, § 189

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators
fātālis, -ē, adj., fated, hence dangerous
haruspex, -icis, m. a soothsayer
iste, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron. this, that (referring to the person addressed)

Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184
Temporal Clauses introduced by cum, § 194. 2
Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

prōsiliō, -īre,-ui, leap forward
pugiō, -ōnis, m., short dagger, poniard
toga, -ae, f., toga (the outer garment of the Romans)
umerus, -i, m. the upper arm, the shoulder
visus, -ūs, m. an apparition, vision
IX. THE CHARACTER OF CÆSAR

Caesar, si potestās délīgendi sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam prīdiē quam occīsus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amīcis conlātō, dixit repentinam mortem esse suā quidem sententīā commodissimam.


Predicate Genitive, § 73. a
Two Accusatives, Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94
asper, -era, -erum, adj., harsh, savage, cruel, fierce
Cīcerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero (the great orator)
clēmēns, -entis, adj., mild, merciful

Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114
Ablative of Respect, § 115
Concessive Clauses with cum, § 192
dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, seize, discover
laudātiō, -ōnis, f., praise, eulogy
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
optō,-āre,-āvi,-ātus, desire, pray for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CÆSAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre plēnō, nigris oculis, capite calvō. Quam calvīti dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe inimīcis iōcō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae, quod ei senātus dēcrēverat, libenter recept

Ablative of Description or Quality, § 116
Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love
calvitium, calvītī, n., baldness
calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald
dēfōrmītās, -ātis, f., disﬁgurement
equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ride (on horseback)
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, upset, overthrow
excelsus, -a, -um, adj., tall, high
gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wear

Gerund (an active verbal noun), § 223. 1–4
Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. a–d

iocus, -ī, m., jest
laurea, -ae, f., laurel wreath
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black, dark
nō, nāre, nāvī, ——, swim
persaepe, adv., very often
sōbrius, -a, -um, adj., sober, in one’s senses
ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make use of
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR IMPERATOR
THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gallia, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam qui ipsōrum lingua Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, à Belgis Matrona et 5 Sēquana dividit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimeque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

11
The boundaries of each

Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodanō; continetur Garumnā flumine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Séquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix, the Helvetian, plans to invade Gaul


The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: unā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Séquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facilē fīnitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 58 B.C.
THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE
(See chapters 6-8)
They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. His rebus adducti et auctóritáte Orgetorígis permóti cón-
stituërunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinérent comparáre: iúmentórum et carrórum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sêmentês quam maximás facere, ut in itinere cópiás frúmenti suppeteret, cum proximís civitátıbus pácem et amicitiam cón-
firmáre. Ad eás réis cónficiendás biennium sibi satis esse dúxérunt; in tertium annum profectiónem lège cónfirmanit.

Orgetorix is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eás réis cónficiendás Orgetorix dux dèligitur. Is légá-
tiónem ad civitátıes suscépit. In eó itinere persuádet Cas-
ticó, Catamantáloedis filió, Sëquanó, cuius pater régnum in Sëquanís multós annós obtinuerat et á senátū populí Rómáni amicus appellátus erat, ut régnum in civitáte suá occupáret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorígí Haeduó, frátrí Diviciáci, qui eó tempore principátum in civitáte obtinébat ac maximé plébi acceptus erat, ut idem cónárétur persuádet, eique filiam suam in mátrimónium dat.

Perfacile factú esse illis probat cónāta perícere, propreá quod ipse suae civitátıis imperium obtentúrus esset: nôn esse dubium quin tótius Galliae plúrimum Helvéttií possent; sé suis cópiís suóque exercitú illis régna conciliátúrum cón-
firmat. Hác óratióne adducti inter sé fidem et iús iúrandum dant, et régnó occupató per trés potentissímos ac firmissí-
mós populós tótius Galliæ sése potíri posse spérant.

Orgetorix is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea réis est Helvétiíis per indicium ēnúntiáta. Móribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgérunt. Dam-
nátum poenam sequi oportébat ut igní cremárétur.
Diē cōnstitūtā causae dicitōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam diceret sē ēripuit.

**His death**

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinem inveniet hominum ex agris magistrātūs coēgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

*The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey*

10 Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnātur, ut ē finibus suīs exēant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditionis spē sublātā, parātiōnēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molitā cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

*They are joined by other tribes*

Persuādent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimīs, uti eōdem āūis cōnsiliō, oppidis suīs vicīisque exūstis, ēnā cum eis proficiscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

*The two possible routes are described*

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Īūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut
facile perpaucri prohibère possent; alterum per provinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod

THE JURA PASS (PAS DE L’ÉCLUSE)

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllis locīs vadō trānsitur.

They decide to go through the Province

Cæsar takes measures to stop them

7. Cæsari cum id nüntiåtum esset eös per prövinciam nos-tram iter facere cönäri, mätürat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriörem contendit et ad Genävam pervenit. Prövinciae tötí quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omninö in Galliä ulteriöre legiö üna); pontem qui erat ad Genävam iübet rescindi.

They send an embassy to Cæsar to ask his permission

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvëtiī certiörës facti sunt, lēgä-tös ad eum mittunt nöbilissimös civitätis, cuius lēgätiönis Nammëius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinëbant, qui 10 dicerent 'sibi esse in animö sine üllö maleficiö iter per prö-vinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habërent nüllum; rogäre ut eius voluntätē id sibi facere liceat.'

Cæsar puts them off to gain time

Cæsar, quod memoriä tenēbat L. Cassium cönsulem occi-sum exercitumque eius ab Helvëtiis pulsum et sub iugum 15 missum, concédendum nön putäbat; neque hominës inimicö animö, datä facultätē per prövinciam itineris faciundi, tem-perätürös ab iniuriä et maleficiö existimäbat. Tamen, ut spatium intercédere posset, dum militës quös imperäverat convenirent, lēgätiis respondit diem së ad déliberandum 20 sämptürum: si quid vellent, ad Íd. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Intereä eä legiöne quam sécum habëbat militibusque qui ex prövinciä convënerant, à lacü Lemannö, qui in flümen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iüräm, qui finës Séquanörum
ab Helvetiiis dividit, milia passuum undeviginti mūrum, in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

**The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back**

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ùllī per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvetii, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūntīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, allī vadis Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūniōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi, hoc cōnātū dēstīrunt.

**Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Hāduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory**

Cæsar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Cæsari renuntiátur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē à Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pe-riculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimicōs, locis patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriorūm Galliām per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibus ōre contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāioceli et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūrībus his proeliīs pulsis, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hi sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmi.

The Helvetii ravage the country of the Haedui

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rō-
mānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostri
agri vāstāri, liberi in servitūtem abdūci, oppida expugnāri
nōn dēbuerint.'

The Haedui and their neighbors ask Cæsar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessārii et cōnsanguineī 5
Haeduōrum, Cæsarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs
agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item
Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque ha-
bēbant, fugā sē ad Cæsarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi
praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adduc-
tus Cæsar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus for-
tūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenirent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fines Haeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut ocu-
līs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possīt. Id Helvētīi 15
ratibus ac lintribus iūncīs trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs
Cæsar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs
id flūmen trādūnxisse, quārtam fēre partem citrā flūmen
Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus
ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnīt quae nōndum 20
flūmen trānsierat.

Cæsar attacks and destroys the Tigurini, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantēs adgressus magnam partem
eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in pro-
ximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinūs; nam
omnis civītās Helvētīa in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. 25
And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnслиō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum públicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius soceri L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisonem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proelīō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar crosses the Saōne and receives a Helvetian embassy


Divicio begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: *"Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi ēōs tū, Caesar, cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sin bellō persequi persevērābis, reminiscere et veteris in-commodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei qui flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; nōs

* Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 199 ff.
Caesar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: *'Eō mihi minus dubitātionis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorāverunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius fero, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērant; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sībi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cāvēre; sed eō deceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timēndum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, memoriām ēpōnēre possunt?

"Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam dīū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, ēōdem pertinet. Cōnsuērant enim dī immortalēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

"Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam."

Divicō respondit: *"Ita Helvētii ā maiōribus suīs institūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō dīcessit.
Caesar's cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō die castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecūti, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Cesar follows

Quō proelīō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multītūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proelīō nostrōs laccersere coepērunt. Caesar suōs a proelīō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīnum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs milibus passuum interestet.

The Hædui fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē pollicitiē fāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arari nāvibus subvexerat propterēa minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Hæduī: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Caesar is embarrassed and upbraids the Hæduan chiefs

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem įnstāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiām in castrīs habēbat,—in
his Diviciáco et Liscó, qui summó magistrátui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduí, qui créatur annuus et vitae necisque in suós habet potestátem,—graviter eös accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agrís súmi possit, tam necessárió tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nón sublevétur; praesertim cum magná ex parte eórum precibus adductus bellum suscéperit, multó etiam gravius, quod sit dëstitútus, queritur.

*Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans*


*In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorīx, the leader of this faction*

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciācī frātem, désignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus prae senti- bus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Lis-cum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. 25 Dicit liberius atque audācius.
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK I

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem secrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: *" Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, propterea quod illō licente contrā licēri audet nēmō. His rēbus et suām rem familiarērem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpτū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Bitūrigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

"Favet et cupit Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Si quid accidit Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendi venit; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat."

Cæsar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Cæsar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnoriōge atque eius equitibus,—nam equitātūi, quem auxiliō Cæsari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praerērat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātūm perterritum.
Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnorix. Caesar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent,—quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur,—satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother’s pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānīs interpretibus remōtis per C. Vale- rium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā nōverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur.

20. Diviciācus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. *“Sciō,” inquit, “haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam
posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem meam utītur; ego tamen et amōre frätternō et existimātiōne volgi com-moveor. Quod si quid ei abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā mē āvertentur.”

Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched

Haec cum pluribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frätrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vítet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frāтри condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnīt, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possīt.

Caesar prepares for battle

The error of Considius prevents the action

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum currī; dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō 5 occupāri voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem ĭnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ēi praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiāe prope hostium castra 10 visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelīoque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique dīē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset prō visō 15 sibi renūntiāsse. Eō dīē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postrīdiē eius dīēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercitiī frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, 20 nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēvigintī aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemīli, decurīonis equītum Galλōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre per- 25 territōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē, superīoribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn com- mīssent, sīve eō, quod reī frūmentāriā ĭnterclūdi posse
cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequi ac laccersere coepērunt.

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitātumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō trīplicem aciem ĭnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proxi- mē cōnscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcīnās in ĭnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab his qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in ĭnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōn-fertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

The battle begins


The Helvetii retreat, but rally

Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōī et Tulingī, qui
WAR WITH THE HELVETII

hominum milibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudé-bant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere noströs ab la-
tere apertō adgressī circumvenire; et id cōspicātī Helvētii,

EXPLANATION

bb Boii and Tulingi
e Fortified hilltop and
Roman baggage
HH Helvetii in first attack
hh Helvetii in second attack
RR Romans in first attack
rr Romans in second attack
-- Helvetian line of march
--- Roman line of march

THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (con-
versa signa, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines con-
tinued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb intulērunt (l. 6) refers to the whole
Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium
redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartitō 5
intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs re-
sisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.
After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated


The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proelīō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingōnēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frumentō nēve alīa re iuvārent; qui si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coeptī.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent sēque ad pedēs próiēcissent suppliciterque locūti flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum esse sent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.
"ITA ANCIPTI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRITER PUGNATUM EST"

(See page 30, line 1)
Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquiruntur et cónferuntur, circiter hominum mília sex eius pāgi qui Verbīgenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti, nē armis trādītis suppliciō adscrierentur, sive spē salūtīs inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignōrāri posse existimārent, primā nocte e castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germanōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his utī conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trādītīs, in dēditionem accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maxīmē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent, et fīnitīmi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Hēdūi

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in finibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris liber-tātisque condicionem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.
The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatum ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim quot pueri, senesc mulierisque. Quorum omnium rerum summa erat 5 caput Helvetiorum milium cclxiii, Tulingorum milium xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiii, Rauracorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum qui domum redierrunt, census habitu, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est 10 numerus milium c et x.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Caesar

30. Bellum Helvetiorum confectum totius feret Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt:

* "Intellegimus," inquint, "tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bellrepetisti, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod e6 consili florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquerrunt, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicili6 ex magnâ copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasse civitat6s stipendiariis haberrent."

A day is set for a future council

Petierunt uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: 'Sese habere quasdam res quas ex communi consensu ab e6 petere 25
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK I

vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

_Certain chiefs have a private interview with Caesar_

31. Eō conciliō dimissō, idem princīpēs civitātum qui ante 5 fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque uti sībi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē im- 10 petrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: *"Nōn minus," inquiunt, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur, quam uti ea quae velimus 15 impetrēmus; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

_Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in of the Germans_

Locūtus est prō his Diviciacus Haeduus: *"Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius principātum tenent Hae- 15 duī, alterius Arverni. Hi cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est uti ab Arvernis Sēquānisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac barbarī adamārunt, trāducti sunt plurēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad 20 centum et vigintī milium numerum.

_The subjection of the Hādui_

"Cum his Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsi accēpē- 25 runt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitā- tum āmisērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātībusque frācti, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicītiā
plurimum ante in Gallia potuerant, coaetì sunt Sequanis obsidēs dare nobilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium à populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. 5 Ţunus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūci nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitāte profugi et Rōmam ad senātum vēni auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

The wretched lot of the Sequani

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs acci-
dit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui est op-
timus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia homīnum vigintī quattuor ad eum vēnē-
runt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Ger-
mānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum īlā comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Ariovistus

"Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīō vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crū-
dēliter imperat, obsidēs nobilissimi cuiusque liberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.
All Gaul looks to Caesar for deliverance

"Nisi quid in te populoque Römânö erit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum quod Helvêtii fecerunt, ut domô emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliäs sêdês remôtâs à Germânis petant fortûnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnûntiâta Ariovistô sint, nôn dubitô quin dê omnibus ob-sidibus quï apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sümât. Tû vel auctoritâtë tua atque exercitûs vel recenti victoriâ vel nômine populi Römâni dêterrêre potes nê maior multîtûdô Germânorum Rhenum trâducâtur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniûriâ potes défendere."

The silence of the Sequani

32. Hâc òrâtìöne ab Diviciácô habïtâ, omnês qui aderant magnô flûtû auxilium à Caesare petere coe-pe-runt. Animad-vertît Caesar únös ex omnibus Sêquanös nihil eârum rërum facere quâs cêtêri facerent, sed tristès capite dêmîssô ter-
mam intuëri. Eius reî quae causa esset mîrâtûs, ex ipsis quaesìt. Nihil Sêquani respondêre, sed in eâdem tristîtï tàcîtì permanêre.

Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab his sae-pius quaereret neque úllam omnînò vê-cem exprîmere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduus respondit:

20 *“Hoc est miserior et gravior fortûna Sêquanôrum quam reliquôrum, quod sôli nê in occultô quidem queri neque auxilium implôrâre audent; absentisque Ariovistî crûdélitâtê-tem, velut si córam adsit, horrenî, propter eà quod reliquis tamen fugae facultâs datur, Sêquanîs vêrô, qui intrâ finês suös Ariovistûm recêpërunt, quôrum oppida omniâ in potes-tâtë eìus sunt, omnês cruciâtûs sunt perferendi.”
Caesar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. His rébus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animós verbís cónfírmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habère spem et beneficīo suō et auctōritāte ad-ductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ὁράτιονe habitā concilium dimisit.

His reasons for deciding to expel Ariovistus

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quà rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipientdam putāret: in primīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumero ā senātū appellātōs, in servītūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī publicae esse arbitrābātur.

Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperāturōs existimābat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrentum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Caesar asks Ariovistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, qui ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: *"Si quid mihi á Caesare opus esset, ego
ad eum venirem; si quid ille me revolt, illum ad me venire oportet. Praeterea neque sine exercitu in eas partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contra-
here possum. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vici, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negoti sit.”

_Cæsar commands Ariovigistus to restore the liberties of the Haeduī_

**35.** His responsīs ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: *“Quoniam tantō meō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus a senātū appellātūs sit, hanc mihi populīque Rōmānō grātiām refert, ut in conloquium venire invitātūs gravētur neque dē communī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduīs reddat, Sēquanisique permittat ut quōs illī habent voluntāte eius reddere illis liceat; nēve Haeduōs inīūriā lacessat, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferat.*

**36.** Ad haec Ariovigistus respondit: *“Iūs est bellī ut qui vicerint, eis quōs vicerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent; ītem populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius prae scriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperäre consuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre utātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri.

---

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam belli fortūnam temptāverunt et armīs congressī ac superāti sunt, stipendiāriī sunt factī. 5 Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit qui suō adventū vectigālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque
his neque eorum sociis iniūriā bellum inferam, si in eō manēbunt quod convēnit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fēcerint, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur; intellege quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armīs, qui inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."

New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Caesar, who hastens against Ariovistus

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesari mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et à Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī ques-tum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: 'Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēveri autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praesesse Nasuam et Cim-berium frātres.' Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus māturandum sībi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Caesar arrives there first

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, núntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiō nem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, triduiqui viam a suīs finibus processisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sībi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum āsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut
magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propter ea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magnae altitudine, ita ut radiices eius montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatique oppidum ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Caesar's men

10 39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatuse causae moratur, ex percontatioine nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germans, incredibili virtute atque exercitioine in armis esse praedicabant, — saepenumero esse cum his congressos nee voltum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicabant ferre potuisse, — tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animoseque perturbaret.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant; quorum alius alia causa inlata quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessarium esse diceret, petebat ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; non nulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; additi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ei qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatum praerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariae, ut satis commodi supportari posset, timere dicebant. Non nulli etiam Caesar nuntiabant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

Cesar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio, omni-umque ordini ad id consilium adhibitis centuriionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quod consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. *"Ariovistus," inquit, "meae cœnsule cupidissime populi Römānī amicitiam adpetii. Cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicet? Mihi quidem persuadetur, cognitis meis postulatis atque equitāte condicionum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Römānī grātim repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque amentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāmini? aut cūr de vestra virtūte aut de meā diligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mariō pulsis, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbatur; factum est etiam nūper in Italia servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam ā nōbis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicāri potest quantum habeat in sē boni cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.
Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated the Germans

"Dēnique hi sunt idem Germānī quibuscum saepenumero Helvētīi congressi, nōn sōlum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitu nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, si quaerēnt, reperire potērunt, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatigātis Gallīs, Ariovistūm, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque sūi potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratīōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratīōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitus capi posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris dēspērāre aut praescrivere videantur. Haec mihi sunt curae; frūmentum Sēquānī, Leucī, Lin-gonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrī frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere vōs ipsi brevi tempore iūdicābitis.

"Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicuntur militēs, nihil ēa rē commoveor; scīō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisset, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convic-tam; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fui, reprae-sentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigilīa castra movēbō, ut quam prīmum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod si praetereā nēmō
sequitur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiique ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōni Cae-
sar et indulserat praeципuē et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat
maximē.

*Remarkable effect of Caesar’s speech*

41. Hāc čorātiōne habiētā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi

![Roman Army on the March](image)

innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sé optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnis militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgerunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: ‘Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā belli suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.’
He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eorum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō dies, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum quattuor et vigintī abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem reverti arbitrabātur, cum id quod anteā petenti dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum bene-ficiis, cognitis suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā désisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Dies conloquiō dictus est ex eō dies quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter cōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratione sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.'

Caesar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus dētrāctis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae,
cui quam maximē confidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdīculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: 'Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum; ad equum rescribere.'

_Cæsar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands_


Ubi eō ventum est, Cæsar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod múnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribū docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī īustam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsēcutūm.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque īustae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honorīfīca in ēos facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. 'Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcos nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī ad dulissent, id eis ēripī quis patī posset?'

---
Postulavit deinde eadem quae légátis in mandátis dederat: nē aut Haeduís aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllum partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trànsire paterētur.

*Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply*

5 44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: "Trānsī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisquē praemiīs domum propinquōsque reli-quī; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre belli quod victōrēs victis impōnere consuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ċā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātæ sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī volunt, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt.

"Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnaměntō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petīi. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditiciī sub-trahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetīi.

CONFERENCE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

"Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra"

(See page 48, line 29)
nōn oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis inīqui quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis.

"Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxiliō tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui mēcum et cum Sēquanis habuērunt, auxiliō populi Rōmāni īūsōs esse.

"Dēbeō suspicāri simulātā tē amicitia, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcerō, multis nō-bilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum faciam (id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēō), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod si discesseris et liberam possessionem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābor, et quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tūo labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

**Caesar restates his position and disputes the claim of Ariovistus to Gaul**

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā ré negotiō dēsistere nōn posset: \*\* Neque mea neque populi Rōmānī consuetūdō patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superāti sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportet, populi Rō-mānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observāri oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suis légibus ītī voluerit.\*\*
A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesāri nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nos-trōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recepit suīsque imperā-vit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsi sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteaquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quā adrogantīā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omni Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

Caesar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: 'Velle sē dē his rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; uti aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendi Caesari causa visa nōn est; et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius dieī Germanī reti-nēri nōn poterant quin tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat.

Two of Cæsar's envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeriō Caburī filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adolescentem, — cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitātē dōnātus erat, et prop-ter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam

**Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes**


**The German method of fighting**

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimi ac fortissimi, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salútis causā délēgerant; cum his in proelīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hi, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; si qui graviōre volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.
Cæsar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castris se tenère Caesar intelligi, ne diūtius commeatū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Gērmāni cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castrīs idōneum locum délēgit, aciēque triplicī instructa ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedita cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.
Ariovistus attacks the smaller camp with part of his forces

50. Proximo diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem instrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cō-piārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque úsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sūlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et īnlātīs et acceptīs volneribus in castra re-
dūxit.

A German superstition delays a general engagement

Cum ex captivīs quae reteret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus ē proelīō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea consuetūdō esse, ut mātēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vātīcinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium com-mitti ex ūsū esse necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proelīō contem
dissent.'

Caesar forces a decisive battle

51. Postrīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castrīs quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in conspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multi-
tūdine militūm legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplici īnstrūctā aciē úsque ad castra hostium accessit. [Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castris ēdūxērant generātimque cōn-
stituērant paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tri-
bocēs, Vangionēs, Nemētēs, Sedusīōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carris circumdedēruit, nē qua spēs in fūgā reliquēretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērant, quae ad proe-
lium proficiscēntēs, passis manibus flentēs, implōrabant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.]
52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hos-tium esse animadvertēraturāt, proelium commīsit. Et ita nostri ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendi nōn darētur. Reiectīs pilīs comminus gladiās pug-nātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex consuetūdine suā pha-lange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri qui in phalanga insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerarent. Cum hostium aciēs ā si-nistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem prēme-bant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equi-tātui praerērat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrī subsidiō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstītērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervē-nērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut viribus cōnfīsi trānāre contendērunt autelintribus inventīs sibi salūtem reperrerunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam dēligātam ad ripam nactus eā pro-fugīt; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūti eqūites nostri interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātione, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, régis Voccīonis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae filiae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.
Caesar’s two envoys are rescued

C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugā trinis catēnis vincus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari nōn
minorem quam ipsa victòria volúptátem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum pròvinciae Galliae, suum familiárem et hospitem, éreptum é manibus hostium; sibi restítútum vídebat; neque eius calámítáte dé tantá volúptátem et grátulátióne quicquam fortúna déminuerat. Is sè praesente dé sè ter sortibus cónsultum dicébat utrum igní statim necárétur an in aliud tempus reservárétur; sortium benefició sè esse incolumem. Item M. Mètius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hóc proelió trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, qui ad ripās Rhēni vēnerant, domum reverti coepérunt; quós Ubīi, qui proximi Rhēnum incolunt, perterrítos insecúti magnum ex eis numerum occiderunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duóbus maximis belliis cōnfectís, mātūrius paulō quam tempus anní postulábat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hi- bernís Labiēnum præposuít; ipse in citeriōrem Galliām ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.
BOOK II

CAESAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

The reasons for the conspiracy

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniúrandi hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri nōluerant, ita populi Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperīis studēbant, — ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eis qui ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō régna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequi poterant.

Caesar moves against them early in the spring

Caesar moves against them early in the spring

2. His nūntiis letterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriore Galliā novās cōnscripsit, et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliām qui dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum misit.
Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiorēm faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diebusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātīs, mīsē-runt qui dicerent: "'Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmāni permittimus; neque cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum con-
iūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliqui omnēs Belgae in armis sunt, Germānique qui cīs Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxeunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus utuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magis-trātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quīn cum his cōnsentīrent.'"

The origin and warlike character of the Belgae

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitātēs quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: "Plērique Belgae sunt orti à Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāducti propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique sunt
qui patrum nostrorūm memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutōnōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quá ex ĕ re fit uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sī bi auctōritātem magnōsque spiritūs in ĕ militāri sūmant.

The strength of the Belgian tribes

"Dē numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explōrāta, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; ĕi possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, polliciti ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sībi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt finitimi; finēs lātissimōs fērācissimōsque agrōs possessī. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācūs, tōtius Galliāe potentissimus, qui cum magnae partīs hārum regiōnūm tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propī fūgit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācūs, tōtius Galliāe potentissimus, qui cum magnae partīs hārum regiōnūm tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propīr iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēsītūr; oppida habent numerō xii, pollicentur mīlia armātā L; totidem Nerviī, qui maximē fēri inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; xv mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī x mīlia, Morini xxv mīlia, Menapiī vii mīlia, Caletī x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromandui totidem, Aduatucī xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellāntur, arbitrāmur cōnficere posse ad xl mīlia."

Caesar asks the assistance of Diviciacūs

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōratiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūci iussit. Quae omnia ab ĕis diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciacūm Haeduum magnopere
cohortatus docet quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine unus tempore cōnfīgendum sit: 'Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint.' His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit.

He crosses the Aisne and there fortifies a camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmis cognōvit, flūmen Axōnam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpis flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum pōrtāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. [Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit;] castra in altītūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duōdēviginti pedum mūnīri iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away

oppidō praerat, unus ex eis qui lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesa-
rem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sibi 
submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

_Cæsar sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgæ advance on his camp_

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Cæsar, ēsdem ducibus ū̄̂̄̄̄s qui 
nūntii ab Icio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et 5 
funditōrēs Balearēs sub-
sidiō oppidānīs mittit; 
quōrum adventū et Rē-
mis cum spē dēfēnsiōnis 
studium prōpugnandi ac-
cessit, et hostibus ēādem 
dē causā spēs potiundi 
oppidī discessit. Itaque 
paulispeī apud oppi-
dum morātī agrōsque 
Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, 
omnia vicīs aedifici-
isque quō adire potuer-
ant incēnsis, ad castra 
Cæsaris omnibus cōpiās contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum 26 
minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque 
ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in 
lātitūdinem patēbant.

_Cavalry skirmishes. Cæsar fortifies his position and draws up his 
forces in front of the camp_

8. Cæsar primō et propter multītūdinem hostium et prop-
ter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; 25 
cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliōs, quid hostis virtūte posset 
et quid nostri audērent periclitābātur.
Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitīē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī 5 aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte late- ris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitiem redibat, — ab utrōque latere eius collis trān- versam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrūm et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlo- 10 cāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi- tūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnāntēs suōs circumvenire possent.

Hōc factō, [duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripserat in castris relictis] ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī pos- 15 sent, [reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās īnstrūxērunt]

A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement


The Belgae attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contende- 25 runt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnāreō pontemque interscinderent; si
minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nōbis ūsī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

_Caesar defeats them with great losses_

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, fundītōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem 5 trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ącriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānśire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlorum repulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circūmventōs inter 10 fēcērunt.

_The Belgae, discouraged, decide to disband_

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē felfissē intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt,
atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria déficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum introdūxissent, ad eōs défendendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domestīcis cōpiās rei frumentāriae Úterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquére cognōverant. His persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

_Cæsar pursues them and inflicts great slaughter_

11. Ea rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepītū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ērōtine neque imperiō, cum sībi quisque prīmum itineris locum pēteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Cæsar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod quā dé causā discēderent nōndum per- spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuēt. Primā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissīmum agmen morārētur praemīsit. His Q. Pedīum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit.
Hi novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent forti-
terque impetum nostrōrum militum sustīnērunt, priōrēs, quod 4 abesse ā perīcūlō vidērentur neque ēllā necessitāte neque imperiō conti-
nērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbā-
tis ōrdīnibus omnēs in fugā sībi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīcūlō tantam eōrum multītūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī de-
stītērunt sēque in castra, ut erat impe-
rātum, recēpērunt.

_He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones_

12. Postrīdiē eius diēi Ĉaesar, prius-
quam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipere
sent, in finēs Suessiōnum, qui proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxīt
et magnō itinere ad oppidum Novio-
dūnum contendit. Id ex itinere op-
pugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab
dēfēnsōribus esse audīēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mū-
rique altitūdinem, paucis dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

_He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender_

Castrīs mūnitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Sues-
siōnum multītūdō in oppidum proxīmā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque
cōstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovaci beg for mercy

5  13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs civitātīs atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filīs, armīisque omnībus ex oppidō trādītīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coeplērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānūm armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petīrūnt.

Diviciacus, the Haeduan, pleads for them

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nām post discessum Belgārum dimissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba:

*"Bellovaci omni tempore in fidē atque amicitī civitātīs Haeduae fūrunt; impulsī ab suīs principibus, quī dicēbant Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indigneratēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eius cōnsili principēs fuerant, quod interlegēbant quantum calamitātem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovaci sed etiam prō his Haeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ītāris. Quod si fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apūd omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt."
Caesar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācí atque Haeduórūm causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hōminum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in 5 finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōrisque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: *Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vīni reliqua- tumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimant; sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; incepīt atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcerint; cōnfīrmant sēsē neque lē- 15 gātōs missūrōs neque īllum condīcionem pācis acceptūrōs."

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sābim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsē-disse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum 20 Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimis suīs (nam hīs utrīisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectāri etiam ab eis Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulieres qui que per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs 25 exercituī aditus nōn esset.
The Nervii decide to attack Caesar while he is pitching camp

17. His rébus cognitis explóratórēs centurióñēsque praemittit qui locum castris idōneum déligant. Cum ex déditiiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūti ūnā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut posteā ex captivis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostri exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque his démōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negotī, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contra cōnsistere nōn audērēnt.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium qui rem déferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestrībus valent cōpiis), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, tenerīs arboreōrus incisis atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rébus cum īter agminīs nostri impediērētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī existimāvērunt.

The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide on a hill opposite

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris délegerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter déclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,
passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ordōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,
consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāngressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impedītum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepeīrunt.

The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prīma impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eīs qui in silvis abditi latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēisque cōnstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōnsīrmaērunt, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcuccurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendērunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant aresendi, acīēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.
THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle.
Their skill and training serve them well

His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō,—scientia atque usus militum, quod superiōribus proelīs exercitāti quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōni-bus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostīum nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of some of the usual preparations for battle

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mili-tēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Milītēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae pristīnae virtūtis memoriam retīnerent neu perturbārentur animō hostīumque impetum fortiter sustinē-rent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostīumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommo-danda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Înstrūctō exercitū magīs ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collīs et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae alīā in
parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocāri neque quid in quāque parte opus

esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque 5 ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae miliēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitūdīne exanimātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnāntēs insecūti gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum iniquum prōgressi rūrsus resis- tentēs hostēs redintegrātō proelīō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, 15 prōfligātīs Viromanduiis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō
cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervālō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Bodūognātō, qui summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

_Panic prevails in the Roman camp_

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipere, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnsperērunt, praedandi causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēśē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentīs veniēbant clamōr fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterrītī ferēbantur.

_The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home_

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēveri, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singularis, qui auxili causā ā civitāte missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium
Castra complēri, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contēndērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs, civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

_Caesar snatches a shield and rushes to the front_

25. Caesār ab decimae legiōnīs cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisquē in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sībi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit,—quārtae cohortīs omnibus centurīōnibus occīsīs, signīferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortīum omnibus fērē centurīōnibus aut volnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextīō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus confectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn possēt, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiorē locō subeuntēs intermittēre et ab utrōque latēre instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quond submittī posset,—scūtō ab novissimīs militī dētrāctō, quond ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centurīōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possēnt.

STANDARD BEARER
(SIGNIFER)
His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

_Ceasār effectivēly combines two of his legions_

5  26. Ceasār cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius 10 resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepe runt.

He receives reënforcements

Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre 15 quae rēs in nostris castris gerentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidīō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sībi reliqui fecērunt.

The tide of battle turns in Cesār's favor

20  27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam qui volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpītūdinem fugae virtūte délērent, omnibus in locīs pug- 25 nandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferret.
Caesar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostēs etiam in extremā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmi eōrum cecidissent, proxīmi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārēnt; his dēiectis et coācervātīs cādāverībus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissīnum flūmen, ascenderé altissīmas ripās, subīre iniquissīnum locum; quae facīlia ex difficillimīs animī magnītūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad internecīōnem gentē ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixeramus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnīn qui supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdiderunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vīx ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligēntissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque finibus atque oppidis ūt iussit, et fīnitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et māleficīō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus supra diximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūntīs oppidis castellīisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissīmas
rūpēs déspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis
aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur;
quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī
ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

Origin of the Aduatuci

5 Ipsi erant ex Cimbri Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter
in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedi-
mentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flū-
men Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suis ac præsidium sex
milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum mul-
tōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferre
aliās inlätum défenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce
factā hunc sībi domiciliō locum délēgerant.

They ridicule Caesar's siege works

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostri crēbrās ex oppidō
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proelīs cum nostrīs conten-
dēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv milium, crē-
brisque castellis circummunītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi
vineis āctīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōnstitui vidērunt,
prīnum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod
tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: *“Quibusnam
20 manibus aut quibus viribus praeerītīm hominēs tantulae statū-
rae” — nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine
corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est — “tanti
oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfidunt?”

But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed
to keep their arms

31. Ubi vērō movēri et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, novā
25 atque inūsitātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce
miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: *“Nōn existimāmus
vōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possitis; nōs nostraque omnia tuae potestāti permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac déprecāmur: si forte prō tua clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quaquam ab aliis auditum, statueris Aduatucōs esse cōnservāndōs, nōlī nōs armīs déspoliāre. Nōbis omnēs fērē fīnitimi sunt inimici ac nostrae virtūti invident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn poterimus. Nōbis praestat, si in eum cāsum dēducāmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populo Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs domināri cōnsuēvimus."
Cæsar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad haec Cæsar respondit: *“Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōnservābō, si, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditīōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trāditis. Id quod in Nerviis fēcī faciam, fīnitimīsque imperābō nē quam dēditīciīs populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferant.” Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. [Armōrum magnā multitūdīne dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summan mūri aggerisque altitūdinem acervi armōrum adaequāret, et tamen circiter parte tertīā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō die pāce sunt ūsi?

They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quain noctū oppidaṃī a militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellectum est) cōnsilliō, quod dēditīōne factā nostrōs prae sidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indil īgentius servāturōs crēdiderant,—partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut viminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant,—tertīā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mū nitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōplīs repente ex oppidō ēruptionem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Cæsar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis iniuquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret.
Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius dieī refrāctis portis, cum iam

LATIN MANUSCRIPT

The text of Book II, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinus Latinus, 5763
defenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quin-5 quāgingtā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitātēs in 10 dicionem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redactās.
The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome

35. His rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. 5 Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Ἰλλυρίκυμque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris dīēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

GALIC COINS
BOOK III
CAESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per 5 Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire consuērant, patefieri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliīs factīs castellisque cominclusīs pluribus eōrum expugnātis, missīs ad eum undique légātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus posītus in valle, nōn magnō adiectā 15 plānitīē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllo fossāque mūnivit.
An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūres trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque qui impedērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.

Id aliquot de causis acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandi legionisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, qui commeātūs petendi causā missī erant—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsis ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem
posse impetum suum sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolē-
bant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 5

*Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp*

3. His nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnītōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frumentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existi-
māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirēre 10 coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī periculi prae-
ter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multītūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsi-
diō venīrī neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modi 15 sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictīs ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus ēō pervēnissent ad salūtem contende-
rent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit, hoc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

*The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers*

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōnstitu-
issent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapides gaesaque in vāllum conicere. [Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum fruṣtrā tēlum ex locō supe-
riōre mittere, et quācumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn-
sōrībus premī vidēbātur, ēō occurrere et auxiliīm ferre;] sed hoc superāri, quod diūtempūtē pugnae hostēs dēfessi prōeliō excēdēbant, alīi integrīs viribus succēdēbant : quārum rērum
After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnāretur ac non sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīli centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum volneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili magni et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certōrēs facit paulispe intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post dātō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtute ponerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendi quid fieret neque suī conli gendi hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā ēōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnsta bat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnstitere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiās fūsīs armīisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.
Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proelio factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliōs occurrisse rēbus viderat, maximē frūmenti commeātūsque inopīa permōtus, posterō dīē omnibus eius vici aedificiīs incēnṣis in prōvinciām revertī contendīt, ac nūlō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolum mem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule


The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

Huius est civitātis longē amplissimā auctorītās omnīs orae maritimae regiōnūm eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nautīcārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetu maris vāsti atque aperti paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent īpsi, omnēs fērē quī ēō mari ūtī
cōnsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant.

**Other states do the same and demand back their hostages**

Hōrum auctōritāte fīnītīmi adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōnsilia), éadem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē confīrunt nihil nisi comīnūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servītūtem perferre mālint. Omni ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātionem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

**Caesar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene**

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod īpse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātorēsque comparāri īubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, īpse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

**The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war**

20 Venēti reliquaeque item civitātēs cognītō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sāntum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniec-tōs, prō magnitūdine periculi bellum parāre, et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant.
They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuāriis, nāvigationēm impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portu tum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contra opinīōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum sū navibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvim, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūri essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigationēm in conclusō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Īōeanō perspiciēbant. His initīs cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum constābat, quam plūrīmās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sībi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Mēnapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Brittānia, quae contrā eās r regionēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equītum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditionem, dēfectīō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primis nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sībi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnēs fērē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbilītēr celeriterque excitāri, omnēs autem homīnēs nāturā libertātī studēre et condicionem servitūtis ōdisse, priūsquam plūrīs civitātēs cōnsipirārent, partīendum sībi ac lātiōs distribuen dum exercitum putāvit.
He divides his forces to keep the rest of Gaul loyal

11. Itaque T. Labienum légátem in Tréverós, qui proximi flúmini Rhénó sunt, cum equitátū mittit. Huic mandat Rémós reliquósque Belgás adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germánósque, qui auxiliō à Gallis arcessitī dicēbantur, si per vim návibus flúmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs xii et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrum Sabinum légátem cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, qui eam manum distinen-dam cūret.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brūtum adulēscentem classi Gallicísque návibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquísque pācātīs regiōnibus con-venīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

The town sites of the Veneti are described

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmis lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadis adflictārentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediebātur; ac sī quandō—magnitudine operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātīs—dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium
adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua déportā-
bant omnia sēque in proxima oppida reciproēbant; ibi sē rūrsus
isdem opportūnitātibus loci défendēbant. Haec eō facilius
magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tem-
pestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque aperto
mari, magnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, diffi-
cultās nāvigandi.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum
nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos-
sent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppes ad mag-
nitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātæ; nāvēs
tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam per-
ferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōn-
fixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus
ferreis catēnīs revinctae; pelēs prō vēlis alūtaeque
tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propēr inopiam lini atque eius ūsūs
inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās
tempestātēs Óceani tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac
tanta onera nāvim regi vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

They are better adapted to existing conditions than those
of the Romans

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssi eīus modi congressus erat ut
ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci
nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illis essent apīōra et accommodā-
tiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta
in eīs erat firmitūdō — neque propēr altitūdinem facile tēlum
adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continē-
bantur. Accédēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō
dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsistērent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

*The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti*

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesār, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuīt exspectan-dam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostībus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ārnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classī prae-erat, vel tribūnīs militūm centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ra-tionem pugnāe īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō
puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex inferior locō satis commodē tela adigi possent et missa a Gallis gravius acciderent.

A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy

Una erat magnō ūsū rēs praeparāta a nostris, — falcēs praeacūtae insertae adfixaeque longurīs, non absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs qui antemnās ad mālōs ēstātābant comprehēnsi adductīque erant, nāvigīō rēmis incitātō praevelempēbantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōnsisteret, his ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quà nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercītūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships

Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi tranṣcendere in hostium nāvēs contendebarant. Quod postquam barbarī fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendebarunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotiōnum cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quártā ûsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.
The Veneti surrender and are punished

16. Quo proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae mari-
timae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs
etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut digni-
tātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat

5 in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliqui neque quō
se recipereōnt neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent
habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In
quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō diligentius
in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur.
10 Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.
"RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT"

(See page 94, line 10)
THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus, cum eis cópiis quás à Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cópiās coēgerat; atque his paucis 5 diēbus Aulercī Ebuovicēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magnaque praeterea multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrō-numque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque bel- 10 landi ab agri cultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē teñēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cópiis pugnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus venīret 15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opinionem timōris praebuat ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praeṣerim eō absente quī summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut op- 20 portūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

18. Hāc cōnfirmātā opinione timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōni- 25
Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cībāriōrum, cui reī parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Venetīci belli, et quod fērē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab eis sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmenṭis virgultisque conlēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pėrgunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted


Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae fērēbant onerā, subitō duābus portis éruptionem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hos-tīum inscientiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga vērterent. Quōs integris
viribus militēs nostri cōnsecūti magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equītēs cōnsectāti, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabīni victōriā Caesar est certior factus; civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates

He defeats them and they surrender

21. Pugnatum est diū atque ácriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscentulō duce, efficere possent per-spici cuperent; tandem cōnfecti volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfecτō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temp-tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuīs reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, propertēa quod multīs locīs apūd ēōs aerāriēae sectūrēaque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum nihil īs ībus prōfīci posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Cras-sum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā re īmpetrātā, arma trādere iussi, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

15 22. Atque in eam rem omnīm nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperī tenēbat, cum dē dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō, uti omnībus in vitā commodīs ūnā cum eis fruantur quōrum sē amiciūae dēdiderint; si quid īs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sībi mortem cōnciscant; neque adhūc homiūn memoriā repertus est quisquām qui, eō interfecτō cuīs sē amiciūae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum īs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facerē cōnātus, clāmōre ab ea parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ībi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti ēadem dēditionis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō īmpetrāvit.
Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Voca-
tium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari com-
mōtī, quod oppidum, et nāturā locī et manū mūnitum, paucis
diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgā-
tōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coeępērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgāti quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magna cum auctōritātē et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī deliguntur qui ūnā cum 10 Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmāni loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.

Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suās cōpiās propter 15 exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrī satis praeсидī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sībī supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī,—nōn cunctandum existi-
māvit quin pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, 20 ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellexit, posterum diem pugnæ cōnstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē insti-
tūtā, auxiliis in médiam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et vete- 25 rem belli glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimi-
cātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessis
viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī séśe recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis īnfīrmīrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis, séśe castrīs tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opinīōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacrīrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectārī diūtiūs nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostiūm castra contendit.

_Crassus attacks the enemy’s camp_

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitionibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus compor-

15 tandīs speciem atque opinīōnem pugnantium praebeērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-

itīs hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

_A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear_

26. Crassus equitūm praeffectōs cohortātus ut magnīs prae-

miīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit os-
tendīt. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eis cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intritae ab labōre erant, et longiōre

25 itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspīci possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celerīt ad eās quās diximus mūnitionēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrūtis prius in hostiūm castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidērī aut quid rei gerētur cognōsci posset.
The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostri redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victorīae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coeperunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitionēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātūs apertissimis 5 campīs cōnsectātūs, ex milium l numerō, quae ex Aquitānīa Cantabrīisque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitānīae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēisque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Taricē bellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatlēs, Aescī, Garummi, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucēs ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnfirmae, quod hiems subērat, id facere neglēxorunt.

CÆSAR’S EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH

Cæsar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem fērē tempore Cæsar, etsi prope exacta iam 15 aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiiisque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficēt, eo exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coēperunt.

They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbat maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Cæsar pervēnisset castraque mūnire
instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in oper
nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et il
nostros impetum fécerunt. Nostri celeriter arma cēpērun
eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfēctis lon
5 gius impeditiōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suis déperdidērunt

_Violent storms put an end to further action_

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere ē
stituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque militibus a
latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae er
caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ā
10 utrumque latus exstrüēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spati
paucīs diēbus cōnfecτō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma im
pedimenta ā nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās pēterēn
eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae uti opus necessāri
intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtiōs sub pe
15 libus militēs continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnīs
eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisquē incēnīsīs, Caesar exercītum
reōxīt et in Aulercīs Lexoviisquē, reliquis ēm civit
ūris quae proximē bellum fécerant, in hibernis conlocāv.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Caesar's forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)
BOOK IV

CÆSAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

E Ā QUÆ secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine homīnum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagītāti bellō premēbantur et agri cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Strength and customs of the Suebi

Suēborum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milīa armātōrum bellandi causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque īllos alunt. Hi rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agri cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparātī agri apud ēōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendi causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et
immāni corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sé consuetūdinem addūxērunt ut locis frigidissimis neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in 5 flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vendant habeant, quam quō üllam rem ad sé importāri désiderent. Quin etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī délectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ütuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, hacc cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestribus proelīs saepe ex equis désiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque ēōdem remanēre vēstigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ētī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātorum equītum quamvis pauci adire audent.
WAR WITH THE GERMANS

Vinum omnino ad se importari non patiuntur, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere hominès atque effeminari arbitrantur.

*They destroy and oppress their neighbors*

3. Publicè maximam putant esse laudem quam látissimè à suis finibus vacàre agròs: hác re significàri magnum numerum civitâtum suam vim sustinère non posse. Itaque únà ex parte à Suèbis circiter milia passuum centum agrì vacàre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succédunt Ubìi, quòrum fuit civitàs amplà atque flòrèns, ut est captus Germanòrum; ei paulò, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cèteris húmàniòrès, propterea quod Rhènum attingunt, multumque ad eós mercatórès ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitàtem Gallicis sunt mòribus adsuèfacti. Hòs cum Suèbi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitùdinem gravitátemque civitátis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigálès sìbì fècérunt ac multò humiliòrès infirmiòrèsque redègerunt.

*The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine by the Menapii*

4. In eàdem causà fuérunt Usipetês et Tencteri, quòs suprà diximus, qui complùrès annòs Suèbòrum vim sustinuérunt; ad extrèmum tamen agrì expulsi et multis locis Germàniæ triennium vagàti ad Rhènum pervènerunt, quàs 20 regiònès Menapii incolèbant. Hi ad utramque ripam flùminis agròs aedificia vicòsque habèbant; sed tantae multitùdinis adítù perterriti, ex eis aedificiis quae tràns flùmen habuerant dèmigráverant, et cis Rhènum dispositìs praeсидìis Germanòs trànśire prohibèbant.
By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illicit omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nàvium neque clam trânsire propter custôdiâs Menapiôrum possent, reverti sè in suàs sèdès regionèsque simulâvèrunt, et tridui viam progressi rûrsus revertèrunt, atque, omni hoc itinere ūnā nocte equitâtû cônfectó, insciōs inopinantèsque Menapiōs oppressèrunt; qui, dè Germanòrum diessû per explôrâtôrês certiôrês facti, sine metû trâns Rhênum in suòs vicòs remigrâverant. His interfectis nàvi-busque eòrum occupâtìs, priusquam ea pars Menapiôrum quae citrâ Rhênum erat certior fieret, flûmen trânsiërunt atque omnibus eòrum aedificiìs occupâtìs reliquam partem hiemis sè eòrum cópiis aluërunt.

Caesar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. His dè rébus Caesar certior factus et infirmitâtem Gallòrum veritus, quod sunt in cònsiliis capièndis mòbilès et novis plèrumque rébus student, nihil his committendum existimâtìvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cònsuētûdinis, utì et viâtôrês etiam invitòs cònsistere cògant, et quid quisque eòrum dé quâque ré audierit aut cognòverit quaeránt; et mercâtôrês in oppidis volgus circumsìstat, quibusque ex regiônibus veniant quâsque ibi rès cognòverint prônûntiâre cògat. His rébus atque auditìônibus permôtì, dè summìs saepe rébus cònsilia ineunt, quòrum eòs in vèstigiò paenitère necesse est, cum incertis rûmòribus serviant et plèriques ad voluntâtìem eòrum fìcta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

6. Quà cònsuëtûdine cognitâ, Caesar, nè graviôri bellò occurreret, mâtûrius quam cònsuërat ad exercitum proficisci-tur. Eò cum vènisset, ea, quae fore suspicâtus erat, facta
The German envoys ask Caesar for lands in Gaul

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delictis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germânōs audībat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eis vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit orātiō: 'Germânōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsēre, si laccassantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōn- suētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse inviōs, ēiectōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eis ūtīlēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuānt vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis Suēbis concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

Caesar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit orātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum his amīcitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finēs tuérī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs qui dāri tantae praesertim multitūdīni sine
iniūriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et á sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

The envoys seek delay

5 9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suós relātūrōs dixērunt et rē deline-rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrāri posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivarītōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectāri equītēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-lātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficīt Batavōrum, neque longius inde milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontīs, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatīō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētōrum, Séquanōrum, Mediōmatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum cītātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs défuit partēs multīs in-gentibusque īnsulis effectis, quārum pars magna a ferīs barbarīisque nātiōnibus incolitur,—ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ĵvis avium vivere existimantur,—multīisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

25 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii milibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgāti revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
œrabant. Cum id nôn impetrassent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condicīone quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē 5 ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrabātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent revertererentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis 10 causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam fre-quentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proelīo lacesserent; et, si ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius 15 accessisset.

*A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry*

12. At hostēs, ubi prīnum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat v miliōm numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius dccc equitēs habērent, quod ei quī frūmentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod 20 lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab his petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus his resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita 25 perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā désisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.
In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur iii et lxx; in his vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuīus avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ab senātūr nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostībus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restītīt; cum circumventus multīs volnerībus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proelīō exesserat, procul animadvertīt, incitātō equō sē hostībus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Cæsar decides that the situation demands stern measures

Hoc factō proeliō, Cæsar neque iam sībī lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis qui, per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vérō, dum hostium cūpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiāe esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum i nfirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātīs essent cōnsecūti, sentiēbat; quībus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum existimābat.

He arrests the German chiefs who come asking a truce

His cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōrē commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnāe praetermitteret, oppor-tūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne ēsi Germānī frequentēs, omnībus prin-cipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnē-runt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandi suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridiē commi-sissent; simul ut, si quid possent, ēi indūtiis fallendō impe-trārent. Quōs sībī Cæsar oblātōs gāvisus illōs re tinēri iussi t;
"MILITES NOSTRI IN CASTRA INRUPERUNT"

(See page 111, line 10)
ipse omnès copiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī
proeliō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

_He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it_

14. Aciē triplici institūtā et celeriter viii milium itinere
cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur
Germānī sentire possent. Qui omnibus rēbus subitō perterrītī,
et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque
cōnsili habendi neque arma capiendi spatiō datō, perturbantur,
cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra défendere an
fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū
et concursū significārētur, militēs nostrī prīstīni diēī perfidiā
incitāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma
cāpere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter
carrōs impedimentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua
multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque—nam cum omnibus suis
domō exsesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere
coeptī; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit.

_The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish_

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs inter-
fici vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē
ex castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et
Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā déspērātā, magnō numerō
interfectō, reliqui sē in flūmen praepticīāvērunt; atque ibi
timōre, lassitūdine, vi flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī
ad ūnum omnēs incolūmēs, perpaucīs volnerātīs, ex tanti
belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitem ccccx milium
fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castrīs
retinuerat discēdendi potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cru-
ciātūsque Gallōrum veriti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre
sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.
112 THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK IV

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY

_Caesar’s reasons for believing that he ought to cross the Rhine_

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, múltis dē causis Caesār statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluīt, cum intellegērent et posse et audēre populi Rōmāni exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tenc-terōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praeda middi frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēpērat sēque cum eis coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesār núntiōs misisset qui postulārent eōs qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulis- sent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: ‘Populi Rōmāni imperium Rhēnum finire; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr sūi quicquam esse imperi aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?’

Ubiī autem, qui ūnī ex Trānsrhenānis ad Caesarem lēgā- tōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sībi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinionem eius exercitūs, Arioqvistō pulsō et hoc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānō- rum nātiōnēs, uti opinione et amicitīā populi Rōmāni tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.
He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar his de causis quas commemoravi Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tum esse arbitrabantur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuabant. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem,
altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

The plan of the bridge

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praecūta, dimēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fīstūcisque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcum-berent, — eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūncūra distābat, binis utrimque fībulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rérum nātūra ut, quō maiōr vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contextē-bantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōn sternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs dēiciendi operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

Caesar crosses the bridge and invades Germany

18. Diēbus x quibus māteriā coepta erat comportāri, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque par-tem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti
veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberā-liter respondet obsidēisque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambri, ex eō tempore quō pōns institūtus coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis exsesserant suaque omnia exportā-verant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

The invasion fills the Germans with terror

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omni-bus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frumentisque succisis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxiliium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suēbos, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisisse, uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvis dépōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium fērē regionum eārum quās Suēbi obtinerent; hic Rōmānō-rum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisset.'

Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōnfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercītum cōstituerat, ut Ger-mānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidīōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōn-sūmptris, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.
THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Caesar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus fērē Gallīcīs bellīs hostībus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sībi ūsīrī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia fērē Gallīs erant incognīta. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ūram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gallīās nōtum est.

Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ūram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Gallīās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus instītūtis ūterentur, neque qui essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

He sends Volusenus to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy


25. Interim cōnsiliō eius cognītō et per mercātōrēs perlätō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum légāti veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi
Rōmāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrabatur cuiusque auctōritās in his rēgionibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-
sēnus perspectis rēgionibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, qui nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō iō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

AN ANCIENT HARBOR

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in his locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod
hominēs barbarī et nostrae consuetūdinis imperiti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūne accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs ēōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis praeffectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex ēō locō ā milibus passuum vīi ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sābinō et Aurunculēiō Cottaē lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in ēōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgāti nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum ēō praesidiō quōd satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

23. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgressi et nāvēs cōnscedere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locīs superiōribus in
litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egressiendum nequâquam idoneum locum arbitrâtus, dum reliquae navés eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectâvit.

Interim légātīs tribūnisque militum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rés postulārent

(ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rés ab eis administrārentur. His dimissīs et ventum et aestum únō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancorīs, circiter milia pas- suum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore navēs cōnstituit.
The Britons oppose the landing of the Romans

24. At barbari, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proelīs ūti cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvis nēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod

5 nāves propter magnītūdinem nisi in altō cōnstitui nōn pote-
rant; militibus autem, ignōtis locīs, impeditīs manibus, magnō
et grāvi onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvis nēsili-
endum et in fluctibus cōnsistentum et cum hostibus erat pug-
nandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī,
omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla con-
icerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri

A LARGE CATAPULT (TORMENTUM)
LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN
26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordīnēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnpexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adorīēbantur, plurēs paucōs circumsistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrāntēs cōnpexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suis omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impe-tum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longiōs prōsequi potuērunt, quod equītēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

British envoys sue for peace. Caesar grants it

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commiūs Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Cae-saris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscererētur petivērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent,
FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquōribus locis accessītam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, princīpesque undique convenire et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesari commendāre coeptērunt.

A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equītēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārēnt Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est proprius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem noctē accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognītum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestūs complēbat, et ·oneraēs, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātēs, tempestās adflictābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus ῥāctīs, reliqua· cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentīs āmis-sis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facto est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deērant
quae ad reficiendás nāvēs erant ūsui; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem prōvisum nŏn erat.

These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitis princīpes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūti, cum et equītēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deēsse intellege- rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustīōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, his superātis aut rēditū interclūsis, nēminem postēa bellī infe- rendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus consiūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frū-
mentātum missā, quae appellābātur septīma, neque ūllā ad
id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā,—cum pars hominum
in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventītāret,—ei qui
prō portīs castrōrum in statīōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt
pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in ea parte
vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī a barbarīs
initum cōnsili, cohortēs quae in statīōnibus erant sēcum in
eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in statīōnem succē-
dere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum
paulō longius a castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī
atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus
tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis parti-
bus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs
hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlītuerant; tum
dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adorți,
paucis interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant,
simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons’ mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs
partēs perequītant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equō-
rum et strepitū rotārūm ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et
cum sē inter equītum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dē-
siliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātīm
ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, si illī ā
multītūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum
The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rebus perturbātīs nostrīs novitātes pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevi tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt.

15 Secūtae sunt continuōs complūres diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandi facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celerīter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat,—ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugerent,—tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commissō Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in acīe prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proelio diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt
ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis, sē in castra recēpērunt.

_Caesar demands hostages and returns to Gaul_

36. Eōdem diē lēgāti ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem dē 5 pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidium quem antē ĭmperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinocti, ĭnfirmis nāvibus hiemi nāvigationem subiciendam nōn ĭexistimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs ĭncolumēs ad continentem per vēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae ĭōsdem portūs quōs reliquaē capere nōn potuērunt et paulō ĭnfrā dēlātæ sunt. 20

THE REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII

_The Morini attack Caesar’s troops_

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedaē ad ducti primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnerē iussērunt. Cum 25
illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem homi-
num circiter milia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar
omnem ex castrīs equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim

nostrī militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius
5 hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus ac-
ceptīs complūrēs ex his occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equi-
tātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs tergā
vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.
They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, qui rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Qui cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē recipērent non habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant īsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. 5 At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succisi, aedificiis incēnsīs, quōd Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recepērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnūm hiberna cōnstituit. 10 Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britannia obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū decretā est.
BOOK V

CAESAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.

THE REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

Summary of Chapters 1-39

Cæsar contemplates a second invasion of Britain in the following spring (54 B.C.). He orders the building of a suitable fleet, and goes to northern Italy and thence to Illyricum to settle disturbances there (1). On his return to Gaul he has the new fleet assemble at Port Itius. Trouble among the Treveri calls him thither (2). Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, rival chiefs of the Treveri, appeal to him (3). He settles the dispute in favor of Cingetorix (4).

Cæsar's troops assemble at Port Itius (5).

Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears and tries to make trouble (6). Cæsar is on his guard. Dumnorix flees, but is captured and put to death (7).

Cæsar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships. The natives withdraw from the coast (8). Cæsar lands, and drives the Britons out of their stronghold (9). A storm damages the fleet (10). Cæsar has the ships hastily repaired, and sends word to Labienus, whom he left on the continent, to build others (11).

Cæsar describes the inhabitants of Britain and the resources of the country (12). He tells the shape and the size of the island (13). He describes the customs of the people (14). He again defeats the Britons (15). He describes their methods of fighting (16). He again defeats them (17). He crosses the Thames (18). Various tribes yield to him (19-22).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and distributes his army for the winter (23, 24; the camps are shown on the map facing page 103). Fresh risings occur among the Gauls, with reverses for the Romans (25-37).

Ambiorix, a prince of the Eburones, persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to join the revolt (38). A large force attacks the camp of Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother (39).
THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.
Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemissi si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus visi missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex materiā quam mūnitionis causa comportāverant turres admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae 5 deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō die multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam compleunt. À nostrīs ādem ratioōne quā pridīē resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars noctūnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegris, nōn volnerātīs 10 facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur; pinnae lōricaeeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum 15 quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcerē cōgerētur.

The Nervian chiefs try to persuade Cicero to retire. He refuses

41. Tunc duces principēsque Nerviōrum, qui aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, ēadem 20 quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesāris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnāri.' Addunt ētiam dē Sabinī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, si quicquam ab eīs praesidi spērent quī 25 suis rébus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere consuētūdīnem nōlint; licēre illīs
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK V

per sē incolumibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficiiscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse consuētūdinem populi Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condicionem; si ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adīūtōre ětantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint īmpetrātūrōs.'

_They lay siege to the camp_

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllī pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum consuētūdine ā nōbis cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercītū nactī captīvōs ab ōs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrā-

mentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiī caespītēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōris tribūs milium passuum xv in cir-

15 cūtū mūnitionēm perfēcērunt. Reliquīisque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinēm vālli, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepe-runt.

_They make a furious assault, which is gallantly resisted_

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coörtō ventō fer-

ventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervēfacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepe-runt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hos-

tēs maximō clāmōre, sic uti partā iam atque explōrātā vic-

tōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum ascendere 25 coepe-runt. At tanta militūm virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flamma torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta
REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

atque omnēs fortūnās conflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllo dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquām; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium volnērētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllo constipāverant recessumque primis ultimi nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flamma et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centurīōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recesserunt suōsque 1c omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs si introire vel·lent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of two centurions


Summary of Chapters 45-47

Cicero makes efforts to inform Cæsar of his danger; but the letters are intercepted, and the messengers are put to death. After many days, when Cicero’s forces are reduced almost to the last extremity, a message finally reaches Cæsar through a slave (45).

Cæsar sends directions to his lieutenants. He bids Crassus to come to him at once with one legion. He orders Fabius, with another legion, to advance into the territory of the Atrebates, where he intends to join him on the march. He sends word to Labienus to take one legion and proceed to the territory of the Nervii, if he thinks it wise to do so (46).

Cæsar advances, and meets Crassus, whom he leaves in command at Samarobriva (now Amiens), an important center of supplies. Continuing his march, he is joined by Fabius. Labienus writes to Cæsar of the danger in withdrawing one of his legions from winter quarters. He describes what has taken place among the Eburones, and says that he is threatened by the forces of the Treveri (47).

How a letter is conveyed to Cicero

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com- mūni salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs
The Gauls abandon the siege and march against Caesar, who avoids a conflict.

49. Galli rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicero datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem supra dēmōnstrāvimus repetit qui litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōnfīrmat. Posterō die lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum III prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī periculi rēs tantulīs cōpiis iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem
Mere skirmishes take place between the cavalry; for the Gauls are awaiting reënforcements, and Caesar, through a pretense of fear, tries to draw the enemy to his own ground. At daybreak the Gallic cavalry approaches Caesar’s camp, and engages with his cavalry. Caesar orders his cavalry to yield and retire to the camp, while throughout the camp he causes a display of fear (50).

The Gauls are now tempted to give battle, and boldly attack the camp. Caesar orders a general sally, and routs the enemy with great loss (51).

Caesar reaches the camp of Cicero, and congratulates him and his men on their gallant defense

52. Longius prósequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō détrimentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Ínstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnitionēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātæ. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū
Sabini et Cotta certius ex captivis cognóscit. Posterò diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirma; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgāti sit acceptum, hōc aequōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālii et virtūte eōrum expiātō 5 incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

Summary of Chapters 53–58

The report of Cæsar’s victory reaches Labienus. When the Treveri hear what has taken place, Indutiomarus, their chief, defers his intended attack on Labienus. All signs now point to a general uprising of the Gauls, and Cæsar decides to spend the winter with his army (53). Cæsar calls the chiefs of the states to him, and is able to restrain a large part of Gaul; but the Senones and other tribes are ready to revolt (54). The Treveri, led by Indutiomarus, lose no time in making preparations (55). Many tribes join Indutiomarus, and he decides to attack Labienus (56). Labienus acts cautiously. He keeps his forces within his fortifications, and uses whatever means he has to feign fear (57). By an unexpected sally he puts the enemy to flight. Indutiomarus is captured and slain. The forces of the Eburones and Nervii withdraw, and Gaul becomes more peaceful (58).
BOOK VI

CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine, a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

Summary of Chapters 1–8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sends recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requests Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which were enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desires these reënforcements to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions are added to his forces in Gaul (1). Cæsar learns what the Treveri and others are doing, and hastens his plans (2).

His first move is a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he lays waste. Then he sets out against the Senones and Carnutes, and receives the submission of both states without a battle (3, 4). He next makes a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone have failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdraw into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar follows them, ravaging their country, until ambassadors are sent to make peace (5, 6).

While Cæsar is thus engaged, the Treveri make preparation to attack Labienus, who is wintering in their territories. Timely reënforcements
permit Labienus to assume the offensive. He attacks the Treveri, while they are waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces takes possession of their country (7, 8).

_Cæsar builds his second bridge across the Rhine_

Cæsar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germāni auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs miserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiōrīx receptum habēret. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō supra eum locum quō ante exercitum tradūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratione, magnō militum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficītur.

_He crosses, and spares the Ubii_

Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubīi, qui ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem
venerant, purgandī suī causā ad eum légātōs mittunt quī
doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitāte in Trēverōs missa
neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant ut sībi parcat,
ne commūni odiō Germanōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus
poenās pendant; si amplius obsidum velit dāri, pollicentur.
Cognītā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse;
Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; adītūs viāsque in Suēbōs
perquirit.

The Ubii inform Cæsar that the Suebi are assembling their forces

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior Suēbōs
omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus
quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs
equitātūsque mittant. His cognītis rēbus rem frūmentāriam
prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligīt, Ubiis imperat ut
pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant,
— spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cībā-
riōrum adductōs, ad iniquam pugnandi condiciōnem posse
dēdūci; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant
quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest

Ilī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt:
Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntii dē exercitū
Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrunique cōpiis
quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse;
silvam esse ibi infinitā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bā-
cenis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō
obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscō-
rum iniūriis incursionibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae ini-
tium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituīsse.'
A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non aliēnum esse videtur de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et quō differant hae nātiōnes inter sēsē propōnere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Gallia nōn sōlum in omnibus civitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factīōnes sunt; eārumque factīōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum consiliōrumque redate. Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plebe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitātēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

The factional struggle between the Haedui and Sequani

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factīōnis principēs erant Haedui, alterius Sēquani. Hi, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summam auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēae), Germānōs atque Arioqvistum sībi adiūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omni nōbilitātē Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnum partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēisque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et públicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs consilī initūrōs, et partem finitimi agrī per vim
occupatam possidèrent, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinérunt. Qua necessitāte adductus, Diviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum prefectus infectā rē redierat.

The favor of Cæsar gives the Hādui the supremacy

Adventū Cæsaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus 5 Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Cæsarem comparātīs, quod ei, qui sē ad eōrum amicītiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequōre imperiō sē ĩtī vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani princīpātum dimiserant.

The Remi hold the second place

10 In eōrum locum Rēmi successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Cæsarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei qui propter veterēs inimicītīas nūllō modō cum Haeduis coniungi poterant sē Rēmis in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; īta et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē princīpes habērentur Haedui, secundum locum dignitātis Rēnī obtinērent.

The Gallic nobility and the common people

13. In omni Gallīā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene 20 servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibētur consiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servītūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servīs. Sed dē his duōbus 25 generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.
The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Illi rēbus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplinae causā concurrīt, magnōque hi sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam fērē dē omnibus contrōversiīs publicīs privātīisque cōnstituunt; et, si quod est admīssum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversiā est, idem dēcernunt, praeemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stētīt, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Hae poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quībus ita est interdīctum, hi numerō implōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, adītum eōrum sermōnemque défugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, nēque ēis petentibus iūs reddītur nēque honōs īllus commūnicātur.

Their organization and their meetings


Their prerogatives and system of education

14. Drūdēs ā bēllō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praeemiis et suā
sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos non nulli vicen nos in disciplinatae permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis feri rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituiisse videntur: quod neque in vol- gus disciplinam efferri velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos minus memoriae studere — quod feri plerisque accidit ut praesidi o litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs

In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maximae ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecet. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventutii tradunt.

The knights do the fighting

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod feri ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut inlatae propulsarent), omnés in bellis versantur; atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientésque habet. Hanc unam grätiam potentiamque novërunt.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

25 16. Nati o est omnis Gallorum admodum dedicata religioniis; atque ob eam causam qui sunt affecti graviorebus morbis quique in proelis periculisque versantur, aut pro
A DRUID SACRIFICE
victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācāri arbitrantur; públicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnītūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammae examinantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum qui in ūrōtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā 'sint comprehēnsi, grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia 10 dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods whom the Gauls worship


To Mars they give the spoils of war

Time is measured by the number of nights

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātāles et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequatur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquis vitae institūtis hōc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adulēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerīli aetāte in pūblico in cōnspectū patris 10 adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communicānt. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūncitum ratio habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā 15 superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sīcūt in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspicioānem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem 20 modum quaestionem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciatās interficiunt.

Funera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordi fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hānc memoriam 25 servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dilēctōs esse cōnstatābat, iūstis fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent légibus sānc tum, si quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūni-cet; quod sāpe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsī rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdīni prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

The customs of the Germans are very different from those of the Gauls


Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned yearly by the magistrates and leading men.

22. Agri cultūrae nōn student, maiōrque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāsēō, carne cōnsistent. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agri attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine
capit studium belli gerendi agri cultūrā commūtēnt; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessionibus expellant; nē accurātius ad frigora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniāe cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem continent, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequāri videat.

*They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land*


*They give great power to their chiefs*

Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui eī bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habēant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

*They rob outsiders, but respect guests*

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exerćendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fīeri praedīcant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, qui sequī velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt eī qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque a multitūdine conlaudantur; qui ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omnīmque hīs rērum postea
EARLY GERMANS

"Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studios rei militaris consistit".
Fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāntōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque communicatūr.

**Summary of Chapters 24–44**

The Gauls were once more valorous than the Germans, and sent colonies across the Rhine; but now they are inferior to them (24). The Hercynian forest and its animals are described (25–28).

Cāsar returns to Gaul and proceeds against Ambiorix, who has the good fortune to escape (29, 30). The forces of Ambiorix disband, and withdraw to the forest and marshes (31).

Cāsar marches to Aduatuca, and puts Quintus Cicero in command there (32). He then divides his forces, and proceeds to search for Ambiorix (33). Having learned of the difficulties before him, he seeks alliance with Gallic tribes against the Eburones, the people of Ambiorix (34).

The Sugambri, a German tribe near the Rhine, cross the river to join in plundering the Eburones, and advance toward Cicero’s camp (35). Cicero unwisely sends out large numbers of his men to forage (36). The Germans assault the camp and cause a panic (37). Publius Sextius Baculus again distinguishes himself (38). The foragers return, and reach the camp with some difficulty and loss (39, 40). The Germans lose hope and withdraw. Cāsar arrives. Ambiorix again escapes (41, 42).

Cāsar inflicts further military severities on the resisting tribes. He then distributes his legions in winter quarters and sets out for Italy (43, 44).
QUIÉTĀ Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdi caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italīae coniūrarērent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et adśingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hāc impulsī occasiōne qui iam ante sē populi Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia īnīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Gallīae fortūnam; omni- bus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemīis dēposcunt quī belli initium faciēnt et sui capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primīs ratiōnem esse īnhabitam dicunt, priusquām eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū iner- clūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātōr sine
praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interfici quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the revolt. Rapid spread of the news

2. His rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in prae-sentĭā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanctiātur petunt, conlātīs militāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquis déserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōnstitūtō, a conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, civēsque Rōmānōs qui negotiandi causā ibi cōnsitertant, in ĕīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equī-tem Rōmānum, qui reī frūmentāriāe iūssū Caesaris praerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae ma-ior atque inlūstriōr incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regionēsque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter clx.

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

4. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summæ potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater principātum
totius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod regnum adpetebat, a civitate erat interfectus,—convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius consiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur a Gobannitōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet delēctum egen·tium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam per·dūcit; hortātur ut communis libertātis causā arma capiant; magnisque coāctis cópiis adversāriōs suōs, a quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis ap·pellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo·nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīces, Andōs, reliquōsque omnēs qui Oce·anum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsi·dēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.
iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmis equitātīi studet.

_He maintains severe discipline_

Summae diligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplici dubitantēs cōgit: nam maiōre com-
missō dēlictō ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

_He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Hādui to send them assistance_

5. His supplicīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgā-
tōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

_The Hādui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix_

Hādui dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidīō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīisque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsili fuisse cognōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arverni sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod
nihil nóbis cónstat, nón vidéitur pró certó esse pónendum. Biturigés eórum discessú statim sē cum Arvernis iungunt.

*Cæsar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul*

6. His rébus in Itáliam Cæsari nŭntiátis, cum iam ille urbánās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiórem in statum pervēnisse intellegérerit, in Trānsalpinam Galliánum prófectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesserit, sē absentē in itinere proeliō dimicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiēti vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committi vidēbat.

*He proceeds to Narbo to counteract the plans of Lucterius*


*Cæsar crosses the Cévennes Mountains through the snow. Vercingetorix goes to protect the Arverni*

8. His rébus comparātis, repressō iam Lucterīō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī mōns Cēvenna, quī Arvernōs ab
Helviis disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore anni altissimā nive iter impedībatur, tamen, discussā nīve in altītūdinem pedum vi atque ita viis patefactīs, summō militūm labōrē ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnīt. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs existimāvānt, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam homīnī eō tempore anni sēmitae patue-rant, equītībus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagen-tur et quam maximum hosti-bus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūn-tī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōn-sulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripi patiātur, præsertīm cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille preci-bus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Cæsār leavēs Brūtus in command and sees reēnforcements. Ver-cingetorīx movēs toward Gorgobīna, a town of the Boī

9. At Cæsar bīduum in his locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecepēratur, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgēndī ab exercitū discēdit: Brūtum adulēscēntem his cōpiis praeficēt; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equītēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absīt. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximēs potest itineribus Viennam pervenīt. Ibi nactus recentēm equitātūm, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praeúmerat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Hæduōrum in Lingō-nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Hæduīs inirētur cōnsili, celeritātē

*Cæsar, though much perplexed, determines to relieve the Boii*

10. Magnam hae rēs Caesari difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: si reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiārii Haeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcis in eō praeśidiōm positum vidēret; si mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectionibus labōrāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetē quam, tanta contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs qui dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdīnci legiōnibus atque impedimentīs totius exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

**Summary of Chapters 11–62**

Cæsar takes two towns near the Loire (11). Noviodunum surrenders; but when the inhabitants see Vercingetorix approaching, they prepare for defense (12). Cæsar takes Noviodunum, and marches toward Avaricum (13). Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country, and thus keep the Romans from supplies (14). The Gauls burn many of their cities, but spare Avaricum (15, 16). The Roman soldiers suffer from lack of food, but maintain a resolute spirit (17). Cæsar marches to engage with Vercingetorix (18). But he finds him too strongly entrenched to warrant an attack (19).
Vercingetorix is accused of treason; but he clears himself, and appeals to his countrymen (20, 21). The Gauls defend Avaricum with much skill against the Roman works (22, 23). They set fire to the Roman works, and make a sortie, displaying great heroism (24, 25). They finally decide to abandon Avaricum, but are dissuaded by the women (26). The Romans storm the walls and take the town. Most of the inhabitants are put to the sword (27, 28).

Vercingetorix appeals to the Gauls to continue the war (29). His appeal inspires them to further efforts, and he levies new troops (30, 31).

The Hædui appeal to Cæsar to settle a dispute (32). Cæsar goes to them in person (33). He then sends Labienus northward, and he himself proceeds to Gergovia (34, 35). Here he gains an advantage of position over Vercingetorix (36).

Some of the Hædui organize a revolt (37). Litaviccus, commander of the Hæduan contingent, halts his troops at some distance from Gergovia, and persuades them to desert the Roman cause (38). Eporedorix, a Hæduan, conveys the news to Cæsar (39). Cæsar goes to the Hædui and suppresses the revolt (40). He then hastens back to Gergovia to relieve Fabius (41). Further plots are made among the Gauls (42). The Hædui seek reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not cease plotting (43).

Cæsar now devotes himself to the capture of Gergovia (44). He skillfully arranges his troops, and by a sudden attack captures the enemy's camp. His troops are eager to assault the town (45–47). The Gauls receive reënforcements (48). After a close and doubtful struggle the Romans are driven back. Cæsar reproves them for their too great eagerness, but praises their courage (49–52). After some skirmishing Cæsar advances toward the Hædui (53). He is confirmed in his suspicion that the Hædui mean to revolt, but tries to dissuade them (54). Eporedorix and Viridomarus kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar's stores, and burn the town (55). Cæsar crosses to the north side of the Loire (56).

Labienus marches toward Lutetia, and is opposed by Camulogenus, a chief of the Auler ci (57). Labienus falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. He is followed by the enemy (58). He now learns of Cæsar's repulse at Gergovia, and of the spread of the Gallic revolt (59). By a stratagem he induces the Gauls to divide their forces, and having attacked and routed them, he joins Cæsar (60–62).
Further extension of the revolt. Vercingetorix appointed commander in chief by a general vote. The Hædui dissatisfied


Vercingetorix lays extensive plans to spread the revolt and weaken the Romans

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs civitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī rei cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, celeriter convenire iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dimi-câtūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre;

_Cæsar sends to Germany for cavalry_

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vigintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Cæsare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvī suā sponte cum finitimīs proelīō congressī pelluntur, et C. Valerīō Donnotaurō, Caburi filiō, prīncipe civitātīs, complūribusque aliis interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiis magnā cum cūrā et diligentīa suōs finēs tuentur. Cæsar, quod hostēs equitātū suām superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā ēx prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equītēsque ab his accessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, qui inter eōs proelīāri cōnsuérent. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equeī útēbantur, á tribūnis militum reliquisque equītibus Rōmānīs atque évocātīs equīs sūmit Germānīisque distribuīt.
Cæsar in Sequanos per extre\n
mum passum x ab Römânis trinis castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātīisque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum venissent tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praeuentem obtinen-
dam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctis cōpiīs rever-
sūrōs neque finem bellandi factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posset; si, id quod magis futūrum cōnfidat, relictīs impedimentīs suae salūti cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īri. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quin nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audēt, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciunt animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostībus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sanctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāri oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem adītum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

*The attack is made, and the Gauls are defeated with considerable loss*

66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiāe ex Arvernis equiēsque qui tōti Galliāe erant imperātī con-
veniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Cæsar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Römānīs triniōs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātīisque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rō-
mānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praeuentem obtinen-
dam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctis cōpiīs rever-
sūrōs neque finem bellandi factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posset; si, id quod magis futūrum cōnfidat, relictīs impedimentīs suae salūti cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īri. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quin nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audēt, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciunt animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostībus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sanctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāri oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem adītum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Cæsar suum quoque
DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE

A Cæsar's camp the night before the battle
B The three camps of Vercingetorix
C The Roman column of march at the time of the attack
D The Gallic lines of infantry
E Cæsar's camp the night after the battle
F Cæsar's Roman cavalry
G Cæsar's German cavalry
H The Gallic cavalry
equitatum tripartitô divisum contrâ hostem ire iubet. Pugnâtur uná omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta intrâ legiônês recipiuntur. Si quâ in parte nostri labóraère aut gravius premì vidêbantur, eò signa Ínferri Cæsar aciemque convertì iubèbat; quae rês et hostês ad insequendum tardábatur et nostrôs spê auxili cônfirmábat. Tandem Germâni ab dextrô latere summum iugum nacti hostês locô dêpellunt: fugientês üsque ad flùmen, ubi Ver- cingetorix cum pedestribus cöpiis cônséderat, persequuntur complûrêsque interficiunt. Quâ rê animadversâ reliqui, nê circumvenirentur veriti, sê fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Três nóbilissimi Haedui capti ad Caesarem perdûcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui contrôversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat; et Cavarillus, qui post défectiônem Litavicci pedestribus cöpiis praefuerat; et Eporëdorix, qua duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cum Sëquanis bellô contenderant.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Caesar determines to invest

68. Fugàtô omni equitâtû Vercingetorix cöpiâs suâs, ut prô castris conlocáverat, reduxit prôtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ëdûci et sê subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductís, duâbus legiônibus praesidiô relictís, secûtus hostês quantum diëi tempus est passum, circiter 111 milibus ex novissimô agmine interfectís, alterô dië ad Alesiam castra fêcit. Perspectô urbis sitû perterritisque hostibus, quod equitâtû (quâ maximê parte exercitûs cônfidêbant) erant pulsi, adhortâtus ad labôrem militês Alesiam circumvâllâre instituit.
Description of Alesia and its defenses

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnāri nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum iii in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem vi pedum prae-duēxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus xi mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnis locis erant posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellis interdīū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs prae-sidiis tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle in the plain. The Gauls are defeated with great slaughter

minus qui intrā mūnitioāēs erant Galli perturbantur; venirī ad sē cōnfēstim existimantēs ad arma conclaṃant; nónnnulli perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry and calls for help from without

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitioāēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsiliūm capīt omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quīsque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtes 10 tāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod si indiligentiorēs fuerint, milia homīnūm dēlecta lxxx ūnā sēcum interītūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frumentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. His datīs mandātis, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiōn equitātum dīmittit; frumentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis pōenam eīs qui nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magnā erat cópiā a Mandubiis compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētiri instituit; cópiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliāe exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Summary of Chapters 72–90

The last chapters of the seventh book (72–90) describe the siege and capture of Alesia. Froude says of this achievement: "The most daring feat in the military annals of mankind had been successfully accomplished. A Roman army which could not at the utmost have amounted to fifty thousand men had held blockaded an army of eighty thousand, not weak
Asiatics, but European soldiers, as strong and as brave individually as the Italians were; and they had defeated, beaten, and annihilated another army which had come expecting to overwhelm them, five times as large as their own."

Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 152). Cæsar's own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar's faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.
THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82–112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPÉIUS paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōntiōnātusque apud cūntum exercītum suīs agit grātiās, Scipiōnis militēs coḥortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum 5 Scipiōne honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctis cōpiis Pompēi duōbusque magnīs exercītibus coṇiūnctīs pristīna omnīum cōnfīrmātur opinīō et spēs victōriāe augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, id morāri reditum in Italiam vidērētur, et, si quando quid Pompeius tardius aut cōnsiderātius faceret, ūnius esse negōtium diēi, sed illum dēlectāri imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicerent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiīs ac sacerdōtīis conten- débant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfīniēbant, alii domōs bonaque eōrum qui in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant; 167
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound

civilis, -e, civil; of citizens

classicum, -i, n., signal; trumpet

cōnsiderātus, -a, -um, part. as adj., with deliberation

cōnsulāris, -e, of consular rank

cōntionor, -āri, -ātus, harangue, make an address
dēfiniō, -ire, -iī, -itūs, determine

Hirrus, -ī, m., Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey

pāriō, -ere, peperi, partus, produce; gain

Parthī, -orum, m., the Parthians

particeps, -cipis, m., sharer

praetōrium, -i, n., a general's tent

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., praetorian; masc. as noun, ex-prætor

sacerdōtium, -i, n., priesthood

Scipīō, -onis, m., Quintus Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio, colleague of Pompey

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly

3. partā iam victoriā: 'as if the victory had already been gained.'
6. apud eum: 'at his quarters.' 7. tendi: 'to be set up' (lit. 'stretched').
12. tardius aut cōnsiderātius: 'rather slowly or deliberately.' 14. servōrum habēre numerō: 'regarded as slaves.'
16. in annōs: 'for succeeding years.' 18. oportēretne Lūcili Hirri . . . absentis ratiōnem habēri:

whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.' 21. praestāret . . . recēpisset: 'that he should fulfill that which he had guaranteed to him at his departure.' 22. eius: i.e. Pompey's. 24. recūsārent: 'made objection.'

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacerdōtiō Caesaris Domitius, Scipīō Spintherque Lentulus cotidiānis contentiōnibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam dignitātemque iactāret, Scipīō adfinitāte Pompeī cōnfideret.
Postulavit etiam L. Afrāniunm prōditionis exercitus Acūtius Rufus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā diceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dixit placēre sibi bellō cōnfectō ternās tabellās dari ad iūdicandum eis qui ārēnās essent senātōrii bellōque ūnā cum ipsis interfuisserunt, sententiāsque dē singulis ferrent que Rōmae remānsissent quique intrā praesidiā Pompēī fuissent neque operam in rē militāri praestītissent; ūnam fore tabellam qui liberandōs omni periculō cēnērent; alteram qui capitis damnārent; tertiam qui pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suis aut dē praemiis pecūniās aut dē persequentis inimīcitiis agēbant, nec quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.

Acūtius, -i, m., Acutius Rufus, mentioned only here
Afrānius, -i, m., Lucius Afranius, a lieutenant of Pompey
Domitius, -i, m., Lucius Domitius, Ahenobarbus, a supporter of Pompey

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, punish (by fine)
senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial
Spinther, -eris, m., Publius Corne-lius Lentulus Spinther, one of Pompey's officers
tabella, -ae, f., tablet, ballot

1. sacerdōtiō: Cæsar's office as pontifex maximus. 3. cum... osten-tāret: 'Lentulus urging the respect due to his age.' 4. urbānam grātiam dignitātemque: 'his influence and standing in the city.' 5. adfinitāte: Pompey had married Scipio's daughter. 6. Postulāvit... exercitūs: 'accused of betraying the army.' 9. ad iūdicandum: 'for voting.' 10. sententiās... quī: 'that they should express their opinions on each one of those who' etc. The antecedent of quī is (eis) singulīs. 13. liberandōs: refers to quī Rōmae remānsissent etc. 14. quī capitis damnā- rent: 'who would inflict the death penalty.' With verbs of condemning etc. the penalty is expressed sometimes by the genitive (as capitis) and sometimes by the ablative (as pecūniā in the same line).—quī pecūniā multārent: 'who would inflict a fine.' 16. agēbant: 'wrangled.'
Cæsar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Ré frumentariā praeparāta confirmātisque militibus et satis longō spatiō temporis a Dyrrachinis proelīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum vidērētur, tentandum Cæsar existimāvit quidnam Pompēius prōpositī aut voluntātīs ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit, aciemque inscrūxīt, primō suis locis paulōque ā castrīs Pompēī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suis collibusque Pompēīānis aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs confirmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of light-armed infantry and horse

Superius tamen institūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset inferior, adulēscents atque expeditōs ex antesignānīs ēlēctīs ad pernicītātem armīs inter equītēs proelīāri iūbēret, quī cotidīānā consuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proelīōrum perciperent. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equītum mille etiam apertiōribus locīs vii milium Pompēīānōrum impetum, cum adēsset ūsus, sustinēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Nāmque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus quōs perfūgisse ad Pompēium suprā docuimus cum quibusdam interfēcit.

antesignānus, -i, m., a soldier fighting in the first line

Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, of Dyrrachium

pernicītās, -ātis, f., swiftness

Pompēīānus, -a, -um, of Pompey

tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make trial

3. quō ... vidērētur: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of quō is spatiō. 4. quidnam ... habēret: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained
CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR CONSUL

Despairing of a battle, Caesar decides to break camp

85. Pompēius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad īnīmās rādicēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, si inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar, nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompēium existimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam belli ratiōnem iūdicāvit, uti castra 5 ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendis castris plūribusque adeundis locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā u térētūr, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsionem dimicandī nanciscerētur et insolitum ad labōrem Pompēī exercitum cotidiānis itineribus dēfatigāret. 10

Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Caesar addresses his troops and leads them forth

His cōnstitūtīs rēbus signō iam profectionīs datō tabernāculisque dētēnsis, animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotidiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēī progressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dimicāri vidērētur. Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 15 “Differendum est,” inquit, “iter in praesentīa nōbis et de proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcamus. Animō simus ad dimicandum parāti; nōn facile occāsionem postea reperiēmus”; confestimque expeditās cōpiās edūcit.
dētentō, -ere, -tendi, -tensus, take down (a tent) (lit. unstretch)  
eliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitus, entice out, draw out  
insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unused  
tunc, adv., then, thereupon, forthwith  

3. sē subiceret: 'would advance' ('would expose himself').  
6. semperque... itineribus: 'keep constantly on the move.'  
8. commodiōre... üterētur: 'avail himself of supplies more advantageously.'  
12. extrā: 'contrary to.'  
14. nōn inīquō: i.e. to Caesar.

Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory.  
He explains his plan of attack

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proelīō décertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērique admirātī, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdibilem rem pollicēri; sed rationem cōnsiliā miē accipite, quō fīrmīōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsi equitibus nostris, idque mihi factūrōs cōnfirmaērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere aperto adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbis tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine volnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parāti in posterum et, quoniam fieret dimicandi potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opinīōnem fallerent.

7. quō... prōdeātis: clause of purpose.  
9. sit accessum: impersonal.  
10. prius: to be construed with quam.  
15. in posterum: 'for the future.'— ut: 'as.'  
16. ūsū manūque: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to cōgitāvissent.—reliquōrum: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).
Labienus follows, and speaks with contempt of Caesar's army


All swear never to return to camp unless victorious

Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquis fuit quisquam qui iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnā spē et laetitiā omnium diessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiebant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam peritō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmāri vidēbātur.

autumnus, -ī, m., autumn
Brundium, -ī, n., Brundium, a seaport in southern Italy
laetitia, -ae, f., gladness, joy
pestilentia, -ae, f., scourge, pestilence
Trānspadānus, -a, -um, dwelling across the Po

1. excēpit: 'followed' (in speaking).—cum . . . dēspiceret (et) efferret: 'while he depreciated . . . (and) extolled.' 3. qui . . . dēvicerit: clause of description. 9. continentī: i.e. Italy.—ex eīs: construe with esse factās. 13. quod fuit rōboris: 'what strength there was'; rōboris, partitive genitive. 18. diessum est: impersonal, but translate, 'they departed.'

beneficiārius, -i, m., a soldier exempt
Ciliciēnis, -e, Cilician
from menial duties; a favorite
Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

1. ad hunc modum: 'after this fashion.' 4. ex senātūs consūltō: 'by a decree of the senate.' 5. Mediam aciem: 'the middle of the line.'
7. trāductās: sc. esse. 8. Hās . . . existimābat: 'Pompey considered these the steadiest that he had.' 10. numerō: ablative of respect. 14. praesidiō: dative of purpose. 15. impeditīs: 'presenting obstructions.'

Formation of Ceasar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proellīs vehemens attēnūāta, et huic sic adiūn-xit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē lxxx
EXPLANATION

POMPEY’S LINE OF BATTLE

a Two legions turned over to Pompey by Caesar before the Civil War began
b The center, commanded by Scipio
c The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius
d The remaining cohorts
e A river
f The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers
g Pompey
h Pompey’s camp, guarded by seven cohorts

CAESAR’S LINE OF BATTLE

1 The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla
2 The center, commanded by Domitius
3 The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony
4 The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey’s cavalry
5 Caesar, opposite Pompey
6 Caesar’s camp, guarded by two cohorts

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.
constituitās habēbat, quae summa erat milium xxii; cohortēs duās castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul his rēbus animad-10 versīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē a multitūdine equitūm dextrām cornū circumveniretur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtam instituit equi-15 tuique opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque eīus 'diēi victoriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciē tōtique exercitiū imperāvit nē iniussū suō con- curreret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnius, -i, m., Marcus Antonius, the famous triumvir; served in the Civil War under Cæsar and was one of his active partisans attenuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make thin; lessen

Cēsār reminīd his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the signal for battle

90. Exercitum cum militāri mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedīcāret, imprimēs commemorāvit 'testibus sē militibus uti posse quantō studiō pācem petisset; quae per Vatinium in conloquiis, quae per 5 Aulum Clōdium cum Scipīōne ēgisset; quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātīs contendīsset. Neque sē umquam abūti militum sanguine neque rem pūlicam alteru trō exercitū privāre voluisset.' Hāc habita ōrātiōne exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā 10 signum dedit.
abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus, sacrifice
alterutēr, -tra, -trum, either
Libō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Scribonius Libo, father-in-law of Sextus Pompey

2. sua . . . officia: 'his constant services to it.' 3. testibus . . . posse: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. in conloquiis: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus). 6. contendisset: 'he had striven.'

Heroism of Crastinus, a veteran volunteer


centurīa, -ae, f., century, a company of nominally a hundred men
Crāstīnus, -ī, m., Crastinus

2. primum pilum . . . duxerat: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. quam . . . date: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. ille: i.e. Cæsar. 8. ut . . . agās: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Caesar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spati, ut satis esset ad concursum utrūsque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō
He is criticized for so doing

Quod nōbis quidem nūlā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animi incitātiō atque alacritās nāturālīter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antiquītūs institūtūm est ut signa undique concinerent clamoremque univēsī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrēri et suōs incitāri existimaverunt.

admonitus, -ūs, m., advice
concinō, -ere, -ui, ——, sound together
distendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, stretch out; break
excursus, -ūs, m., dash
incitātiō, -onis, f., enthusiasm
īnfringō, -ere, -frēgi, -frāctus, break
innātus, -a, -um, part. of innāscor, inborn
nāturālīter, adv., naturally
praedicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictus, say beforehand; command beforehand, advise
Triāriūs, -i, m., Caius Valerius
Triarius

3. ut . . . excipere: 'to await Cæsar's attack.' 4. distrahi: 'to be thrown into disorder.' 6. in . . . dispositi: 'and that they (i.e. the Pompeians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. leviusque . . . spērābat: 'he hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly'). 8. retentis militibus: ablative absolute with conditional force.—immissis . . . occurrissent: 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled against them.' 11. nōbis: 'to me,' i.e. Cæsar.—nūlā ratiōne: 'with no good reason.' 13. nāturālīter . . . omnibus: 'implanted by nature in all.' 14. neque . . . institūtūm est: 'nor was it a vain institution of our ancestors.'
Cæsar’s men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostri militēs datō signō cum ūnēstis pilis prō-
cucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurri ā Pompēiā-
nīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī suā sponte
cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt,
nē cōnsūmpτis viribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō
temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pīla misērunt cele-
riterque, ut erat praecceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Pompey’s infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry
attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompeīani huic rei defeuērunt. Nam et tēla
missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulerunt et ordinēs
cōnservārunt pilisque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equītēs ab sinistrō Pompeī cornū, ut erat imperā-
tum, ūniversi prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagitā-
riōrum sē prōfūdīt; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn
tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equītēsque Pompeīi
hoc ācrius instāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ā
latere apertō circumēre coeperunt.

Caesar’s fourth line stampedes Pompey’s cavalry, destroys the archers
and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam institu-
erat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illī celerīter prōcucurrē-
runt ūnēstisque signīs tantā vi in Pompeīi equītēs impetum,
fecērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret omnēsque conversi nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtīnus incitātī fugā montēs
altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtīs omnēs sagittāriī fun-
ditōrēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt.
Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānis circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortī.

explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, unfold; extend
infēstus, -a, -um, hostile; in hostile array, i.e. with weapons and standards advanced

prōfundō, -ēre, -fūdī, -fūsus, with sē, rush forward
stringō, -ēre, strīnxī, strictus, draw
turmātim, adv., by squadrons

1. cum: conjunction. 2. concurri: impersonal. 3. īsū . . . exer-
citāti: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. huic rei dēfuērunt: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. etiam tum: 'even under these circumstances.'

Caesar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry breaks and flees

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integri dēfessis successissent, alīi autem ā tergō adorlrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuē-
runt atque ūniversi terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit, quin ab eis cohortibus quae contra equitātum in quārta aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriāe orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab his enim primum equitātus est pulsus, ab eisdem factae caedēs sagit-
tāriōrum ac fundītorum, ab eisdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

Pompey quits the field, flees to the camp, and retires into his tent in utter despair

Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vidit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfidēbat perterritum animadvertit, aliis quoque diffīsus aciē excessit prōtīnusque sē in castra

clārē, adv., loudly, clearly, distinctly
diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, distrust, not have confidence

3. défessis successissent: 'had come to the support of those who were exhausted.' 5. Caesarem fefellit: 'escape Cæsar's notice.' 7. ut: 'as.' 12. ut: 'when.' 14. aliis . . . diffīsus: 'having no confidence in the others.' 17. sī quid dūrius acciderit: 'if it goes too hard with us.' 18. circumeō: translate as future; also cōnfirmō. 20. summae rei difficēns: 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Caesar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

95. Caesar Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs nūllum spatium perterritis dare oportēre existimāns, miliēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsi magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parāti 5 imperiō pāruērant.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae in- dustriē défendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus bar- barisque auxiliīs. Nam quī aciē refūgerant miliēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missī plērique armīs signīs- que militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum défēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstiterant multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī volneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs
ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum in altissimōs montēs, qui ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfugērunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fugi, ---, flee, industriē, adv., with energy

Thrāx, -ācis, m., a Thracian

3. beneficiō: 'favor.' 4. magnō aestū: ablative absolute.—rēs erat perducta: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. ducibus... tribūnis-que: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castris Pompeī vidēre licēre trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus exposītum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lūci etiam Lentuli et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriāe fidūciam dēsignārent, ut facile existimāri posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius dieī timuisses, qui nōn necessāriās conquirerent voluptātēs. At hi miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitūi Caesāris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum défuissent.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

Pompeius, iam cum intrā vāllum nostri versārentur, equum nactus dētrāctis insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō ītinere nōn intermissō, comitātū

equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dicebātur, querēns tantum sē opinīōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriām spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, m., attendance; cōnstrātus, -a, -um, part. of cōn- company sternō, covered over, paved
hedera, -ae, f., ivy
Larisa, -ae, f., Larissa, a town in Thessaly
Lentulus, -i, m., Lucius Cornelius Lentulus
nimius, -a, -um, excessive

5. victoriae fiduciam: 'confidence of victory.'
6. non: construe with necessariis.
7. conquirere: subjunctive in a descriptive causal clause.
8. luxuriam obiciabant: 'imputed extravagance.'
10. detractis... imperatris: 'stripping (from himself) the trappings of commander in chief.'
11. tantum... fefellisse: 'his expectations had so far failed him.'
12. ab eo: sc. genere.

Cæsar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues the retreating enemy with four legions

97. Caesar castris potitus, a militibus contendit nē in praeda occupātī reliqui negotī gerendī facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē imperātā monem opere circummūnire īnstituit. Pompēianī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi ei locō, relictō monte, universī iugīs eius Larisam versus sē recipere coepėrunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās dividit partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IIII sēcūm legiōnēs dūxit commodō-reque itinere Pompēianis occurrere coepit et progressus milia passuum vi aciem instrūxit.

He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain

Pauci ordinis senatorii, qui se cum eis coniunxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīverunt.

aquor, -āri, -ātus sum, get water subluō, -ere, ——, -lūtus, flow at sēclūdō,-ere,-clūsī, -clūsus, shut off the foot of


They surrender and are pardoned. Caesar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs qui in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passisque palmis prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīverunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et paucā apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, militibusque suīs commendāvit, nē qui eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsiderārent. Hāc adhibita diligentiā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sécum dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra reversī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnit.

recūsātiō, -ōnis, f., refusal, objection requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētus, rest


Caesar’s losses

99. In eō proelīō nōn amplius cc militēs dēsiderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius
mentionem supra féceimus, gladió in òs adversum coniectó. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscéns dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimábât eò proelió excellentiissimam virtútém Crástiní fuisse, optimèque eum dé sè meritum iùthicábat.

Pompey’s losses

Ex Pompéiánò exercitu circiter milia xv cecidisse vidébantur, sed in déditionem vénérunt amplius milia XXIII 10 (namque etiam cohortés quae præsidió in castellis fuerant sè sè Sullae dédiderunt), multi præterea in fínitimás civitátes refúgérunt; signaque militária ex proelió ad Caesarem sunt relátà clxxx et aquilae viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiéns, cum víres eum lassitúdine dèfécessent, ab equitibus est interfactus.

e Excelléns, -entís, part. of excelló, falsus, -a, -um, untrue
surpassing mentió, -ónis, fí, mention

1. désiderávit: ‘he suffered the loss of’ (lit. ‘he missed’). 4. gladió . . . coniectó: ‘struck right in the face by a sword.’ 5. quod . . . dixerat: in chapter 91. 7. optimè . . . meritum: ‘that he had most excellently served his (Caesar’s) interests.’

Caesar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to raise an army

102.1 Caesar omnibus rébus relictis perseverendum sibi Pompéium existimávit, quáscumque in partés sè ex fugá recépisset, né rúrsus cópiás comparáre aliás et bellum renováre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitátiú efficere poterat, cotidié prógrediébatur, legiónemque ùnam minóribus itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat édictum Pompéi nómine Amphipoli pròpositum, uti omnès eius pròvinciae iüniórés, Graeci civésque Rómâni, iürandi causá convenírent. Sed

1 Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.
utrum avertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset,
10 ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an
novis dēlēctibus, si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre
cōnārētur, existimārī nōn poterat.

At Caesar's approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōnstitit et, vocātis ad sē
Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs
15 corrogātā, cognītō Caesāris adventū, ex eō locō discēssit et
Mytilēnās paucis diēbus vēnit. Bīduum tempestāte retentus
nāvibusque aliis addītīs āctuāriīs in Ciliciam atque inde
Cyprum pervēnit.

At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes
too is hostile

Ibi cognōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium cīviumque
20 Rōmānōrum qui illic negotiārentur arcem captam esse
excludendī suī causā, nūntiōsque dimissōs ad eōs qui sē ex
fugā in finitimās cīvitātēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antio-
chiam adirent; id si fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō
futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, qui superiōre annō cōnsul
25 fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulāri ac nōn nūllis aliis acciderat
Rhodi; qui cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in
insula vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant
missīisque ad eōs nūntiīs ut ex his locīs discēderent, contrā
voluntātem suam nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque dē Caesaris
30 adventū fāma ad cīvitātēs perferēbātur.

āctuārius, -a, -um, fast-sailing
Amphipolis, -is, f., a city of Macedonias
Antiochēnsis, -e, adj., of Antioch;
masc. as noun, an inhabitant of Antioch
Antiochia, -ae, f., Antioch, capital of Syria
Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, a district of southeastern Asia Minor
corrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, collect,
obtain by soliciting
Cyprus, -i, f., Cyprus, an island near Cilicia

 Cáesar's pursuit of Pompey

Cyprus, -i, f., Cyprus, an island near Cilicia

Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium, a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile

Quibus cognitis rébus Pompéius, dépositó adeundae Syriae cónsilió, pecúniá societátis sublátā et á quibusdam privátis súmptá et aeris magnó pondere ad militárem úsum in návēs impositó duóbusque milibus homínium armátis, partim quōs ex famíliis societátis délérerat, partim á 5 negótiátóribus coégerat, quōs ex suís quisque ad hanc rem idóneós existimábatur, Pélúsium pervénit.

Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in Alexandria

Ibi cásū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnis cópiis cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucis ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amicōs régnō expulerat; 10 castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castris distābant. Ad eum Pompéius mísit, ut, prō hospitiō atque amicitia patris, Alexandriā recipérētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegerētur.
15 Sed quī ab eō missi erant, cōnfecτō légātiōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloqui coepeτrant eōsque hortāri ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā Gabinius Alexandriam trādūxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem puerī, reliquerat.

Alexandria, -ae, f., Alexandria, capital of Egypt
Cleopatra, -ae, f., Cleopatra, the famous Egyptian queen
Gabinius, -ī, m., Aulus Gabinius, an officer of Cæsar
negōtiātor, -ōris, m., business man

Pēlūsium, -ī, n., Pelusium, a city on the Nile
Ptolemaeus, -ī, m., Ptolemy, Egyptian king
societās, -ātis, f., esp. publicānōrum, guild of revenue collectors
Syria, -ae, f., Syria

2. pecūniā . . . sūmptā: 'taking money from the tax collectors' guild and exacting it from certain private citizens.' 5. ex familiis: 'from the slaves.' 6. ex suis: 'of his friends.' 8. aētāte: ablative of respect. 11. spatīō: ablative of measure of difference. 15. quī: the antecedent is the subject understood of coepeτrant.—ab eō: i.e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. His tunc cognitīs rēbus amīci rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in cūrātiōne erant rēgni, sive tīmōre adducti, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgīō, nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcis inimīci exsistunt, his quī erant ab eō missi palam liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulāri hominem audāciā, et L. Septimum, tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt.
GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS
Pompey is murdered

Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ōrdinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscedit cum paucis suis; ibi ab Achillā et Septimīō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur.

Achillās, -ae, m., Achillas, a prefect of the young Ptolemy Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt cūrātiō, -ōnis, f., management praedō, -ōnis, m., robber, pirate régiius, -a, -um, royal Septimius, -i, m., Lucius Septimius

2. in cūrātiōne erant rēgni: 'held the regency of the kingdom.' 6. hīs: indirect object of respondentur. — palam: contrasts with clam below. 11. ipse: i.e. Pompey. 12. prōductus: 'led on,' 'induced.' — prae- dōnum: 'pirates.' — apud ... dūxerat: 'had commanded a division under him.' 13. cum paucis suis: 'with a few of his men.' 15. in custōdiā: 'while under guard,' or 'in prison.'

Caesar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana's temple at Ephesus

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā evocāsse, ut hīs testibus in summā pecūniāe ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris prōfugisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniāe Caesar auxilium tuli.

Strange events occur on the day of Caesar's victory

Item cōnstābat Ėlide in templō Minervae, repetitis atque enumerātīs diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fecisset, simulācrum Victōriāe, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās sē templī līmenque convertisse. Eōdemque
die Antiochiae in Syriā bis tantus exercitus clamor et signorum sonus exauditus est, ut in mūris armāta civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergami in occultis ac reconditis templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci ādvrā appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriæ, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -i, m., Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey
Asia, -ae, f., Asia Minor
cōāgmentum, -i, n., joint
cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make sacred
Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, the goddess
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to and fro
Ēlis, -idis, f., Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, count, reckon
Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian
Ephe̊sus, -i, f., Ephesus, a city of Ionia
fānum, -i, n., temple
limen, -inis, n., threshold

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess
pavimentum, -i, n., pavement
Pergamum, -i, n., Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor
Ptolemais, -idis, f., Ptolemais, a city of Phœnicia
reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., priest
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, sound, ring out
sonus, -i, m., sound
statua, -ae, f., statue, image
templum, -i, n., temple
Trallēs, -ium, f., Tralles, a city of Caria
tympanum, -i, n., drum, tambourine
valva, -ae, f., door

2. pecūnīās: 'treasures.' 4. testibus in summā: 'witnesses to the amount.' 5. duōbus temporibus: 'on two occasions.' 7. repetītīs . . .
diēbus: 'by recalling and reckoning the dates.' 10. ante: adverb, 'previously.' 12. Antiochiae: locative (as is also Pergamī below); see G. § 120. a.
13. armāta civitās: 'the citizens in arms.' 14. in occultīs ac reconditis templī: 'in secret and remote parts of the temple.' 16. ādvrā: 'adyta,' a Greek neuter plural, 'shrines,' but meaning literally 'not to be entered.'
Cæsar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt


At Alexandria he hears of Pompey’s death. The Alexandrians resent Cæsar’s display of authority

Alexandriae dē Pompēi morte cognōscit atque ibi primum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem militum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praesidi causā reliquerat, et concursum ad sē fieri videt, 15 quod fascēs anteferrēntur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestātem rēgiam minuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuōs diēbus ex concursū multitūdīnis concitātīōnēs fīebant complūrēsque militēs huius urbīs omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

Achaïa, -ae, f., Achaia, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece
Asiaticus, -a, -um, of, or from, Asia
concitātiō, -ōnis, f., uprising
coniectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, infer
fascis, -is, m., a bundle; in the plural, fasces, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor
Fūfius, -ī, m., Quintus Fufius Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar
Rhodiōs, -a, -um, of, or from, Rhodes
sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, allay, settle

videt: ‘saw a crowd throng toward him.’

Caesar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūci iussit, quās ex Pompēiānīs militibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiis tenēbātur, qui nāvigantibus Alexandriā sunt adversissimi venti.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

5 Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis officīō suō convenīre, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dimittere, et dē contrōversiis iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armis disceptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, contend, etēsiāe, -ārum, m., the etesian dispute winds, trade winds

3. etēsiīs: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. officīō suō convenīre: ‘it was in accord with his official duty.’ 11. iūre apud sē: contrasts with inter sē armīs.

The king’s friends, angered, plot to destroy Caesar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūrātiōne rēgni, propter aetātem pueri, nūtricius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothinus. Is primum inter suōs queri atque indignāri coepit rēgem ad causam dicendam ēvocāri; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōnsilī sui nactus ex
regis amicis, exercitum à Pelusiō clam Alexandriam évocavit atque eundem Achillam, cuius superá meminimus, omnibus cōpiis praefecit. Hunc, incitātum suis et régis inflātum pollicitātiōnibus, quae fieri vellet litterīs nūntiīisque édocuit.

The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaei patris hērēdēs erant scriptī ex duōbus filiis maior et ex duābus filiābus ea quae aetāte antecēdēbat. Haec uti fīrent, per omnēs deōs perque foederā quae Rōmae fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolemæus populum Rōmānum obtestābātur. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātae, ut in aerario pone rentur (hae, cum propter pūblicās occupātiōnēs pōnī nōn potuissent, apud Pompēium sunt dēpositae), alterae eōdem exemplō relictae atque obsignātae Alexandriæ prōferēbantur.

adiūtor, -ōris, m., helper, conféd erate
aerārium, -i, n., treasury
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuí, -positus, put down, deposit
eunūchus, -i, m., eunuch
hērēs, -ēdis, c., heir

infātus, -a, -um, part. of inflo, elated
nutricius, -a, -um, fostering; masc. as noun, guardian
prōcūrātō, -onis, f., administration
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring forward, find

3. rēgem... évocārī: 'that a king should be summoned to defend himself.' 13. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae: 'one copy of the will.' 16. alterae: i.e. tabulae. — eōdem exemplō: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillas marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē hīs rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse maximē vellet prō commūni amicō atque arbitrō contrōversiās rēgum compōnere, subitō exercitus rēgius equitatusque omnis venire Alexandriam nūntiātur. Caesāris cōpiæ nēquāquam erant tantae, ut eis, extrā oppidum si esset 5
dimicandum, cōnfideret. Relinquēbātur ut sē suis locis oppidō tenēret cōnsiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Militēs tamen omnēs in armīs esse iussit, rēgemque hortātus est ut ex suis necessāriis quōs habēret maxīmae auctōritātīs lēgātōs ad Achillum mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātīs ostenderet.

_{He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Caesar's advice_}

Ā quō missī Dioscorīdēs et Serāpiōn, qui ambō lēgāti Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillum pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in cōnspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audiret aut 15 cuius rei causā missī essent cōnsōsceret, corripī atque interfīci iussit; quōrum alter acceptō volnere occupātus per suōs prō occīsō sublātus, alter interfectus est. Quō factō rēgem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficīt, magnam rēgium nōmen apud suōs auctōritātem habēre exīstimāns, et ut 20 potius privātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō cōnsiliō susceptum bellum vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both corripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, seize, compōnō,-ere,-posui,-positus, settle arrest

2. prō: 'in the capacity of.' 10. quid esset suae voluntātīs: 'what his desire was'; voluntātīs, partitive genitive. 16. occupātus per suōs etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. privātō paucōrum et latrōnum . . . cōnsiliō: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

_{The forces of Achillas, their number and character_}

110. Erant cum Achillā cōpiae, ut neque numerō neque genere hominum neque usū rei militāris contemnendae vidērentur. Milia enim xx in armīs habēbat. Haec cōnsībānt ex Gabīniānīs mīlitibus, quī iam in cōnsuētūdīnem Alexan-
5 drīnae vitae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplīnamque
populi Rōmānī dēdidicerant uxōrēsque dūxerant ex quibus plērique liberōs habēbant. Húc accēdēbant conlēctī ex praedōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque provinciācē finitimārumque regiōnum. Multī praetereā capitis damnātī exsulēsque convēnerant; fugitīvis omnibus nostrīs certus erat Alexandrīae receptus certaque vitae condiciō, ut datō nōmine militum essent numerō; si quis ā dominōprehenderētur, cōnsēnsī militum ēripiēbātur, qui vim suōrum, quod in simili culpā versābantur, ipsī prō suō periculō defendēbant. Hi rēgum amīcōs ad mortem dēposcere, hi bona locuplētum diripere, stipendi augendi causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expellere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrīni exercītūs institūtō cōnsuērant. Erant praetereā equītum milia duo. Inveterāverant hi omnēs complūribus Alexandriāe bellīs; Ptolemaeaum patrem in rēgnum redūxerant, Bibuli filiōs duōs interfēcerant, bella cum Aegyptiis gesserant. Hunc ēsum reī militāris habēbant.

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um, of Alexandriā
Bibulus, -i, m., Marcus Calpurnius Bibulus, naval commander under Pompey
contemnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptus, despise
dēdiscō, -ere, -didici, ——, forget
exsul, -ulis, m., exile
Gabīniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius licentia, -ae, f., looseness
locuplēs, -ētis, rich
prehendō, see prēndō in the vocab-
ulary

3. cōnštābant ex: 'consisted of.' 4. in cōnsuētūdinem... vēnerant: 'had become habituated.' 7. conlēctī... latrōnibusque: 'a collection of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. capitis damnātī: 'who had been condemned to death.' 10. fugitīvis: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. receptus: 'refuge.' — ut... essent: in apposition with condiciō.—militum essent numerō: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. prehenderētur: 'was on the point of being seized.' 13. vim suōrum: 'violence offered to any of their number.' 14. prō suō periculō: 'at the risk of their lives.' —Hi: subject of cōnsuērunt, l. 18. 15. dēposcere: this and the following infinitives depend upon cōnsuērunt. 17. vetere quōdam... institūtō: 'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'
Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Caesar

111. His cópiis fidēns Achillās paucitātemque militum Caesaris déspiciēns occupābat Alexandriam praeter eam oppidi partem quam Caesar cum militibus tenēbat. Primō impetū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est; sed Caesar dis-5 positis per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Caesar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē maximam ea rēs adtulit dicimātiōnem. Simul enim diductīs cópiis plūribus viās pugnābātur, et magnā multitudine nāvēs longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur; quārum erant L auxiliō 10 missae ad Pompēium proelīōque in Thessaliā factō domum redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quinquerēmēs aptae in- strūctaeque omnibus rēbus ad nāvigandum, praeter hās xxī quae praesidi causā Alexandriae esse cōnsuērant; cōnstrātae omnēs; quās si occupāvissent, classe Caesari ēreptā portum 15 ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, conmeātū auxiliis- que Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tanta est contentiōne āctum quantā agi dēbuit, cum illi celerem in eā rē victōriam, hī salūtem suam cōnsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvāli-20 bus incendit, quod tam lātē tuēri parvā manū nōn poterat, cōnfestimique ad Pharum nāvibus militēs exposuit.

fidēns, -entis, part. of fidō, relying upon
nāvālia, -ium, n., docks, shipyards
Pharus, -i, f., Pharos, an island

opposite Alexandria, with a lighthouse of the same name, which was one of the seven wonders of the world

10. proelīōque . . . factō : 'and at the conclusion of the war in Thes- saly.' 14. si occupāvissent : a future condition thrown into past time on the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, 'if
we shall have seized' etc. 17. actum: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — quantā: correlative with tantā, ablative of manner. 18. rem obtenuit: 'won the contest.' 21. exposuit: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

**Description of Pharos and its lighthouse**

112. Pharus est in insulā turris magnā altitūdine, mirificis operibus extrūcta; quae nōmen ab insulā accēpit. Haec insula obiecta Alexandriāe portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regiōnibus in longitūdinem passuum dccc, in mare iactis mōlibus, āngustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. 5 In hāc sunt insulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vicus oppidī magnitūdine; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprudentiā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcessērunt, hās mōre praedōnum diripere consuērunt. Eis autem invitīs ā quibus Pharus tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustiās nāvibus introitus in portum.

*Cæsar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive.*

*Cæsar fortifies his headquarters*

Hoc tamen veritus Cæsar, hostibus in pugnā occupātīs, militibus expositīs Pharum prehendit atque ibi praesidium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frūmentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportārī possent. Dimīsit enim 15 circūm omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocāvit. Reliquīs oppidi partibus sic est pugnātum, ut aequō proelīō discēderētur et neutri pellerentur (id efficiēbant angustiae locī), paucisque utrimque interfectis Cæsar loca maximē necessāria complexus noctū praemūnit. In hōc trāctū oppidi pars erat régia exīgua, in quam ipse habitandī causā initiō erat inductus, et theātrumconiūnectum domūi, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditusque habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua
návalia. Hás múnitiónēs insequantibus auxit diebus, ut prō 25 mūrō obiectās habēret neu dīmicāre invitus cōgerētur.

The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achillas. The Alexandrian War now begins in earnest

Interim filia minor Ptolemaei rēgis, vacuam possessionem rēgni spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgiā trāiēcit unāque bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter eōs dē principātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud militēs largi-
30 tionēs auxit; magnis enim iactūris sībi quisque eōrum animōs conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothīnus, nū-
tricius puerī et prōcūrātor rēgni, in parte Caesaris, cum ad Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortaretque ne 
ēve animō dēficeret, indicātis dēprehēnsisque internuntiīs, 35 ā Caesare est interfactus. Haec initia belli Alexandrīni 
fuērunt.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell praeμuniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify
indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discover prōcūrātor, -ōris, m., governor,
internūntius, -ī, m., negotiator, 
messager between (two parties)
mīrificus, -a, -um, causing wonder, 

Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothīnus, nū-

tricius puerī et prōcūrātor rēgni, in parte Caesaris, cum ad Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortārēturque nē negōtiō dēsisteret nēve animō dēficeret, indicātis dēprehēnsisque internuntiīs, 35 ā Caesare est interfactus. Haec initia belli Alexandrīni 

fuērunt.

3. obiecta: 'situated opposite,' with the dative.—ā superiōribus 
regiōnibus: 'on the upper side.' 4. in mare iactis mōlibus: 'piles 

being set in the sea.' 7. magnitūdine: ablative of description; 'of the size 

of a town.' — cumque: with quae, equal to quaecumque; 'whatever ships.'
9. Eis . . . invitis: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. nōn potest 
esse . . . nāvibus introitus: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. Dimīsit: supply homi-

nēs as object. 22. arcis tenēbat locum: 'served as a citadel.' 24. ut . . . 
habēret: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. vacuam 

. . . spērāns: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.'
29. principātū: 'leadership.' 30. magnis . . . conciliābat: 'for each tried 

by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'
13. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: ‘Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut ĩnsidīis nītērētur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecionē exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.’

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: ‘Eō sībi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorāssent ē memorīā tenēret, atque eō graviōs ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuīs iniūriāe sībī cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēret quā rē timēret, neque sīne causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris con-tumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter
gloriarentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirarentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commütātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī velint, his secundīōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriās quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.’

10 Divicō respondit: ‘Ita Helvētios ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.’ Hōc respōnsō datō discēsit.


18. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: ‘Ipsum esse Dumnorīgēm, summā audāciā, magnā apūd plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem
familiarem auxisse et facultatēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmpū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātre in Biturīgibus homini illic nōbilissimō ac potentiissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nuptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ὁδίσσε etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātia atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinēndī venire; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē ea quam habēat grātiā dēspērāre.'

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, 15 obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrium domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendum grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam 20 ūterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovēri. Quod si quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.'

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum confectō tōtius fērē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intelligere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs ōbus domōs suās
Helvetii reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magna cōpiā dēligèrent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent.’

5 31. Ea rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: ‘Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrārent; propertēa quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.’

10 Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: ‘Galliae tōtius factionēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum

15 primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adāmāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proelīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanis obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō

20 civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūros neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūros, neque recūsātūros quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūci nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam

25 rem sē ex civitāte profugisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēretur.

'Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdelīter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissīmi cuiusque liberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

'Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissīmum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercītūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maiōr multītūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

32. Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miserīōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; absentisque Ariovisti crūdēlītam, velut si
204  INDIRECT DISCOURSE

cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendi.'

34. Eī lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisset; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercītum eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercītum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahēre posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotī esset.'

35. His responsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populi Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amicus a senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eo postulāret:

prīsum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trāducēret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīisque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacereret, nēve his sociīisque eōrum bellum inferret.

Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē—quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātūs cēnsuisset uti quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī publicae facere possēt, Haeduōs cēterōs-

que amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet—sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'
36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut qui vicissent, eis quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius prae- scriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn prae scriberet quem ad modum suō iūre uterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē a populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superāti essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere qui suō adventū vectigālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduis sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque his neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, si in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fēcissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrīm iniūriās nōn neglectūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armīs, qui inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitās centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rō- mānī amicitiam adpetisse. Cūr hunc tam temperē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuāderī, cognitis suis postulātīs atque aequitāte condicioōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā déspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum
patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mariō pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italīa servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam a nobīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterēa quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victūrēs superāssent.

Denique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-10 numerō Helvētīi congressi, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperire posse, diūturnitāte belli défatigātīs Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs 15 mēnsēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque sui potestātem fēcissent, despērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capi 20 posse.

Ω Quōsuinin timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem an-25 gustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adrogaanter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris despērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Séquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta má-30 tūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Ω Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicant- tūr (militēs), nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibus-35 cumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisset, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vita, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.
'Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plus valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.'

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ānō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ēti velint, inīquum esse dē stipendīō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ornāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetierit.

'Quod multitudinem Germanōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē sui muniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei testimonīum esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sībi vellet? Ĉūr in suās possessionēs
veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdī non oportēret, sī in nostrōs finēs impētum faceret, sīc ītem nōs esse iniquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

5 'Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobroguīm proxīmō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnībus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī ēusōs esse.

10 'Débēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, sūi opprimendi causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnībus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbiliībus principībusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiām eīus morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliāe sībi trādīdisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sīne ūllō eīus labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quà rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinēm patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēserēret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliām potius esse Ariovistī quam populi Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānūs ignōvisset neque in prōvinciām redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstiissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdiciōm senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliām, quam bellō victam suis īēgibus utī voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?'
BOOK II

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opinione vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, misėrunt, qui dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniu-rāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, qui cīs Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnīm furōrem ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentirent.'

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret quae civitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in belli possent, sīc reperiebat: 'Ple-rōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse; Gallōsque qui ea loca incolent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omī Galliā vexātā, Teutōnōs Cimbrōs-que intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sībi auctōritātēm magnōssque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta' Rēmi dicēbant, 'propertēa quod propinquitätibus adfinitātibusque con-iunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum,
pollicitōs ex eō numero ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitīmōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoria Dīviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicēri milia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, qui maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Me-napiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viroman-duōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri (cōnificere posse) ad xl milia.'

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārūm dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitiā civitātīs Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod intellegearent quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ütātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

15. Eōrum finēs Nervī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: 'Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil pati vini reliquā-rumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his
rebus relanguescere animōs et remittii virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; confirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ullam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.' 5

31. Ubi vērō movēri et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūti: 'Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovere possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' dixērunt. 'Unum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; a quibus sē défendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam a populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici īnter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.'

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiónis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id quod in Nervīs fēcisset factūrum, finitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.'
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl. abs.</td>
<td>ablative absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>confer, i.e. compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dir.</td>
<td>direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disc.</td>
<td>discourse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ff.</td>
<td>and following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig.</td>
<td>figure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill.</td>
<td>illustration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impv.</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indir.</td>
<td>indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introd.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l., ll.</td>
<td>line, lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object or objective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p., pp.</td>
<td>page, pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>partitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past abs.</td>
<td>past absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past descr.</td>
<td>past descriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plur.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pred.</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex.</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>scilicet, i.e. supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subject or subjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subjv.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subord.</td>
<td>subordinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subst.</td>
<td>substantive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transl.</td>
<td>translate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES

THE ARGONAUTS

References preceded by a section sign (§) are to the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.)

Page xli, introduction. This introduction and the story of the Argonauts are taken (with a few slight changes) from "Fabulae Faciles," a first Latin reader prepared by Mr. F. Ritchie, an Englishman. In style and in vocabulary the Latin imitates that of Cæsar, and is excellent in preparing for the reading of Nepos and Cæsar.

Page xli, Line 1 quorum: part. gen. with alter (§ 76).

xli 2 Ex his: 'of these (brothers).' The abl. with ex is here used instead of the part. gen. With cardinal numerals (except mīlia) the abl. is the regular construction: unus ex multitūbus, 'one of the soldiers.'

xli 4 régni cupiditāte: 'by a desire for (of) the kingdom' (§ 75).

xli 6 Quīdam... ex amicīs: quīdam commonly takes the same construction as cardinal numerals (see note on 1. 2).

xlii 3 cum... rediissent: 'when they had returned,' a descriptive clause of time (§ 194. b).

xlii 4 puerum mortuum esse: 'that the boy was dead' (lit. 'had died'); puerum is the subj. of esse, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 217. b). The direct words of the speaker were puer mortuus est. In indir. disc. the subj. (puer) becomes accusative, and the verb (est) becomes an inf. — haec: 'this' (lit. 'these things'); Latin frequently uses the plur. to denote not two or more things, but the details or circumstances of one thing.

xlii 6 esset: 'was,' subjv. in an indir. question (§ 201).

xlii 7 cum: 'since,' introducing a causal clause (§ 195). — esse: as in l. 4. — nesciō quam fābulam... finxērunt: 'they got up some story, I don't know what.'

xlii 9 nē... āmitteret: 'that he should lose,' obj. of veritus (§ 184).

xlii 10 vi, fraude: ablatives of means (§ 106). — Delphōs: place whither (§ 97). At Delphi, in central Greece, was the famous shrine of Apollo.

xlii 11 quī... cōnsuleret: 'to consult,' a clause of purpose (§ 175). — ōrāculum: 'oracle.' The word means here the priestess through whom Apollo delivered his prophetic utterances. The word 'oracle' may also mean the place where the utterance is delivered, or the utterance itself.
THE ARGONAUTS

xlii 12 vēnisset: like esset in l. 6.

xlii 14 ut . . . cavēret: 'to beware of' (lit. 'that he should guard against'), a clause of purpose depending on monuit (§ 183). — si quis: 'if anybody'; a pronoun after sī is usually indef.

xlii 15 ut . . . factūrus esset: a clause of result (§ 187. II).

xlii 17 certam diem: the sing. diēs, when it denotes an appointed time or duration of time, is usually feminine. — Diē cōnstitūtā: abl. of the time at which (§ 119).

xlii 19 ā puerō: 'from a boy,' 'from boyhood.'

xlii 21 in trānseundō . . . flūmine: 'in crossing a river' (lit. 'in a river to be crossed'; § 224). — nesciō quō: see note on l. 7.

xlii 23 alterō pede nūdō: 'with one foot bare' (lit. 'one foot being bare'; §§ 117, 118). — quem: 'and him,' 'him.' A rel. is equivalent to a connective and a demonstrative; the connective may be omitted in translating (§ 143).

xlii 25 dēmōnstrāvisset: to be translated as if 't were ind., 'had spoken of.' The form is subjv. because the rel. clause depends on esse, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 208).

xlii 26 nōmine: 'by name'; abl. of respect (§ 115).

xlii 28 illud: 'the famous,' a common meaning of this pronoun when it follows the noun. — Phrixus: Phrixus and his sister Helle escaped from their wicked stepmother by being carried away on a flying ram with a golden fleece. Helle fell into the sea (named Hellespont after her). Phrixus was carried to Colchis. He sacrificed the ram and gave the fleece to ΑEetes, who hung it in a sacred grove and had it guarded by a sleepless dragon.

xliii 1 ut . . . potirētur: 'of getting' (lit. 'that he should get'), a subst. clause in apposition with negōtium (§§ 181, 183). — vellere: for the case see § 107.

xliii 2 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xliii 6 iter: accusative of extent of space with abesset (§ 96).

xliii 8 qui . . . docērent . . . dicerent: like quī . . . cōnsuleret, p. xlii, l. 11.

xliii 11 īsuī: 'of use,' 'useful' (lit. 'for a use'; § 89).

xliii 21 operī: dative after praē in praeerat (§ 84); but some verbs of this kind take the accusative.

xliii 22 nē . . . quidem: 'not . . . even'; the emphatic word or words stand between nē and quidem.

xliii 24 paulō . . . lātiōr: 'a little broader' (lit. 'broader by a little'; § 114). — quam quibus: 'than those which'; the antecedent of quibus, if expressed, would be eae; quibus is in the abl. after utī (§ 107). — nostrō mari: the Mediterranean. The author writes as if he were an ancient Roman. — cōnsuēvimus: the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of certain verbs are to be translated as if they were the present, the past descriptive or perfect, or the future. Thus cōnsuēvi means 'I am (lit. 'have become') accustomed.'
xliv 1 ferunt: 'they say,' 'it is said.'—citharoedum: in apposition with Orpheum, which is in the accusative as subj. of avisse (§ 217. b).

xliv 3 quos: subj. of esse (l. 4); its antecedent is eos (§ 139).

xliv 5 socios: 'as allies'; in apposition with eos (§§ 54, 58).

xliv 9 multo post: 'much later' (lit. 'afterwards by much'; § 114).


xliv 11 hospitiō: 'hospitably,' an abl. of manner without an adjective or cum (§ 110).

xliv 14 ut... possent... dicerentur: see § 179.

xliv 16 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xliv 18 ēgredi: 'from landing' (lit. 'to land'), obj. of prohibēbant (§ 185. a).

xliv 19 pugnātum est: 'they fought' (§ 66).

xliv 20 ab Argonautis: abl. of agent (§ 104).

xliv 21 sē: 'they themselves,' 'they' (§ 217. b).

xliv 28 ā nautis: see § 102.—cōpiam: subj. of dēficere.

xliv 1 habērent: like dēmōnstrāvisset, p. xlii, l. 25.

xliv 3 fōrmā praestantissimā: 'of' etc. (§ 116).

xliv 4 dum... quaerit: for the tense see § 198. I.

xliv 6 ei persuādēre: see § 83.


xliv 24 Quae cum ita essent: 'this being so' (§ 189); with quae, cf. haec, p. xlii, l. 4.

xliv 25 haud... morerētur: 'Phineus was nearly dying of hunger' (lit. 'not much was wanting but that Phineus should die of hunger'); the clause quīn... morerētur is a rel. clause of result (§ 180); famē is an abl. of cause (§ 109).

xlvi 1 opiniōnem virtūtis: 'reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'; obj. gen., § 75).—nec dubitābat quīn: see § 186.

xlvi 3 qui... vocāret: 'to invite' (§ 175).

xlvi 5 sī... repperissent: 'if they should find' (lit. 'should have found'), a subord. clause in indir. disc. (like dēmōnstrāvisset, p. xlii, l. 25). The direct words of Phineus were magna praemia vobīs dabo sī remedium reppereritis, in which reppereritis ('shall have found') is a fut. perf. (§ 199. II. a).

xlvi 12 Quod: 'this'; see note on quem, p. xlii, l. 23.

xlvi 15 Hōc factō: 'when this had been done' (§ 117. b).

xlvi 17 ingenti magnitūdine: see § 116.

xlvi 18 eō cōnsiliō: 'with this design,' an abl. of accordance (§ 111).—nē quis... perveniret: a neg. clause of purpose (§ 174), in apposition with cōnsiliō; for quis see p. xlii, l. 14.
xlvi 19 parvō intervāllō: 'at a small distance apart' (§ 118).

xlvi 22 faciendum esset: 'needed to be done' (§§ 224. a, 201). — sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit: 'weighed anchor and set sail' (§ 117). If all verbs had a past participle active (as in deponent verbs, § 37), the abl. abs. would be far less frequent; here, for example, we should then have ancorās sublātīs nāvem solvit, in which sublātīs would agree with the subj. of solvit. Cf. adductus ... expulit (p. xli, l. 4) and verītus ... mīsīt (p. xlii, l. 9).

xlvi 25 rēctā viā: 'in a straight course' (§§ 106. a, 120. note 1).

xlvi 26 caudā tantum āmissā: 'having lost its tail only'; see note on sublātīs ancorīs, l. 22.

xlvi 27 antequam ... concurrerent: 'before they should run together' (§ 197. b).

xlvii 1 quōrum auxiliō ... ēreptī essent: 'since by their aid they had been snatched,' a rel. clause of cause (§ 190 and note).

xlvii 12 trādītūrum: trādītūrum esse. When the inf. is formed with the participle, esse is often omitted.

xlvii 13 prius: 'first' (lit. 'before'). — perfēcisset: 'should perform,' like sī ... repperissent, p. xlvi, l. 5.

xlvii 17 serendī (erant): in such cases the auxiliary est is often omitted; for serendī see faciendum, p. xlvi, l. 22.

xlvii 19 rei: 'his task.'

xlvii 23 eō ipsō cōnsiliō: like eō cōnsiliō, p. xlvi, l. 18; transl. ipsō by 'very.'

xlvii 27 quod ... aleret ... cōnfirmaet: see § 175.

xlviii 1 essent: 'were'; subjv. because it is subord. to ut ... oblineret. This is called the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

xlviii 2 omnibus ... antecellēbat: see § 84. — magnitūdine et viribus: see § 115.

xlviii 7 ortā lūce: 'at daybreak' (lit. 'light having risen'; § 117).

xlviii 18 quā in rē: 'in this' (§ 143). A monosyllabic preposition often stands between adjective and noun.

xlviii 18 essent: as in l. 1.

xlviii 21 gignerentur: like essent, ll. 1, 18.

xlviii 24 dum: see § 198. III. b.

xlviii 25 ita ... ut: 'just as.'

xlviii 26 esset: like dēmōnstrāvisset, p. xlii, l. 25.

xlviii 27 ingenti magnitūdine: see § 116. — gladiīs galeīisque: see § 106.

xlviii 28 mirum in modum: 'wonderfully.'

xlviii 29 dedisset: 'had given' (§ 208).

xlix 2 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xlix 11 si ... mānsisset: 'if she should stay.' Medea said in magnō erō periculō sī in rēgiā mānsēro (§ 199. II. a); see note on p. xlvi, l. 5.
NOTES

xlīx 17 prófuisset: 'had aided'; like essent, p. xlviii, ll. 1, 18.
xlīx 19 nē . . . timēret: see § 183.
xlīx 26 qui . . . essent: see § 175. — praesidiō nāvī: double dative (§ 89).
1 7 dum . . . dormit: see § 198. I.
1 12 id negotium . . . periculi: 'that this undertaking was one of the greatest danger'; pred. gen. (§ 77. a).
1 15 mātūrandum (esse) sibi: 'that they ought to hasten' (lit. 'that there should be a hastening by them'; §§ 87, 222. II).
1 18 esset: 'was' (§ 201).
1 20 advenientibus occurrērunt: see § 84.
1 23 quod rēs . . . ēvēnisset: 'because, as they said, the undertaking' etc. (§ 188. ē).
1 27 inimicō . . . animō: 'hostilely minded' (§ 116).
1 li hoc dolōre: 'by his anger at this' (lit. 'by this anger'; § 109).
1 li 5 cum: 'since' (§ 189). — quā: 'by which' (§ 106).
1 li 6 ēādēm celeritāte quā: 'with the same speed as' (§ 110).
1 li 7 minimum āfuit quin . . . caperentur: like haud . . . morerētur, p. xlvi, l. 25.
1 li 8 neque . . . posset: 'for the distance between them was only a javelin's throw' (lit. 'for it was not farther between than whither' etc.).
1 li 18 Neque opiniō eam fefellit: 'nor was she mistaken.' Literally?
1 li 21 quod necesse fuit: 'as was inevitable.'
1 li 22 prius . . . quam: 'until.'
1 li 24 prōgressus esset: like sī . . . reppessisset, p. xlvii, l. 5. .Ēetes said nihil mihi prōderit sī longius prōgressus erō (§ 199. II. a); translate this.
1 li 25 animō dēmissō: 'dejected' (§ 117).
1 lii 2 rettulisset: 'should bring back'; cf. p. li, l. 24.
1 lii 5 neque dubium est quin . . . adsit: see § 186.
1 lii 6 Liceat . . . mihi: 'permit me' (lit. 'let it be permitted to me'; § 172. ē).
— dum vivam: 'while I live' (§ 214).
1 lii 9 rogāset: 'asked'; a short form for rogāvisoisset (vi of the perf. stem is frequently omitted). His words were id faciam (fut.) quod rogāvisisti.
1 lii 14 Vultisne: for vultis see volō, § 42; for -ne see the vocabulary.
1 lii 15 fieri: see § 45.
1 lii 16 Num . . . potest: 'this can't be done, can it?' See num in the vocabulary.
1 lii 19 possit: see § 201.
1 lii 22 dum . . . effervēsceret: see § 198. III. b; cf. p. xlviii, l. 24.
1 lii 28 ipsae: agreeing with vōs (l. 27).
1 lii 6 quibus: see § 107:
lxxiii 20 ultūram: like trāditūrum, p. xlvi, l. 12.
lxxiii 23 induisset: 'put on'; like essent, p. xlviii, l. 1.
lxxiii 24 nihil mali: 'no harm' (lit. 'nothing of harm'; § 76).
lxxiii 25 mōre fēminārum: 'like a woman' (§ 111).
liv 1 magnum . . . manēret: her direct words were magnum mihi erit periculum sī diūlius híc manēbō (§ 210); translate this.
liv 7 ita'que: 'and thus'; this is ita with -que attached, not the adv. itaque ('therefore').
liv 9 cāsū sīve cōnsiliō: see § 111.

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

Ivii 1 Chap. 1. Hannibal . . . Karthāginiēnsis: these words (without a verb) serve as a title to the biography.

Ivii 3 superārit: cf. rogāset, p. lxxiii, l. 9, and see note; for the mood see § 187. II and note 1.

Ivii 4 tantō praestitisse . . . quantō: 'as much surpassed . . . as' (lit. 'by so much surpassed . . . by how much'; § 114). Praestitisse here takes the accusative; see note on operī, p. xlvii, l. 21.—prūdentīā: see § 115.

Ivii 5 antecēdat: 'excels'; for the subjv. see § 208.

Ivii 6 eō: populū Rōmānō.

Ivii 7 Quod: 'in view of which,' 'and therefore' (see note on quem, p. xlvii, l. 23); the adverbial use of the accusative neuter singular.—nisi . . . potuisset: a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b) in indir. disc. (§ 213). The dir. form would regularly be nisi dēbilītātus esset, Rōmānōs superāre potuisset. But potuisset stands for potuit, the perf. ind., which is often used instead of the past perf. subjv. when the verb (such as potuit) denotes possibility, propriety, or necessity. Transl. superāre potuit 'he could have overcome.' Instead of saying vidētur eum Rōmānōs superāre potuisset (§ 217. b), 'it seems that he could have' etc., the Latin prefers to make eum the personal subj. of vidētur and say vidētur Rōmānōs superāre potuisset, 'he seems to have been able to overcome the Romans.' When the subj. of the inf. is thus made the subj. of the principal verb, we have what is called the personal construction in indir. disc.

Ivii 11 ut . . . dēposuerit: 'that he gave up his life before that' (lit. 'that he sooner gave up his life than he gave up that'); a clause of result (§ 179).

Ivii 12 qui . . . numquam dēstiterit: 'a man who never ceased,' or 'since he never ceased'; a clause of characteristic (§ 177). The translation of such clauses may begin with 'since,' 'although,' 'such that,' or the like, according to the context.—cum: 'although' (§ 192).—opum indīgēret: the gen. (instead of the abl.) is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives denoting plenty or want.
NOTES

Ivii 13 animō: abl. after dēstiterit (§ 101).
Ivii 14 Chap. 2. ut omittam: 'to say nothing of' (§ 174).
Ivii 17 rubrō mari: 'the Persian Gulf'; an early use of the name.
Ivii 18 vēnissent ... fēcissent ... comperisset ... vidisset: all these depend on cum (§ 194. b). — quī ... explōrārent darentque: see § 175.
Ivii 20 in suspicionem régī: 'under the king's suspicion' (§ 85).
Ivii 21 alia atque: 'otherwise than' ('other things than').
Ivii 2 tempore: 'opportunity' (§ 117).
Ivii 3 commemorāset: cf. rogāset, p. lii, l. 9, and see note.
Ivii 4 puerulō mē: see § 118.
Ivii 5 utpote ... nātō: 'since I was not more than nine years old' (explaining why he refers to himself as puerulō); nātō agrees with mē (l. 4).
Ivii 6 Karthāgine: see § 101. a.
Ivii 7 dum cōnfiniēbātur: the present would be the proper tense (§ 198. I).
Ivii 10 Faciam ... dederis: see § 199. II. a.
Ivii 15 eādem mente: see § 116.
Ivii 16 sim futūrus: 'I shall be.' — si quīd: see note on sī quis, p. xlii, l. 14.
Ivii 17 nōn imprūdenter fēceris si mē cēlāris (for cēlāveris): 'you would act not unwisely if you should conceal (it) from me' (§ 199. II. b); mē is accusative after cēlāris, which may take two accusatives (the person and the thing).
Ivii 18 fruṣtrāberis si nōn ... posueris: see § 199. II. a.
Ivii 20 Chap. 3. Hāc ... aetāte: see § 119. — quā diximus: the complete sentence would be quā diximus eum profectum esse (supplied from profectus est).
Ivii 21 imperātore: pred. (§ 58).
Ivii 23 Id: his appointment. — Karthāginem: see § 97.
Ivii 25 vigintī annis nātus: cf. novem annōs nātō, l. 5; see § 119. note.
Duration of time is regularly expressed by the accusative (§ 96).

lx 4 quō factō: see § 117.
lx 6 eā (viā) ... quā (viā): 'there ... where'; originally ablatives (§ 106. a).
lx 10 Chap. 4. Clastidi: see § 120. a.
lx 16 dextrō (oculō): see § 107. — cum: see § 192.
lx 22 ūnō proeliō: the famous battle of Cannae, 216 B.C. The Roman army was almost annihilated.

lx 3 Chap. 5. dētrimentō exercitūs: 'harm to his army'; obj. gen. (§ 75).
lx 6 Quō ... obiectō visū: see § 117.
lx 9 Hanc post rem: cf. quā in rē, p. xlviili, l. 13, and see note.
lx 11 diēbus: see § 114.

lx 13 parī ac dictātōrem imperiō: parī ac dictātor fuit imperiō, 'having the authority of dictator.' For parī ... imperiō see § 116. Dictātōrem agrees, by attraction, with magistrum (accusative).

lx 15 absēns: 'in his absence'; his brother Mago was in command.
lx1 18 Longum est: ‘it would be a long story.’ Here the Latin uses the
ind. where we use the subjv.
lx1 19 ex quō . . . possit: ‘that from this’ etc. (§ 175).
lx1 23 Chap. 6. défēnsum: see § 226. a.
lx1 26 fugārat: for fugāverat; cf. rogāset, p. lii, l. 9. — Cum hōc: ‘with him.’
lx1 27 quō valentior . . . congredēretur: see § 176; for the case of quō
see § 114.
lx1 28 In conloquium convēnīvit: ‘a conference was arranged.’ Convēnīvit is
imper., ‘it was agreed.’
lx1 29 Post . . . paucīs diēbus: see § 114.
lx1 30 dictū: see § 226. b.
lxii 2 milia passuum trecenta: apparently an exaggeration or an error.
See the map, p. lix.
lxii 4 Hadrūmēti: like Clastīdī, p. lx, l. 10.
lxii 5 novis dīlectībus: see § 106.
lxii 10 Chap. 7. ad . . . cōnsulēs: the names of the consuls were com-
monly used to designate the year of an event. The names may or may not be
connected by et.—His enim magistrātibus: see § 118.
lxii 11 qui . . . agerent . . . dōnārent . . . pterent: ‘to express’ etc. (§ 175)
lxii 12 quod . . . fēcissent: ‘because they had made’ (§ 205; see also § 188. b).
lxii 13 eōs: i.e. the Romans.
lxii 14 eōrum: i.e. of the Carthaginians.—Fregellīs: see § 120. — essent :
‘might be.’
lxiii 1 ex: ‘in accordance with.’
lxiii 2 Mūnus . . . Māgōnem: see §§ 202, 203. The direct words of the
senate were mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsidēs quō locō rogātis
erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalēm, cuius operā susceptum bellum
est, . . . habētīs . . . Māgōnem.
lxiii 3 remissūrōs: the subj. is sē (to be supplied), referring to the Romans.
lxiii 4 cuius operā: ‘through whose effort.’
lxiii 6 Hōc respōnsō . . . cognitō: see § 117.
lxiii 7 domum: see § 97.
lxiii 8 postquam . . . annō secundō et vicēsimō: ‘twenty-two years (lit.
‘in the twenty-second year’) after he had become commander in chief.’
lxiii 11 parī diligentiā . . . ac: ‘as earnest (lit. ‘of equal earnestness’;
§ 116) as.’
lxiii 13 ut esset pecūnia . . . penderētur: ‘that there was money to pay.’
For ut esset see § 187. I; for quae . . . penderētur, § 175.
lxiii 15 M. Claudiō . . . cōnsulibus: see § 118, and the note on p. lxii, l. 10.
lxiii 16 suī exposcendī grātiā: ‘for the purpose of demanding him’
(§ 224. b).—missōs: missōs esse (§ 217. b).
lxiii 17 senātus: ‘an audience of the senate.’
NOTES

lxiii 19 quae ... comprehendent ... consequi: 'to seize him if they could overtake (him).' The direct words were comprehendite eum, sì poteritis consequī (§ 199. II. a; the impv., comprehendite, is equivalent to a fut. ind.). For the mood and tense of possent see §§ 208, 209 and note, 210.

lxiii 24 Chap. 8. sì ... posset: 'to see if he could' (§ 201).

lxiii 25 Antiochī spē: 'through their hope in Antiochus' (obj. gen., § 75).

lxiii 27 Hūc: 'to this place' (Cyrene).

lxiii 29 Illī: Hannibal and Mago. Begin the sentence with cum; illī, indicating a change of subj., and hence being emphatic, is placed first in the sentence (p. 405). — dēspērātis rēbus: 'despairing of success.'

lxiv 2 naufragiō: see § 106. — à servulis: see § 104. — interfectum: interfectum esse (§ 217. b), depending on scriptum reliquērunt, 'have left the statement' (lit. 'have left written'; scriptum is the accusative neuter sing. of the past participle).

lxiv 3 sì ... voluisset ... dimicāsset (dimicāvisset): see § 199. III. b.

lxiv 8 Tiberi ... Thermopylīs: after the adv. propius (§ 90).

lxiv 11 Quem: 'Antiochus.' English is not well supplied with pronouns, and clearness often requires the repetition of the noun.

lxiv 13 vidēbat: 'Hannibal saw'; see the preceding note.

lxiv 16 In quō: 'in this battle.' — cum: 'while.' — suī: 'his forces.'

lxiv 17 quō cornū: eō cornū quō (§ 140). — rem gessit: 'fought.'

lxiv 18 Chap. 9. verēns nē dēderētur: see § 184.

lxiv 19 sì ... protestātem: 'if he had offered a chance at himself' (§ 75).

lxiv 21 vir omnium callidissimus: 'this shrewdest of men' (lit. 'shrewdest man of all'; § 76). — in magnō ... prōvidīsset: his direct words were in magnō erō periculō, nisi quid prōvidērō (§ 199. II. a); for quid see note on quis, p. xlii, l. 14.

lxiv 23 exīsse: for exiisse (from excēd); for the mood see § 217. b.

lxiv 25 summās (amphorās): 'the tops of the jars.' A few superlative adjectives commonly denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant; thus summus mōns does not mean 'the highest mountain,' but 'the highest part (top) of the mountain.'

lxiv 29 domi: 'at his house' (§ 120. a).

lxv 2 tolleret: the obj., amphorās, is to be supplied.

lxv 6 Chap. 10. quam ... armāvit: 'than arm.'

lxv 8 opibus: see § 115.

lxv 10 eō: 'Prusias'; see note on p. lxiv, l. 11.

lxv 11 et mari et terrā: 'both at sea and on land'; cf. terrā marīque, 'on land and sea.' The preposition in is not required with these expressions (§ 120). — utrobique: i.e. et mari et terrā.

lxv 12 quō magis: 'and all the more' (§ 114).

lxv 18 quem sī ... fore: see note on p. lxiv, l. 21.

lxv 17 armis: see § 115. — Imperāvit ... serpentēs ... conligi: see § 217. a. Imperō ordinarily takes the subjv. with ut (§ 183).

lxv 21 omnēs ut: ut omnēs; omnēs is more emphatic before ut (p. 405).

lxv 22 tantum ... sē dēfendere: 'merely to defend themselves.'

lxv 23 cōnsecūtūrōs (esse): see § 217. b; the verb of saying is implied in praęcipit (l. 20). — Rēx ... factūrum (esse): the order of the words is determined by their emphasis (p. 405). Rēx is the subj. of veherētur, and this clause is in turn the obj. of scērent (§ 201). For ut scērent see § 187. I.

lxv 24 quem sī ... fore: 'he promises that if' etc.

lxv 25 magnō iīs ... praemīō fore: 'they shall be richly rewarded' (lit. 'it shall be to them for a great reward'; § 89).

lxv 28 CHAP. 11. dārētur: 'should be given' (§ 197. b).

lxvi 4 quod: 'because' (§ 188. a).

lxvi 7 quae ... pertinērent: see § 177.

lxvi 10 praeceptō: see § 111.

lxvi 16 Quae iacta ... concitārunt (concitāvērunt): 'the throwing of these (lit. 'which thrown') made the fighters laugh' (lit. 'provoked laughter for' etc.; § 85).

lxvi 18 opplētās ... serpentibus: 'filled with serpents' (§ 106).

lxvi 22 aliās: 'on other occasions'; an adv.

lxvi 28 CHAP. 12. qui Hannibale vivī ... existimārent: 'since they thought (§ 190) that so long as Hannibal lived' (§ 118).

lxvi 29 futūrōs: futūrōs esse.

lxvii 2 suum ... sibique: indir. reflexives, referring to the Romans (§ 133). — sēcum: a dir. reflex. referring to Prusias (§ 132).

lxviii 1 = id ... fierī: see § 217. a; id is the antecedent of quod.

lxviii 4 quod ... esset: 'which was' (§ 214). — ipsi ... comprehenderent: 'that they themselves should seize (him)'; in indir. disc., a verb of saying being implied in recūsāvit. His direct words were ipsī comprehendeit (impv.).

lxviii 5 ubi esset: see § 208. — inventūrōs: (eōs) inventūrōs esse (§ 217. b). His direct words were locum ubi est facile inveniētis.

lxviii 7 mūnerī: see § 89. — aedificārāt: aedificāverat.

lxviii 13 num ... obsidērētur: see § 201. note.

lxviii 15 occupātōs: occupātōs esse (§ 217. b).

lxviii 16 factum: factum esse (§ 217. b).

lxviii 17 Quam nē ... dīmitteret: 'that he might not lose his life at another's will'; for aliēnō arbitriō see § 111. — memor ... virtūtum: see § 80.

lxviii 20 CHAP. 13. perfūnctus labōribus: see § 107.

lxviii 21 Quibus cōnsulibus: see note on p. lxii, l. 10. — interierit: see § 201.
NOTES

lxvii 23 scriptum reliquit: see note on p. lxiv, l. 2.

lxvii 26 Atque: 'and it is noteworthy that'; the conjunction et simply connects; atque always throws emphasis on what follows.—tactus . . . tantisque: 'great' (do not say 'so great').

lxvii 27 non nihil temporis: see § 76. a.

lxvii 29 Huius bellī gesta: 'Hannibal's (lit. 'this man's') exploits in war'; for bellī see §§ 72, 73.

lxviii 1 duo: duo sunt.

lxviii 4 usus est docère: 'had as instructor' (§ 107).

lxviii 6 quō facilius . . . possit: see § 176.—utrorumque: 'of both' (Roman and foreign leaders).

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

1.1 Chap. I. Gāius: the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English.—familiā: abl. of origin (§ 102).
1.3 Cinnae: a prominent leader of the popular party.
1.4 Sullae: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.
1.10 Rhōdum: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.
1.11 prōgreditur: historical present (§ 153. a).
1.13 per pecūniās magnās: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?

2.1 Chap. II. quaestor: an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or prātor in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2.6 Aedilis: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2.7 lūdōs: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.

2.8 in aes alicēnum . . . incidit: 'he incurred debt.'

2.9 Cōnsul: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6.—societātem: the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.

2.10 Lēgēm . . . tulissent: 'he had proposed a law.'

2.11 rem ad populum rettulit: 'he laid the matter before the people.'

3.5 Chap. III. primus Rōmānōrum: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

3.11 conversum: past participle of convertō modifying aquiliferum; transl.
by a clause, 'who had turned' (§ 220. e).

3.14 quibuscum: for the preposition cum as enclitic see § 150. a.

3.15 parātās: past participle modifying legiōnēs; vincē depends on parātās.

3.16 Chap. IV. Parthōs: a warlike people southeast of the Caspian Sea.

3.21 ut . . . peteret: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'
4 1 sē... velle: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'
4 4 Rubicōnem: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.
4 6 cōgitāns: see § 167.
4 9 iacta est ālea: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'
4 10 Brundisium: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.
5 1 Chap. V. Epīrum: Epī'rus, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 167.
5 2 Dyrrachī: Dyrrach'ium, a town in Illyricum. — dum cōpiae... per venirent: 'until the forces... should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see § 198. III. b.
5 4 ēgreditur: historical present (§ 153. a); transl. as a past abs. (§ 156. b); so also cōnsecendit.
5 8 prius: to be taken with quam; the parts of antequam and priusquam are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see § 197. a.
5 14 mōre: some ablatives of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without cum.
6 1 Chap. VI. Afrīcō: understand bellō.
6 2 Magnī: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 188.
6 6 Proelīō quōdam: 'in a certain battle'; proelīō is an abl. of time (§ 119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect in proelīō, an abl. of place where.
6 7 suōrum: the possessive reflex. adjective (§ 132); sc. mīlitum.— quod... servāsset: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§ 188. b); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'
6 9 sibi: the dative of reference (§ 85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§ 89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').
6 13 omnium: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b); if victor, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, omnium would be the dir. obj. (accusative), vīcit omnēs.
7 2 Chap. VII. annumque... accommodāvit: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See § 227. a.
7 3 Repetundārum: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.'— convictōs: a past participle agreeing with eōs understood.
7 4 quae... minuerent: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
7 5 exercuit: 'enforced.'
7 7 Dictātor: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator in perpetuum, that
is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See Introd. I. 9.

7 8 insolentius: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.

7 13 unus et alter rogabant: i.e. people generally were asking etc.


8 Chap. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 305.

8 6 Nönne scis: 'don't you know?' See § 170. a. 2.

8 7 Idus Martias: see § 227. d.

8 8 cum . . . vēnisset: note the difference in time between vēnisset and recūsāret (l. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'

8 11 Caesarem: obj. of volnerat, of which Casca is the subj.

9 1 Chap. IX. sī . . . data esset: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b).

9 2 pridiē quam occīsus est: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in pridiē ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows priusquam (§ 197. a).

9 3 conlātō: with sermōne; sermōnem cōnferre, 'to carry on a conversation.'

9 5 quō . . . hōc: these abl. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlates 'the . . . the' (cf. 'the deeper the well, the colder the water'); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'

9 7 Cum enim déprehendisset: 'for when he had seized.'

9 8 ab eis . . . restiterant: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of sībi, see § 83.

9 15 Chap. X. Caesar . . . statūrā: 'Caesar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, statūrā, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also ōre, oculīs, and capite (§ 116. b). See Introd. I. 11.

9 16 Quam: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.

9 17 molestē fērēbat: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').

9 18 gestandae: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to iūs laureae gestandae would be iūs gestandī lauream, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'

10 1 Rei militāris . . . perītissimus: see § 80. See Introd. I. 12.

10 3 equō: 'on horseback.'—pedibus: 'on foot.'

10 5 ut . . . pervēnīret: a result clause.

10 7 ut visum est: 'as it seemed.'
11 1 **Chap. 1. Gallia**: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (*Ulterior Provincia*) and Cisalpine Gaul (*Citerior Provincia*, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1.—*omnis*: 'as a whole.'—*divisa*: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 *ünam*: sc. *partem* from *partēs* above.—*incolunt*: 'inhabit.' The words *quārum* . . . *incolunt* etc. may be translated freely, 'one of which is inhabited by the Belgae' etc.—*quī*: the antecedent is *ei* ('those') understood, subj. of *incolunt*.

11 3 *ipsōrum*: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); 'in their own language.'

11 4 *linguā*: abl. of respect (§ 115).—*inter sē*: 'from one another' (lit. 'among themselves').

11 5 Gallōs etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 *dividit*: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 Hōrum: part. gen. with *fortissimi* (§ 76).—*proptereā quod*: 'because' (lit. 'because of this, that').

11 8 *cultū*: 'civilization,' as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life.—*hūmānitāte*: 'refinement,' of mind or feeling.—*prōvinciae*: *Ulterior Provincia*, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 *mercātōrēs*: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 *effēminandōs*: gerundive (§ 224. b). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 Germanīs: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90).—*Rhēnum*: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song "Die Wacht am Rhein."

11 12 *Quā dē causā*: 'and for this reason'; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 *cum*: 'while.'—*sūs* and *ipsī*: both refer to the Helvetii, *ēōs* and *eōrum* to the Germans. For the reflexive *sūs* see § 132.

12 1 *quam* . . . *dictum est*: 'which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.' For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be *Galli obtinent*. Do not transl. *obtinēre* 'obtain.'
NOTES

12 3 ab Sēquanīs: 'on the side of' etc.
12 4 vergit etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.
12 5 Galliae: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.
12 6 spectant in: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'
12 9 inter occāsum etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.
12 11 Chap. 2. M(ārcō) Messālā et M(ārcō) Piso ne cōnsulibus: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. 6). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc. In reading the Latin and in translating always give the names in full. Two consuls were elected annually, and the Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls in office (§ 228). The two named above were consuls in 61 B.C., three years before Cæsar went to Gaul.
12 12 coniūrātiōnem: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (nōbilēs). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul.—civitāti: dative after persuāsit (§ 83).
12 13 ut . . . exīrent: subst. clause used as the obj. of persuāsit (§ 183).
12 14 perfacile esse etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in persuāsit. The dir. words of persuasion used were perfacile est etc., potūrī being the subj. and perfacile in the pred. of est. 'He persuaded them . . . (saying) that it was very easy.'—cum . . . praestārent: causal clause (§ 189).— omnibus: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).
12 15 imperiō: see § 107. a.
12 17 ūnā ex parte: 'on one side.'
12 22 His rēbus fīebat: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109).—ut . . . vagārentur: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent are the subj. of fīebat (§ 187. II).
12 23 finītimis: see § 84. — quā ex parte: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of quā see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12. — homīnēs: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of adjiciēbantur.
12 24 bellandī: gerund (§ 223. a).
12 26 mīlia passuum: 'miles.' The passus was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five
Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours.—

12 27 passuum: part. gen. (§ 76). — CCXL: ducenta quadrāgintā; always
give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text. — patēbant: keep
in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf.
(§§ 154. b., 156).

13 1 CHAP. 3. His rēbus: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).

13 2 quae . . . pertinērēnt: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. a).
There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but
from the main verb confirmant one can see that the clause expresses the
thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb
is in the subjv.

13 3 quam maximum: 'as great as possible.'

13 6 confirmēndās: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. a).

13 7 in tertium annum . . . confirmant: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For
the tense of confirmant see § 153. a.

13 9 Castīcō: see § 83.

13 10 filiō, Sēquanō: in apposition with Castīcō (§ 58).

13 12 ut . . . occupāret: subst. clause, obj. of persuādet (§ 183). For the
past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 quod: rel. pronoun with rōgnum for antecedent (§ 137). — Dum-
norīgi: indir. obj. of persuādet (l. 15). Dumnorix was a younger brother of
Diviciacus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit
among the Hædui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the
anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for
many years.

13 14 Diviciācī: this Hæduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and
other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in
his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the
old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnorix were
the leaders.

13 15 ut idem cōnārētūr: 'to make the same attempt.'

13 17 Perfacile: pred. with esse of the sentence of which cōnāta perfacere
is the subj. (§ 48. I. b); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. Cōnāta is n. plur.
accusative, obj. of perfacere. — factū: see § 226. b. — illīs probat: 'undertook
to show them'; historical present (§ 153. a).

13 19 esse: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; '(he told them)
there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. a). — quīn . . . possent: see § 186. —
Galliae: see § 76.

13 20 sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse): the indir. disc. continues; '(he told
them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was conciliābō. Remember
that the reflexives se and suus in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in indir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 oratio: do not transl., 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109. — fidem et ius iurandum: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 regnum occupato: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. b). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context.—per tres . . . populos: i.e. the Helvetii, Haedui, and Sequani.

13 23 Galliae: see § 81. d. — posse: equivalent to a fut. inf.; indir. disc. with se as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 Chap. 4. Moribus: see § 111.

13 25 ex vinculis: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.'—causam dicere: 'to plead his cause.'—Damnatum: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. c) and modifying sum understood, which would be the obj. of sequi; the subj. of sequi is poenam, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause ut . . . cremaretur (§ 183, third example). The whole expression damnatum poenam sequi . . . ut igni cremaretur is the subj. of oportebat. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{poenam (ut [is] cremaretur igni)} \\
\text{sequi ([eum] damnatum)} \\
\text{oportebat}
\end{align*}
\]

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 Diē: see § 119. — causae dictiōnis: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). Dictiōnis depends on dīē, and causae is the obj. gen. after dictiōnis (§ 75. b).

14 2 familia: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word. — ad: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective decem.

14 3 clientēs: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 nē . . . dicere: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).


14 9 quīn . . . cōnscīverit (from cōnscīscō): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following nōn est dubium.

14 10 Chap. 5. nihilō: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 ut . . . exeant: subst. clause in apposition with id (§ 183).
14 13 numerō: see §115; ad as above in l.2.—vīcōs: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; oppida, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 incendunt: 'set on fire.'

14 15 combūrunt: 'burn up.'—domum: see §97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun reditōnis allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs.—spē sublātā: equivalent to a temporal clause (§117. b). Sublātā is from tollō.

14 16 ad...subeunda: see §225.a.

14 18 uti...proficiscantur: subst. clause, dir. obj. of persuādent (§183). In this clause āsī agrees with the omitted subj. of proficiscantur.

14 19 cōnslīo: abl. with āsī (§107.a).—vīcīs exūstīs: abl. abs.

14 22 receptōs...adsciscunt: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (ad sē) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 Chap. 6. Erant etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc. See the map facing page 13.

14 24 possent: the subjv. in a clause of description (§177.a).

14 25 inter...Rhodanum: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province.—vix quā...dūcerentur: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' Dūce- rentur is a subjv. of description, like possent in l.24.

15 1 possent: a subjv. of result (§179).

15 2 multō: see §114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 pācāti erant: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 locīs: see §120.b.—vadō: 'by ford(ing)' (§106).

15 7 persuāsūrōs (esse): indir. disc. Observe that esse is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was persuādēbimus (§204).

15 8 bonō animō: 'well disposed' (§116.b).—vidērentur: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§208).

15 9 paterentur: see §183; suōs and the subj. of paterentur (understood) refer to the Allobroges; ēōs refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 conveniant: see §175.—a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: = ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs; transl. as if it were quintō diē ante Kalendās Aprīlēs, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§227.h, i).

16 1 Chap. 7. Caesari: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. Cæsar here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the
country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2–6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 ab urbe: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word urbs in Latin writers regularly means Rome, THE CITY. — quam maximis potest itineribus: 'by the longest possible marches' (§ 124).

16 3 ulteriorem: i.e. beyond the Alps, Ulterior Prævincia.

16 5 imperat: here used in the sense 'to make requisition on.' Prævinciae is the indir. obj., and numerum the dir. obj.

16 6 legiō: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 certiores facti sunt: 'were informed' (lit. 'made more certain').

16 9 qui dicerent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not 'who said,' but 'who should say,' or, in better English, 'to say.' The construction after dicerent is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were nōbis est in animō . . . quod aliud iter habemus nūllum; rogāmus ut tua voluntāte id nōbis facere liceat.

16 10 sibi: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 ut . . . liceat: subst. clause, obj. of rogāre (§ 183).

16 13 memoriā tenēbat: 'remembered' (lit. 'held by memory'); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 sub iugum: the iugum was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of subjugation; this act was equivalent to the modern 'laying down arms.'

16 15 concēdendum (esse): impers., depending on putābat.— hominēs: subj. of temperātūrōs (esse) depending on existimābat.— inimicō animō: abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 datā facultāte: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. a).

16 18 dum . . . convenirent: 'until the men should' etc. (§ 198. III. b).

16 19 diem: the meaning here is 'time,' not 'day.'

16 20 ad Íd. Apr.: 'April 13' (§ 227, d). — reverterentur: 'they should return' (§ 205).

16 21 Chap. 8. legiōne: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 milia: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar's diem ad deliberandum was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The pedum sēdecim is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

17 2 pedum: gen. of description (§77).
17 3 quō facilius ... posset: why is quō used instead of ut? See §176.
17 4 sē invítō: abl. abs.; 'against his will' (§117.c).—cōnārentur ...
posset: note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical
presents dispónit and commūnit (§164).
17 6 negat sē ... posse: 'says he cannot' etc. Do not transl. negat
'deny.'
17 8 cōnentur: subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indir. disc.
(§208).—prohibitūrum (esse): supply sē for subj. and eōs for obj.
17 10 nōn numquam: 'sometimes'; the two negatives equal an affirmative.
17 11 si ... possent: indir. question depending on cōnātī; 'having tried
(to see) whether' etc. (§201).
17 12 cōnātū: see §101.
17 14 CHAP. 9. ûna ... via: 'only the one way.'
17 16 possent: subjv. in a causal clause (§189).
17 17 ut ... impetrārent: a purpose clause (§174).—eō dēprecātōre: 'by
his intercession' (lit. 'he being intercessor').
17 18 grātiā: 'personal influence'; abl. of cause (§109).
17 20 novis rēbus: 'revolution'; dative (§83).
17 22 obstrictās: used as a pred. adjective.
17 23 patiantur ... dent: subjv. in subst. clauses of result (§187. I).
—obsidēs: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as
security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held
responsible and punished.
17 24 Šequani ... Helvētīi: sc. obsidēs dent; dent is followed by the
purpose clauses nē ... prohibeant and ut ... trānseant (§174).
18 4 CHAP. 10. fieret: subjv. in a subord. clause in indir. disc. after intellegebat (§208).
18 5 futūrum (esse) ut ... habēret: 'it would be to the great peril of the
Province to have' etc.; ut ... habēret is a subst. clause of result, subj. of
futūrum (esse) (§187. II).
18 6 locīs: abl. of place where (§120. b).
18 7 finitimōs: pred., 'have as neighbors' etc.
18 8 mūnitiōni: see §84.—Labiēnum: an officer in whom Cæsar had
the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.
18 9 lēgātum: see Introd. III. 6. b. See vocabulary for two meanings of
this word. The context will always tell which is intended.
18 10 duās: the eleventh and twelfth legions.—trēs: the seventh, eighth,
and ninth. These together with eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat (p. 16, l. 21), which
was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cæsar's army.
18 15 Complūribus ... pulsīs: pulsīs agrees with hīs (abl. abs.) (§117. b).
18 21 Chap. 11. angustiās: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 rogātum: supine (§ 226. a and note). A word of saying is implied in rogātum which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was *Ita omnī tempore . . . meriti sumus ut paene in conspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstāri, libēri in servitūtem abdūci, oppida expugnārī non dēbuerint* (§ 179).

19 6 dē populātīs: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For reliquī see § 76; for sibi, § 88.

19 11 exspectandum (esse): impers.; transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 pervenīrent: see §§ 198. III. b, 162.

19 13 Chap. 12. Flūmen est Arar: 'there is a river (called) the Saōne.'

19 14 lēnitāte: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 in . . . fluat: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of possit.

19 16 trānsībant: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. a).

19 17 partēs: obj. of -dūxisse; flūmen is accusative, depending on trāns-

in trādūxisse (§ 95).

19 18 citrā: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 dē tertiā vigiliā: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and

3 a.m. See vocabulary.

19 23 mandārunt: contracted from mandāvērunt.

20 4 quae pars . . . intulerat, ea . . . persolvit: the normal order would be *ea pars quae* etc.; the antecedent of *quae* is *pars*, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 princeps poenās persolvit: 'paid the penalty first'; princeps, though

an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 eius soceri: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's

wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 Chap. 13. pontem . . . faciendum cūrat: 'had a bridge made'

(§ 224. a).

20 13 cum . . . intellegerent: see § 195.—diēbus vigintī: 'in the course

of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 ut . . . trānsīrent: a result clause in apposition with *id* (§ 187. I).

20 17 Si . . . faciet . . . ibunt . . . erunt: a future more probable condi-

tion (§ 199. II. a).

20 20 incommōdi: for gen. see § 81. a.

20 22 Quod: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).

20 23 suis: see §§ 82, 132. Sui is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 ut . . . contendāmus . . . nitāmur: see § 179.
21 8 eō ... quō: abls. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.
21 9 si ... fuisset: a past condition contrary to fact (§ 199. III. b). Transl. quī si 'if it.' The subj. of fuisset is quī, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of alie̊n'ius.
21 11 quā rē timēret: quā rē is equivalent to propter quod with quicquam understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). Timēret is thus a subjv. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun populus Rōmānus takes a singular verb (§ 65. a).
21 12 Quod sī: 'but if' etc.
21 13 contumelīae: see § 81. a. — volō: see § 199. I. a.
21 14 quod ... temptāstis ... vexāstis: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with iniūriārum (§ 182).
21 17 Quod ... glōriāmini ... admirāmini: 'the fact that' etc. These quod clauses are the subjects of pertinet (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.
21 19 Cōnsuērunt: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — quō gravius ...

doleant: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.
21 20 quōs: the antecedent of this rel. is hās (§ 139).
21 23 Cum ... sint: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). Cum with the subjv. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word tamen, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — si ... dabuntur: see § 199. II. a.
21 24 ut ... intellegam: see § 174. — Haeduīs: see § 84. a.
21 25 ipsis sociīisque: see § 84.
21 28 uti ... cōnsuērīnt: a result clause with the antecedent word ita (§ 179 and note). — cōnsuērīnt: contracted from cōnsuēverīnt.
21 29 Hōc respōnso datō: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b).
22 2 Chap. 15. equitātum: see Introd. III. 2. — quem ... coāctum habēbat: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. b. note).
22 4 videant: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question quās ... faciant as object.
22 5 cupidius: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — aliēnō locō: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. b.
22 10 novissimō agmine: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where. When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted; regularly so before certain words (§ 120. b).
NOTES

22 12 rapinis: see § 101.
22 15 quinis aut sēnis: distributives; 'five or six miles each day.'—
milibus: see § 105.
22 16 CHAP. 16. Haeduŏs frumentum . . . flāgitāre: 'demanded grain of
the Hādui' (§ 93).
22 17 essent . . . pollicitā: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.;
'which (as he said) they had promised' (§ 208. b). If Cæsar had given this as
a fact on his own authority, he would have written erant . . . pollicitā.—flāgi-
tāre: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).
22 18 frumenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops
of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last
of June); the green fodder (pābulī) was scarce because Cæsar was following
in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country
almost bare.—nē . . . quidem: 'not . . . even of green fodder.' A word
standing between nē and quidem is made emphatic.
22 19 frumentō: abl. with Ŀītī (§ 107. a).
22 20 flūmine Arāri: see § 120. b. note 1.
22 22 Diem: see § 96.—duēcere: historical inf. (§ 218); also dicere, l. 23;
cf. flāgitāre, l. 17.—conferrī, comportāri, adesse: the subj. is frumentum.
Note the climax, 'they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was
already at hand.'
22 24 diūtius: 'too long'; cf. cupidīnus, l. 5.—quō diē: abl. of time (§ 119).
Do not transl. diē.
23 1 summō magistrātui praerat: 'held the chief office.' For the case of
magistrātui see § 84.
23 2 vergobretum: see § 94.
23 4 posset: the subj. is frumentum understood. For the mood see
§ 214.
23 5 propinquīs hostibus: 'with the enemy so near'; abl. abs.
23 6 sublevētur: Cæsar is telling why he blamed the Hādui; but, looking
back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person
upon whose authority the reason is given; 'he blamed them because (as he
said) ' etc. (§ 188. b).
23 7 quod sit dēstitūtus: subjv. on the same principle as sublevētur;
'because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.'
23 9 CHAP. 17. quod: rel. pronoun, obj. of tacuerat. The antecedent is
id understood, obj. of prōpōnit.
23 11 valeat: subjv. of description (§ 177. a).
23 12 improbā ōrātiōne: 'shameless talk.'
23 13 nē frumentum cōnferant: see § 185.
23 14 Praestāre: 'that it is better.'—si . . . possint: see § 199. II. b.
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK I

23 16 quin . . . sint erezti: see §186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§222.1).
23 17 Haeduis: dative of separation (§86).
23 19 quod . . . enuntiavi: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§182.a); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.
23 20 quantō . . . fecerim: indir. question (§201).
23 23 Chap. 18. plūribus praesentibus: 'in the presence of many' (§117.e).
23 24 dimittit: historical present (§153.a). A number of others follow.
23 1 esse vēra: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following.—Ipse est Dumnorix: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'
24 2 summā audāciā: 'of the utmost boldness' (§116).
24 5 pretiō: abl. of value (§108).—redempta habet: see §156.b. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3.—illō licente: 'when he bid'; the verb is from liceor, not licet.
24 6 rēbus: see §106.
24 7 ad largiendum: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see §223.c.
24 8 sumptū: see §106.
24 9 domī: see §120.a.
24 10 causā: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see §109 and note.
24 12 sorōrem ex mātre: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'
24 15 suō nōmine: 'on his own account' (§109).
24 17 Si quid accidit: see §199. I.a.
24 19 imperiō: 'under the rule' (§112).
24 21 quod: 'as to the fact that' (§182.a).'
24 22 diēbus: see §114; there is a comparative idea in ante (lit. 'before by a few days').
24 24 auxiliar Caesarī: 'as an aid to Caesar' (§89).
25 2 Chap. 19. accēderent: see §189; the following quod clauses are in apposition with rēs ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§208.6); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.
25 3 dandōs: see §224.d; cf. p. 20, l. 11.
25 4 iniussū suō etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'
25 5 ipsis: i.e. himself and the Hædui. For the case see §117.e.
25 6 causae: part. gen. depending on satis, which is used as a noun (§76.a).—qua re ... animadverteret: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§177).
25 8 quod . . . cognōverat: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with ūnum, 'only one thing, namely' (§§181, 182, second example); for the meaning of cognōscō in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.
NOTES

25 9 studium: 'attachment,' as a partisan.
25 10 voluntātem: 'good will,' as a friend.
25 11 nē: 'that' (§ 184). — eius: i.e. of Dumnorix.
25 13 prius quam...cōnārētur: 'before he should attempt' (§ 197. b).
25 16 summam...fīdem: 'full confidence.' — eō: refers to Diviciacus, as does ipsō (l. 17); while apud sē (l. 19), 'in his presence,' refers to Cæsar.
25 20 ipse: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in sine eius offensione animī, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar's diplomacy is constantly apparent.
25 22 Chap. 20. complexus: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees, falling at his feet.
25 23 nē quid gravius: 'that not any too severe measures' (§ 122); gravius is an adjective modifying quid.
25 24 ex eō: 'from that fact,' referring to haec esse vēra.
26 4 cum...teneō: 'while I hold.'
26 6 volūntāte: see § 111.
26 10 tanti: 'of so great account,' gen. of value (§ 78). — utī...eius volūntāti ac precibus condōnet: 'that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook' etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).
26 13 reprehendat: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.
26 15 Diviciācō frātrī: 'for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus' (§ 85).
26 19 Chap. 21. milia: see § 96.
26 20 cognōscerent: the subj. is quī, whose antecedent is quōsdam, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of misit (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.
26 21 faciēm (ascēnsum) esse: subj. of renāntiātum est.—Dē tertiā vigiliā: cf. p. 19, l. 19 and note.
26 22 prō prætōre: the prætor had the power to command an army; a lēgātus might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called lēgātus prō prætōre.
26 24 cōnsili: pred. gen. after quid sit, 'what his plan is' (§ 77. a). — dē quārtā vigiliā: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.
26 26 reī: see § 80.
26 28 in: sc. exercitū.
27 2 Chap. 22. ipse: '(and) he himself,' i.e. Cæsar.
27 3 passibus: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after longius (§ 105. note 2).
27 4 Labiēni: sc. adventus.—equō admissō: 'at full speed.'

27 6 armis: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69.

27 7 insignibus: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc.—stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.

27 8 Caesar . . . instruit: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. Cæsar in consequence falls back.

27 9 ut: 'since,' 'inasmuch as.'—erat . . . præceptum: imperps.; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. a). The grammatical subj. is the clause nē . . . committeret, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

27 13 Multō . . . diē: abl. of time; 'late in the day' (§ 119).

27 15 quod nōn vidisset: 'what he had not seen'; īd understood, the obj. of renuntiāsse, is the antecedent; prō vīsō, 'as if seen' (lit. 'for a thing seen').

27 16 intervāllō: sc. eōdem, 'at the same interval as usual'; for the case see § 112.

27 21 Chap. 23. milibus: for the construction cf. note on l. 3.

27 22 prōspiciendum (esse): imperps.; sc. sībi, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); 'he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.'

27 23 āvertit: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.

27 24 fugitivōs: 'runaway slaves.'

27 25 quod . . . existimārent . . . cōnfiderent: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. b).

27 26 eō magis: 'all the more' (lit. 'more by this'); see § 114.

27 28 rē: abl. of separation (§ 101).—interclōdi: complementary inf. (§ 217. c) after posse, the subj. of which is eōs (Rōmānōs) understood.

28 1 itinere conversō: 'facing about' (lit. 'altering their course completely'); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave Cæsar the chance he was waiting for.

28 3 Chap. 24. id: governed by animum advertit, as a compound verb.

28 4 quī sustinēret: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

28 5 in colle mediō: 'halfway up the hill' (§ 125).—triplicem aciem: see Introd. III. 12.

28 6 legiōnum: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII–X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (proximē conscripserat), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.

28 8 sarcinās: see ill., p. 69, and Introd. III. 9. d.
28 10 *cum omnibus suis carris*: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 *phalange*: great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 **Chap. 25. suō (equō remōtō) etc.:** i.e. his own and those of his officers. Caesar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Caesar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 *pilīs*: see Introd. III. 9. c, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 *Gallis . . . impedīmentō*: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 *plūribus*: 'several.'

28 20 *ferrum*: i.e. the long iron shank of the *pīlum*.

28 21 *inflexisset*: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189). — *sinistrā impedītā*: abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. c); transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 *multī ut*: transl. as if it were *ut multī*: multī is made emphatic by its position. *Ut* here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 *nūdō*: 'unprotected.' — *corpore*: abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 *agmen . . . claudēbant*: 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Caesar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (*latere apertō*) as they came on the field from the road (hence *ex itinere*). The right side is said to be *exposed* since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 *novissimis praesidiō*: see § 89, and cf. *Gallis . . . impedīmentō*, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 *adgressī*: 'having attacked.' — *circumvenire*: sc. *coepērunt* from l. 5.

29 5 *conversa signa . . . intulērunt*: 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (*bipartītō*). See battle plan.

29 6 *victīs . . . submōtīs*: i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 *resisteret . . . sustinēret*: see § 174.

30 1 **Chap. 26. pugnātum est**: see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 *alterī . . . alterī*: the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. d). — *ut*: *as.*

30 5 *cum*: concessive (§ 192). — *hōrā septimā*: the day from sunrise to
sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (höræ). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o'clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make ab hörā septimā a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 äversum: 'in retreat,' 'fleeing' (lit. 'turned away').—Ad multam noctem: 'till late at night.'

30 9 coniciēbant . . . subiciēbant: 'hurled' (from above), 'thrust' (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. a.

30 11 impedimentīs castrīisque: see § 107. a.

30 12 captus est: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 tōtā nocte: see § 119. note.

30 16 cum . . . potuissent: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 nē . . . iuvārent: 'telling them) that they should not' etc. The subjv. stands for nālite invāre of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. a).

30 19 sī iuvissent: the dir. disc. would be sī iūveritis, 'if you shall have aided.'—locō: 'estimation.'

30 22 CHAP. 27. Quī cum: 'when they' etc. (§ 143).

30 26 quī . . . perfugissent: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b; cf. p. 22, l. 16; p. 25, l. 2). Cæsar's words might have been, "Trādite obsidēs . . . quī ad vōs perfugērunt."

32 1 Dum . . . conquiruntur et cōnferuntur: transl. as past (§ 198. I).

32 3 perterriti: although mīlia is n., the participle agreeing with it is m., the construction being according to sense instead of form.—nē . . . adācerentur: depending on the verbal idea in timōre, the subjv. being used as with verbs of fearing (§ 184).

32 4 quod . . . existimārent: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. b).

32 5 occultāri: 'be hid' from Cæsar.—ignōrāri: 'be unknown' to anybody.

32 8 CHAP. 28. Quod ubi: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here quod ubi = ubi hoc (§ 143). Cf. Quī cum, p. 30, l. 22.—quōrum: the antecedent is hīs, indir. obj. of imperāvit, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause utī . . . reducerent.

32 9 sī . . . vellent: this subord. clause is part of what Cæsar said, and depending on the clause utī . . . reducerent is also subjv. (§ 214). Cæsar's words probably were, "Conquirite et reducite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis" (or "volēsit").—sībi: 'in his sight' or 'estimation'; dative of reference (§ 85).

32 10 in hostium numerō habuit: 'he treated as enemies' (lit. 'he held in the number of enemies'); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.
NOTES

32 16 ipsōs: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food. — quōs: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.
32 22 petentibus Haeduīs: ‘to the Hædui at their request’ etc.; dative after concessit, of which the dir. obj. is ut Bōiōs contlocārent. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hædui.
32 24 parem . . . atque ipsī erant: ‘equal with their own’ (lit. ‘as they themselves were’).
33 1 Chap. 29. tabulae: ‘tablets,’ of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. See illustration, p. 56. — litteris Graecīs: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.
33 3 ratiō: ‘an account.’ — qui . . . exisset: an indir. question.
33 4 possent: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of qui is eōrum.  
33 8 ad mília XCII: ‘about 92,000.’ — Summa: ‘the sum’; füerunt agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

The War with Ariovistus. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar’s consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.
33 13 Chap. 30. grātulātum: see § 226. a.
33 15 populī Rōmānī: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).
33 16 eam rem . . . accidisse: ‘nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (ex īūsī) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.’
33 17 eō cōnsiliō: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose utī ... habērent (§ 183, third example). — flōrentissimīs rēbus: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. d); 'although they were in prosperous circumstances.'

33 19 imperiō: see § 107. a. — domiciliō: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 voluntāte: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 īūre īūrandō ... sānxērunt: 'ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).'

34 4 Chap. 31. īdem: nominative plur. — antē: adv.

34 6 dē suā omniumque salūte: 'concerning their own safety and (that) of all.'

34 7 Caesarī ad pedēs: dative of reference (§ 83); transl., 'at Caesar's feet.'

34 9 nē ... ēnūntiēntur ... utī ... impetrēmus: subst. clauses in apposition with id, the obj. of contendimus and laborāmus (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 Galliae tōtius: this does not include all of the Gallia defined in chap. 1, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 alterius ... alterīus: 'the one ... the other' (§ 144. d); gens. after principātum.

34 15 utī ... arcesserentur: a clause of result, subj. of factum est, 'it came to pass' (§ 187. II).

34 16 mercēde: 'for pay' (§ 108).

34 24 quī: the antecedent is ēi understood, subj. of coāctī sunt (§ 142).

35 3 sēsē ... repetītūrōs (esse) ... recūsātūrōs (esse): indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in cīvitātem obstringere (§ 203. a). The words of their oath were 'we will neither demand back hostages ... nor refuse' etc.

35 4 quō minus ... essent: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., 'refuse to be under their dominion' etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 ūnus ... sum: 'I am the only one.'

35 7 poterim: see § 177. a. — ut iūrāre: 'to take an oath.'

35 8 Rōmam ad senātum: note that the preposition is used only with senātum; why not with Rōmam? See § 97.

35 9 postulātum: supine (§ 226. a).

35 11 peius: n. adjective used as a noun; 'a worse fate.'

35 14 dē alterā parte tertīā: 'from a second third.'

35 15 paucīs mēnsibus antē: 'a few months before' (lit. 'before by a few months'). Antē is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 Paucīs annīs: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
35 19 neque . . . agrō: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'
35 20 haec: 'this of ours.'— illā: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.
35 22 ut semel: 'as soon as.'
35 24 nōbilissimi cuiusque: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of quisque when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'
35 25 omnia exempla cruciātūsque: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.
35 27 barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: 'savage, passionate, hasty.'
36 1 auxilli: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun quid, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. a).
36 2 Gallis: dative of agent (§ 87) with est faciendūm, the subj. of which is idem, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause ut . . . experiantur.
36 4 Haec: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).
36 5 quīn . . . sūmat: see § 186.
36 7 exerciūs: gen.; 'that of the army.'
36 8 nē . . . trādūcātur: see § 185.
36 9 Rhēnum: depending on trānōs in trā(n)ūs dūcātur (§ 95. note).
36 15 Chap. 32. quae . . . esset: indir. question (§ 201).
36 16 respondēre: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. flāgitāre, p. 22, l. 17.
36 20 Hōc: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause quod . . . audent (§ 182).
36 21 nē . . . quidem: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.
36 22 absentis: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. a).
36 23 velut . . . adsit: see § 200.
36 24 tamen: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—Sēquanis: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).
37 2 Chap. 33. sibi . . . cūrae etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.
37 3 et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte: construe after adductum, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; beneficiō refers to services that would inspire gratitude, auctōritāte to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.
37 6 secundum ea: 'besides these considerations'; secundum is here used as a preposition.—quā rē . . . putāret: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).
37 8 quod . . . vidēbat . . . intellegēbat: 'the fact that he saw . . . that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with multae rēs in l. 6.
37 11 quod: rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. disc. Haeduós . . . tenērī, . . . obsidōs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanōs, describing the plight of the Hædui and Sequani.—in tantō . . . Rōmānī: 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 perīculōsum: 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine' etc. Germānōs is the subj. of cōnsuēscere, and multītūdinem is subj. of venīre. These two clauses are the subjs. of perīculōsum (esse). The whole clause is the obj. of vidēbat (§§ 217. b, 203). — sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent: 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For sibi see § 83; for exīrent, see § 185.

37 17 ut . . . fēcissent: 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be fēcērunt (§ 208).

37 19 quibus rēbus: see §§ 143, 84.—occurrendum (esse): impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be sibi. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like occurrendum) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 Ch. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a clause of purpose, subj. of placuit (§ 183, fourth example).

37 23 qui . . . postulārent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).—medium utriusque: 'between the two.'

37 24 conloquīō: 'for a conference.'—velle: depends on the verb of saying implied in postulārent.—rē pūblica: here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 Sī . . . esset: a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b).

38 1 si quid ille mē volt: volt takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 negotī: part. gen. with quid.—sit: indir. question.

38 9 Ch. 35. mandātis: denoting a stern command. Cæsar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 adfectus: a participle denoting concession (§ 220. d).

38 12 ut . . . gravētur . . . putet: a result clause explaining hanc grātiam (§ 187. I).

38 15 nē quam: 'that not any.'

38 17 quōs: the antecedent is eōs understood, the obj. of reddere (§ 142). The subjvs. in this sentence (except līceat) are introduced by nē, or ut implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with haec.—illī . . . illīs: the Sequani.

38 23 quod . . . posset: 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.'—commodō: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 Ch. 36. ut . . . imperēnt: a subst. clause in apposition with iūs
The antecedent of quid is ei understood, the subj. of imperent. The dative ei is governed by imperent (§ 83).

38 27 vicerint: see § 214.—quem ad modum: 'in what manner.'
38 28 victis: dative with imperare (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun.
—ad: 'according to.'
39 4 mihi: see § 90.
39 6 quī . . . faciat: a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).
40 1 sī . . . manēbunt: 'if they will abide by the condition.'
40 3 longē . . . aberit: i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them brothers will do them little good (lit. 'will be far from them').
40 4 Quod: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).
40 6 congrdiātūr: subjv. in a command (§ 172. b).—quid . . . possint:
'what they can do.'
40 10 Chap. 37. questum: supine denoting purpose (§ 226. a).
40 11 quod . . . populārentur: a reason given on another's authority, which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; 'because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields' (§§ 188. b, 208. b).
40 12 nē obsidibus quidem: cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.
40 13 Trēveri: sc. questum veniēbant.
40 16 commōtus: a participle denoting cause (§ 220. b).
40 17 mātūrandum sibi (esse): impers. with dative of apparent agent; transl, 'that he should have to hasten' (§ 222. II. note).
40 19 resistī: impers.; transl., 'resistance could not be so easily made' (§ 83. a).—celerrimē: for the form see comparison of ācriter (§ 17).
40 20 contendit: the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus was is uncertain.
40 21 Chap. 38. trīduī: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).—viam: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).
40 22 occupandum: gerundive agreeing with Vesontiōnem. Distinguish from the gerund (§§ 224. b, 225. a).
40 23 quod: the antecedent is Vesontiōnem, but the agreement is with opposium (§ 138).
40 24 Id: refers to ad occupandum Vesontiōnem.
40 25 praecavendum (esse): impers.; the subj. is nē accideret, a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).
40 26 ľusui: dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be looked for with this one. See § 85.
40 27 idemque: sc. opposium.—ut . . . facultātem: 'that it afforded a great opportunity for protracting a war'; a clause of result.
42 2 ut: 'as if.'
42 4 pedum: pred. gen. after est (§ 77. a and b). For the construction
with *amplius* see § 105, note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar's description. See illustration, p. 41. — *quā*: 'where.'

42 5 altitūdine: abl. of description (§ 116). — *rādiceā*: obj., and *ripace* subj., of *contingant."

42 6 Hunc (montem) . . . *efficit*: 'this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.'

42 7 nocturnīs . . . itineribus: transl., 'marches by night and by day.'

42 11 CHAP. 39. morātur: see § 198. I. Cf. p. 32, l. 11.

42 12 vōcibus: 'reports' or 'talk.' — *magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exer-citātiōne*: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. *altitūdine*, l. 5.

42 15 congressōs: 'having met them.'

42 17 nōn mediocrīter: 'in no slight degree,' 'greatly.'

42 19 Hic: i.e. *timor. — ortus est ā*: 'began with' (lit. 'rose from'). — reliquis: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See Introd. III. 6. d.

42 20 urbe: i.e. Rome. — *nōn magnum*: 'very little.'

42 21 alius aliā causā inlātā: 'on various pretexts' (lit. 'another, another pretext having been alleged'). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when *alius* is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. d. 1).

42 22 quam . . . diceret: see § 177.

42 25 voltum fingere: freely, 'to put on a brave face.'

42 28 testāmenta obsignābantur: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 magnum . . . ûsum: 'long experience in the service.'

43 3 Quī: the antecedent is *ēi* understood, the subj. of *dīēbant."

43 6 rem frūmentāriām: lit. the obj. of *timēre*, 'they feared the supply of grain, that it might not' etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of *posset*, 'they feared that the supply of grain might not' etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word *before* the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called "prolepsis." Compare

"Who knows the ways of the world,
How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of *ut in ut . . . posset* depending on *timēre* (§ 184).

43 8 castra movērī ac signa ferri: 'to break camp and advance.' These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom *signa ferri*, 'advance.'
NOTES

43 9 audientēs: used in the sense of 'obey' (i.e. 'hearken to'), and so followed by the dative (§83).

43 11 CHAP. 40. adhibitis centuriōnibus: the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Cæsar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Cæsar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putārent: a reason given on another's authority (§ 188. b). Here Cæsar the writer gives the reason of Cæsar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 18 quaerendum . . . cōgitandum: sc. esse; an impers. construction (§§ 224. a, 66).

43 15 Cūr . . . quisquam . . . iūdicet: a rhetorical question; 'why should any one consider?' The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. d. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: 'I am convinced' (§ 83. a).

43 20 quid . . . vereāmini: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb ex-perior, 'try'; the word which came to mean 'danger' originally meant 'trial,' and this is the meaning here.— Cimbri et Teutoniūs: these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritus (esse) vidēbātur: 'was seen to have deserved.'

43 25 servīli tumultū: 'in the uprising of the slaves,' i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73-71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time.— quōs: this refers to servōs as antecedent implied in the adjective servīli.— aliquid: adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., 'somewhat.'

43 27 boni: see § 76. a.

Si quòs: if any. — adversum proelium: the defeat at Magetobriga;

see p. 35, l. 23.

Ariovistum: subj. of vècisse in indir. disc.

neque sui potestatem fècisset: ‘and had given them no chance at him.’

ratìóne... cōnsiliò... virtūte: see § 106.

Cui ratìóni... hāc: this expression is equivalent to hāc ratìóne cui; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); ‘by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.’

Qui: the antecedent is eì understood, the subj. of faciunt.

mihi... cūrae: ‘I will take care of these things’ (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.

Quod etc.: ‘as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance’ (§ 182. a).

quibuscumque etc.: lit. ‘to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking’ etc.; dictō depends upon audiēns, and the two words combined, dictō audiēns, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative quibuscumque, whose antecedent is eis understood, governed by défuisse.

innocentia: this disproves avāritiam as fēlicitās does male rē gestā.

Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory:

male rē gestā ❌ avāritiam

innocentia ❌ fēlicitās

Compare in English:

“So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their armor was,
Their steeds were white as snow.”

vitā: see § 119. note.

quod... conlātūrus fui: sc. id as the antecedent of quod and the obj. of repraesentābō.


praetòria cohors: ‘bodyguard,’ made up of the bravest men.

Chap. 41. innāta est: sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).

optimum iūdicium fècisset: ‘had expressed the very highest opinion’; a reason stated on another’s authority (§ 188. δ).

cum tribūnīs... ēgérunt etc.: ‘arranged with the tribunes to apologize’ (satisfacerent).
45 12 neque dē summā belli etc.: 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (suum), but their general's.'
45 13 suum . . . imperātōris: preds. after esse (§ 73. a).
46 1 itinere exquisītō . . . ut . . . dūceret: lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.
46 2 eī: 'in him'; dative after fīdem habēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).
46 3 milīum: (sc. passum) gen. of measure modifying circuitū (§ 77. b). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'
46 5 cum . . . intermitteret: a causal clause (§ 189).
46 9 Ch. 42. Quod: a rel. preceding its antecedent, id. — per sē: 'so far as he was concerned.'
46 10 accessisset: the subj. is Cæsar.
46 12 ad sānitātem revertī: 'was beginning to return to his senses.'
46 13 petenti: 'when he (i.e. Cæsar) asked it.' — ultrō pollicērētur: 'he now promised of his own accord.' — magnamque in sēm veniēbat: 'he began to have great hopes.'
46 15 fore: the lack of a fut. participle of the verb dēsistere is supplied by the periphrasis fore utī . . . dēsisteret, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.
46 16 conloquiō: see § 89.
46 18 nē . . . addūceret: a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. c).
46 23 Gallōrum equītātui: he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.
46 25 eō: adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.
47 2 si quid etc.: 'if there should be any need of active service'; quid is adverbial accusative (§ 99). — factō: see § 107. c.
47 3 nōn inrīdiculē: 'not without wit.' — ex militibus: instead of milītum (§ 76, exception).
47 4 pollicītum: sc. esse.
47 6 ad equum rescribere: 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. nōn inrīdiculē) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the equītēs
THE TRANSL.

THE GALlic WAR—BOOK I

(knights),' a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Caesar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 Chap. 43. spatiō: see § 114.
47 10 equis: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.
47 13 praeter sē dēnōs: 'besides themselves ten each'; dēnōs is a distributive numeral.
47 17 amicus: sc. appellātus esset (§ 94. note).—mūnera . . . missa (essent): the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.
47 18 et . . . et: 'both . . . and.'
47 22 Docēbat: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by quam, 'how'; quamque, 'and how' (l. 22); quotiēns quamque, 'how often and how'; ut, 'how' (l. 24).
47 23 ipsis cum Haeduiōs intercēderent: 'existed between the Romans (ipsēs) and the Haedui' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haedui').
47 26 prius . . . quam . . . adpetissent: see §§ 197. a, 208.
47 27 ut . . . vellet: a result clause explaining hanc cōnsuētūdinem (§ 187, third example).
47 28 suī nihil: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); suī is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).
47 29 quod: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, id (§ 139).
47 30 quis . . . posset: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was quis . . . possit? For the mood see § 172. d and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that cēs is a dative (§ 86).
48 2 nē . . . inferret . . . redderet . . . nē . . . paterētur: these clauses are in apposition with eadem.
48 5 Chap. 44. pauca: in contrast with milīta in the next line.
48 8 magnā spē magnisque praemīis: transl. as if it were magnā spē magnōrum praemīorum.
48 12 ad mē oppugnandum: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. a).
48 16 pāce: see § 107. a.
48 19 oportet: impers.; the grammatical subj. is amīcitiam . . . esse (§ 216. b).
48 23 Quod . . . trādūcō: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).
48 24 Galliae impugnandae: see § 225. b. For melī mūniendī see § 224. c.
48 25 nisi rogātus: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').
NOTES

48 28 finibus: see §101.
48 29 Quid tibi vis: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§85).
48 30 haec . . . Gallia: 'this part of Gaul.'—Ut . . . sic: 'as . . . so.'
Oportet is impers. Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if . . . so.'
49 4 rērum: see §80.
49 5 bellō . . . proximō: four years before.
49 7 habuerunt: for indic. see §208. a. So habēs, l. 10.
49 9 Dēbeō suspicāri etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'
49 10 mei opprimendī: see §224. c, and cf. p. 48, l. 24.
49 12 Quod: 'but'; so in l. 15.—nōbilibus . . . grātum: Cæsar, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to Ariovistus from Rome.
49 14 compertum habeō: almost the same in force as comperī (§156. b. note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.
49 15 tuā morte: see §106.
49 18 sine üllō tuō labōre: 'without any toil on your part.'
49 19 Chap. 45. in eam sententiam . . . quā rē: 'to this effect (to show) why.'—quā rē . . . posset: an indir. question. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'
49 24 quibus: with ignōvit (from ignōscō); see §83.
49 26 antiquissimum quodque tempus: see note on p. 35, l. 24.
49 29 suīs: 'its own,' referring to Gaul.—voluerit: subjv. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'
50 1 Chap. 46. geruntur: see §198. I.
50 2 tumulum: governed by proprius, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.
50 5 nē . . . reicerent: dir. obj. of imperāvit; the indir. obj. is suīs.
50 7 committendum nōn putābat ut . . . dīcī posset: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of committendum is the ut clause (§187. I).
50 8 per fidem: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'
50 10 omnī Galliā: abl. of separation with interdixisset. Rōmānīs is the indir. obj.
50 11 interdixisset: subjv. in an indir. question together with fēcissent and dirēmissēt: 'when it was reported what insolence Ariovistus had displayed (lit.
'having employed what insolence'), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.' The indir. questions are subjs. of ēľātum est.

50 13 pugnandi: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. 6).

50 15 Chap. 47. coeptae: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 utī . . . cōstitueret: following velle, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); mitteret is in the same construction.

50 17 suis: refers to Ĉaesar, sē (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 causa visa nōn est: 'there did not seem to be a good reason.'

50 19 et eō magis, quōd: 'and all the more on this account, that' etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note.—retinērī . . . quīn: 'be kept from' (§ 185).

50 21 missūrum . . . objectūrum: sc. esse.

50 23 Commodissimum: pred. adjective with mittere (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. a).

50 24 virtūte et hūmānitāte: not 'virtue and humanity'; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., 'worth and culture.'

50 25 cīvitāte: abl. of means.

50 26 quā multitā . . . ūtēbātur: 'which Ariovistus spoke freely' (§ 107. a).

51 1 quōd in eō: 'because in his case.'

51 2 peccandi . . . causa: 'grounds for committing an offense.'

51 3 ūtēbātur: 'enjoyed.' Cf. ūtēbātur in l. 1. Observe how the verb ātor demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of 'use' remains fundamental.

51 7 Cōnantes dicere prohibuit: 'as they were trying to speak he shut them off.'

51 13 Chap. 48. supportārētur: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also vellet (l. 16).

51 15 īnstrūctam habuit: 'kept his line drawn up'; cf. compertum habeō, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 castrīs: the "place where" may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 hoc: explained by the following description.

51 21 singulī (equītēs) singulōs (peditēs): i.e. one apiece.

51 23 si quīd erat dūrius: 'if there was unusual trouble' (lit. 'if there was anything too hard'); see § 122.

51 25 si quō . . . prōdeundum: 'if there was need of advancing to any place.'

51 26 ut . . . adaequārent: 'that by holding on to (lit. 'supported by') the horses' manes they kept up with them in speed.'—iubīs: abl. of means.
253

52 3 Chap. 49. castris: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Cæsar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 acīē triplīcī: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 expedīta: agreeing with mīlia in form, but with homīnum in sense.

52 9 terrērent: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 Chap. 50. institūtō suō: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 18 sortībus: ‘lots,’ of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — vāticinātiōnibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions. — utrum . . . necne: see § 170. b. 2.

53 14 eās: i.e. mātrēs familiae. — Nōn esse fās: ‘it was not fated.’

53 15 novam lūnam: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 Chap. 51. quod satis esse visum est: sc id, obj. of reliquit and antecedent of quod.— ālāriōs: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, ālāriō, from āla, ‘wing.’

53 19 prō: ‘in front of.’ Cf. this meaning with the one in l. 20.

53 20 prō hostium numerō: ‘in comparison with the number of the enemy.’

53 21 ad speciem: ‘for a show,’ i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 necessāriō: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Cæsar’s assault.

53 24 intervallis: see § 112.

53 27 Eō: ‘thereon,’ i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 proficiscentēs: ‘(the men) as they advanced’ (§ 167); obj. of implūrābant.

54 1 Chap. 52. singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs: ‘a lēgātus in command of each legion’; however, having at this time only five lēgātī he appointed his quartermaster (quaestōrem) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 eam partem: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 pīla . . . coniciendi: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223. note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. b).

54 9 impetūs: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 insilērent . . . revellent . . . volnērērent: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (dēsuper).

54 11 Cum: ‘although.’
54 16 tertiam aciem: this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.
54 18 CHAP. 53. prius ... quam ... pervenérunt: see § 197. a.
54 22 ea: abl. of means. It refers to nāviculam, obj. of nactus (from nāciscor).
54 23 reliquōs omnēs: said to have been 80,000 in number.
54 24 Duae ... uxōrēs: among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — nātiōne: see § 115.
54 25 dūxerat: 'had brought.' In the next line dūxerat means 'had married.'

55 1 Procillus: see p. 50, l. 23.— trīnis: used instead of tribus. Catēnae is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.
55 3 Quae ... rēs: i.e. the rescue of Procillus. Cæsar's joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.
56 4 neque ... dēminuerat: 'nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.'
56 5 ter: it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.
56 6 consultum (esse): impers.
56 13 mātūrius: 'earlier.' This was in September.
56 16 conventūs: the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gauls, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgæ as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign
against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Cæsar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 CHAP. 1. Cum esset etc.: for the subjv. see § 194. b.; esset is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: in citeriori Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: 'during Cæsar’s stay in Cisalpine Gaul.'

57 2 dēmōnstrāvimus . . . dīxerāmus: In referring to himself as the writer Cæsar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—adferēbantur: the past descr. shows repeated action; 'kept coming in.' The force of the tense is aided by crēbrī.

57 4 quam: agrees with partem, though its real antecedent is Belgās (§ 138). It is the subj. of esse.

57 5 inter sē: 'to one another.'

57 6 hās esse causās: 'that the following were the reasons'; explained by the quod clauses.—quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur: subord. clauses in indir. disc. (§ 208).—ne . . . addūcerētur: subst. clause, obj. of verērentur (§ 184).

57 7 omni pācātā Galliā: 'after the subjugation of all Gaul'; abl. abs. (§ 117. b). Galliā refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

57 8 ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs: abl. of agent (§ 104).

57 9 ut . . . ita: 'just as . . . so,' correlates.—Germānōs . . . versārī: obj. of nōluerant.

57 10 hiemāre . . . inveterāscere: these infs. with their subj. exercitum are in indir. disc. after the idea of thought in molestē ferēbant, 'they took it hard.'

57 11 mōbilitāte: abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 novis imperiis studēbat: 'were eager for a change of government' (lit. 'new ruling powers'); for the dative see § 83.—ab nōn nūllīs . . . quod: 'by some also (sc. sollicitābantur) they were incited because.'

57 13 ad . . . facultātēs: 'the means for hiring soldiers.'—condūcendōs: see § 225. a.

57 15 rem: i.e. royal power.—imperiō nostrō: 'under our dominion'; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—consequi: complementary inf. (§ 217. c). In the passage above, beginning with Coniūrāndī, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (nōluerant, ferēbant, studēbant, habēbant, occupābantur, poterant) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Cæsar’s authority (§ 208. a).

57 16 CHAP. 2. nuntiis: abl. of cause.—duās legiōnēs: he had already six legions, numbered VII-XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.
57 17 initā aestāte: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. b).
57 18 qui dēdūceret: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
58 1 cum prīmum: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant,
so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.
58 2 Dat negotīum Senonibus: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he
gives business to the Senones').
58 3 utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant: a subst. clause of purpose in
apposition with negotīum (§ 183, third example). — gerantur: subjv. by attract-
tion, depending on cognōscant (§ 214).
58 4 sē: an indir. reflex., referring to Cæsar (§ 133). — cōnstanter: 'con-
sistently,' i.e. without variation.
58 5 manūs: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'
58 6 dubitandum (esse): impers. inf. in indir. disc. after exīstimāvit; 'he
thought that he ought not to hesitate.' — quīn . . . proficiscerētur: 'to set
out' (§ 186); quīn can follow only a verb with a negative.
58 7 diēbus: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
58 9 Chap. 3. Eō: adv. — omnium opinioāne: 'than any one expected'
(lit. 'than the opinion of all'); opinioāne is used after the comparative without
quam (§ 105).
58 10 Rēmī: these were friendly to the Romans.— Galliae: dative (§ 90).
— ex Belgīs: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.
58 11 lēgātōs: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does lēgātus have?
58 12 qui dicerent: see § 175. — Nōs . . . in fidem . . . permittimus:
'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.
58 15 parātī: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are
the complementary infinitives dare, facere, recipere, and iuvāre (§ 217. c).
58 16 oppidīs: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were
abl. of place, 'in our towns.'
58 18 cis Rhēnum: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.
58 19 tantus . . . ut . . . potuerimus: 'so great is the frenzy of them all
that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of
result with the antecedent word tantus (§ 179. note).
58 22 quīn . . . cōnsentirent: 'from leaguing with'; subjv. clause after a
negativēd word of hindering (§ 185). Note that the perfect subjv. (potuerimus)
is followed by a secondary tense.
58 24 Chap. 4. quae . . . quantaeque . . . essent: indir. question (§ 201).
58 25 quid . . . possent: 'what strength they had in war'; quid is an
adverbal accusative (§§ 98 and 99).
58 26 Plērique: 'the most of.' — ā Germānīs: abl. of origin with a prepo-
sition (§ 102). — Rhēnum: depending on trāns in trā(ns)ductī (§ 95. note).
58 28 sōlique: 'and . . . the only ones.'
NOTES

59 1 quī . . . prohibuerint: a clause of description (§ 177. a).—memoriā: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

59 3 quā ex rē fit utī . . . sūmant: ‘from this fact it comes about that they assume’ etc. The result clause utī . . . sūmant is the subj. of fit (§ 187. II).—memoriā: abl. of cause (§ 109).

59 5 omnia habēmus explōrāta: ‘have found out and possess all (the facts) about’ (dē) etc. The expression habēmus explōrāta differs only slightly from explōrāvīmus (§ 156. b. note, and cf. compostum habēō, p. 49. l. 14).

59 6 propinquitātibus: ‘ties of blood.’—adfinītātibus: ‘alliances by marriage.’

59 9 virtūte: abl. of respect (§ 115).

59 10 armāta milia centum: equivalent to armātōrum hominum milia centum; grammatically, armāta agrees with milia. Likewise ēlēcta in the next line agrees grammatically with milia, but is translated ‘picked men.’

59 11 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).

59 14 cum . . . tum: ‘not only . . . but.’

59 17 summa: ‘the chief command.’—voluntāte: see § 111.

59 18 numerō: see § 115.

59 19 fēri: pred. adjective after habentur, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. b, 94. note). Transl. ‘who are regarded as particularly savage.’—inter ipsōs: ‘among them,’ i.e. the Belgæ.

59 23 Condrūsōs etc.: subsjs. of posse, which depends on arbitrāmur.

59 24 Germānī: for the case cf. fēri, l. 19.

59 26 Chap. 5. cohortātus . . . prósecūtus: ‘after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them’ etc.

59 27 liberōs obsidēs: ‘their children as hostages’; obsidēs is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.

59 28 Quae omnia: ‘and all this’ etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

60 1 quantō opere . . . intersit: ‘how greatly it concerned’; indir. question. The subj. of intersit is the inf. clause, manūs . . . distinērī.—rei publicae . . . salūtis: gens. with intersit (§ 81. c).

60 2 nē . . . cōnfligendum sit: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is impers.; transl. ‘that it might not be necessary to contend’ etc.

60 3 Id fēri posse: ‘this (he said) could be done.’

60 4 intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.

60 6 Postquam . . . posuit: ‘as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgæ had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as
from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp. For ind. with postquam see § 193. — coëctās: equivalent to a clause (§ 220. e).

60 8 flūmen: depends on trāns in trā( ns) dūcere (§ 95); cf. Rhenum, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 exercitum: obj. of the transitive verb trādūcere.— trādūcere: complementary inf. with mātūrāvit; 'hastened to lead.'

60 10 castra: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862.— Quae rēs: 'this movement,' i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For Quae see § 143.— et latus . . . muniēbat et post eum . . . reddēbat, et . . . efficiēbat: the three et's are translated 'both . . . and . . . and.'

60 11 post eum quae erant tūta . . . reddēbat: 'made safe the country in the rear of his position' ('what things were behind him'); tūta is a pred. adj.

60 12 ut . . . possent: a subst. clause of result, obj. of efficiēbat (§ 187. I).

The subj. of possent is commētās, l. 12.

60 14 efficiēbat: the subj. is still Quae rēs.

60 15 in alterā parte: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Caesar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 pedum duodecim: gen. of measure with altitūdinem (§ 77. b).

60 17 duodēvīgintī pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 Chap. 6. nōmine: abl. of respect (§ 115).

60 19 milia passuum octō: 'eight miles'; milia is accusative of extent (§ 96).— passuum: part. gen.— ex itinere: 'on the march,' i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town.

60 20 Aegrē . . . sustentātum est: 'it was with difficulty that they held out'; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence imper. (§ 83. a). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 Gallōrum . . . est haec: 'the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgæ, is as follows' (haec).

60 22 circumiectā multitūdine: abl. abs.— moenibus: dative (§ 84).

60 23 iaci: complementary inf. with coeptī sunt. When are the forms of coeptī pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note.— dēfēnsōribus: abl. of separation.

60 24 testūdine factā: 'having made a testūdō'; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 Quod: 'this,' i.e. the actions just described.— multitūdō: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§ 65. a).

60 26 cōnsistendi: gen. of the gerund with potestās (§ 223. a).

60 27 nūlī: dative of possession (§ 88).
60 28 summā nōbilitāte et grātiā: '(a man) of the highest' etc. (§ 116).
61 1 oppidō: dative with praeerat (§ 84). — ūnus ex eis: 'one of those'; a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).
61 2 Nisi . . . posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in nūntium mittit. Transl. 'unless reinforcements (he said)' etc.—
sibi: i.e. Iccius.
61 4 Chap. 7. Eō: 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax.—isdem ducibus ūsus: 'employing the same man (as) guides'; for the abl. see § 107. a; ducibus is an appositive (§ 58).
61 5 Numidās et Crētas: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. Crētas is a Greek form.
61 6 Baleārēs: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were famous slingers.—subsidiō oppidānis: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).
61 11 hostibus: 'from the enemy'; dative (§ 86).
61 12 potiundū: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling potiundū instead of potiendi.
61 15 morāti . . . dépopulāti . . . vicis . . . incēnsis: the first two past participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; incēnsis, however, could not be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass. and means 'having been burned.' To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs. had to be used.
61 18 quō: adv.; 'to which.'
61 20 omnibus cópiis: for the omission of cum see § 113. note.—ā milibus passuum minus dúobus: 'less than two miles off'; ā is used adverbially; milibus is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). Minus does not affect the construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line milibus is abl. after the comparative amplius. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.
61 24 Chap. 8. prīmō: 'at first.'
61 25 eximiam opīnionem virtūtis: 'their high reputation for valor'; virtūtis is an obj. gen. (see note on p. xlvi, l. 1). — proellō: abl. (§ 101).
61 26 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . audērent: indir. questions; lit. 'what they were able, what they dared.' The thought may be rendered 'the prowess of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.'—virtūte: see § 115.
62 1 locō . . . opportunō . . . idōneō: abl. abs. (§ 117. c).
62 4 tantum: correlative with quantum 'as much . . . as.' The rel. adjective quantum is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun quī. In this sentence the antecedent tantum is accusative of extent; the rel. quantum is the dir. obj. of occupāre.—adversus: 'in front.'—locī: part. gen. with quantum, but more conveniently translated with tantum, 'over as much ground.'
62 5 *ex utrāque parte*: 'on each side.'
62 6 *dēiectūs*: accusative plur. modified by *laterīs*: 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side').—*in fronte* etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.
62 7 *trānsversam fossam*: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.
62 8 *passuum quadringentōrum*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).
62 9 *extrēmās*: 'the ends of' (§ 125).—*tormenta*: see Introd. III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.
62 10 *quod ... poterant*: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'
62 14 *esset*: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. a) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of *ut ... possent* (§ 214).
62 16 *cōpiās ... ēductās īnstrūxērunt*: transl. 'led out and drew up.'
62 17 *Chap. 9*. Palūs erat: 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Miette brook. See battle plan, p. 63.
62 18 *Hanc (paludem) sī nostri trānsirent*: '(to see) whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between *sī*, 'if,' introducing a condition, and *sī*, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.
62 19 *ut ... adgrederentur*: a purpose clause depending upon *parātī* etc.
62 21 *contendēbātur*: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'
62 22 *nostrīs*: dative (§ 90).
62 27 *eō cōnsiliō*: 'with this intent.' — *ut ... expugnārent ... interscing-derent ... populārentur ... prohibērent*: subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō* (§ 183, third example).—*sī possent ... sī ... potuissent*: represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. b.
63 2 *ad bellum gerendum*: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. c and note, and § 224. b.
63 5 *Chap. 10*. *levis armātūrae*: see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.
63 6 *trādūcit*: with two accusatives (§ 95).
63 9 *cōnantēs*: with *reliquōs*.
63 10 *equitātū*: considered as means, and therefore no preposition.—*circumventōs interfēcērunt*: 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. c).
63 13 *spem ... fefellisse*: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').
63 14 *pugnandi causā*: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. b).
64 1 *ipsōs*: i.e. the Belgāe.
64 2 *cōnstituērunt* etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to
defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.

The two objects of constiutituunt are (1) the inf. clause optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti (of which reverti is the subj. and optimum esse the pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (ut) . . . convenirent. The omission of ut is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of domum see § 97.

64 4 intrōdūxissent: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind. by being made part of the purpose clause (ut) . . . convenirent (§ 214).

64 10 quod . . . cognōverant: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority (§ 188. a). The clause is in apposition with haec ratio.

64 13 His persuāderi . . . nōn poterat: 'these could not be persuaded' (lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the active are imper. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. a).— ut . . . morārentur neque . . . ferrent: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subjs. of poterat (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating the forces of the Belgæ.

64 16 Chap. 11. secundā vigiliā: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.

64 17 strepitū . . . tumultū: abs. of manner (§ 110).

64 19 ōrdine . . . imperiō: abs. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

64 20 cum . . . peteret . . . properāret: descriptive temporal clauses expressing cause (§ 195).

64 22 ut . . . vidērētur: subst. clause of result, obj. of fecerunt (§ 187. I, first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'

64 23 per: see § 104. note.— speculātōrēs: 'spies.' They obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' explorātōrēs, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

64 24 veritus: 'fearing.'—discēderent: indir. question (§ 201).

64 25 castrīs: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the relation as means rather than as place (§ 106).

64 26 ab explōrātōribus: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construction with per speculātōrēs, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the speculātōrēs directions, and used them as a 'means to an end,' hence the preposition per (§ 104. note); here the explōrātōrēs are 'voluntary agents,' hence ab with the abl.—qui . . . morārētur: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

64 27 Hīs: dative with praefācit (§ 84).

65 1 multa milia: see § 96.

65 2 cum: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.

65 3 ab extrēmō agmine: 'in the rear.'—quōs: the antecedent is ei understood, subj. of cōnsisterent and sustinērent.

65 4 priōrēs: sc. et, 'and those that were in the van.'—quod . . . vidērentur . . . continērentur: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).
65 8 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).
65 10 tantam ... quantum fuit diēī spatium: 'killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed' (lit. 'as great a number as the space of the day was'). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.
65 15 Chap. 12. priusquam ... reciprent: 'before the enemy should recover themselves' (§ 197. b).
65 17 in finēs Suessiōnum ... dúxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. "Divide and conquer" was a famous Roman proverb.
65 19 magnō itinere: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.
65 20 ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.
65 22 esse: supply id (oppidum) for subject.
65 23 paucis défendentibus: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117. d); 'though there were few defenders.' — expugnāre: 'to take' (by storm); cf. oppugnāre (l. 20), 'to attack.'
65 24 vineās: see Introd. III. 13.— quaeque: the antecedent of quae is ea understood, the obj. of comparāre.
65 27 aggere ... turribus: see Introd. III. 13.
66 1 magnitūdine ... celeritāte: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of permōtī.
66 4 ut cōnservārentur: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of petentibus (§ 183).
66 5 Chap. 13. obsidibus: in apposition with prīmīs and fīlīs.
66 8 Qui cum: 'and when they'; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.
66 10 maiōrēs nātū: 'the older men' (lit. 'greater in respect to birth'); nātū is abl. of respect (§ 115).
66 11 vōce significāre: 'show by the tones of their voices'; of course they could not speak Latin.
66 12 in eius fīdem ac potestātem venīre: 'placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands' (lit. 'came into his faith and power').
66 13 cum ... accessisset ... pōneret: 'when he had approached and was pitching his camp.' Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194. b).
66 15 passis manibus: 'with hands outstretched' (in supplication); passīs is from pandō.— suō mōre: 'according to their custom' (§ 111).
66 23 quantam ... intulissent: indir. question.
66 25 ut ... ütāris: a subst. clause, obj. of petunt (§ 183).
66 26 Quod: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. Qui, l. 8.
66 28 qua: indef. pronoun with bella. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.
67 1 Chap. 15. honóris Diviciáci . . . causā: 'out of respect for Diviciacus' (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').
67 2 receptūrum: sc. esse. The omission of esse is very common.
67 3 auctóritāte: abl. of description (§ 116).
67 4 multitūdine: abl. of respect (§ 115).
67 10 mercatóribus: dative (§ 88).—vini: part. gen. with nihil.
67 17 Chap. 16. eórum: i.e. of the Nervii.—tríduum: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).
67 18 nōn amplius milia: milia is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by amplius; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.
67 22 utī . . . experírentur: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).
67 24 quiqque: equals quiī plus gue, 'and those who.' The antecedent of qui is cōs understood, the obj. of coniecisse.
67 25 quō: rel. adv., equivalent to in quem referring to locum.
67 26 esset: this would be in the subjv. also in the dir. disc., being a descriptive rel. clause (§ 177).
68 3 únā: an adv. 'along (with him).'
68 4 quídam ex hīs: for abl. with ex instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.
68 5 eórum diērum cōnsuétūdine . . . perspectā: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{cōnsuétūdine} & \mid \text{perspectā} \\
\text{diērum} & \mid \text{itineris} \\
\text{eórum} & \mid \text{exercitās} \\
\end{array}
\]

Cōnsuétūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'
68 6 inter singulās legiōnēs: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.
68 8 negoti: part. gen. depending on quiquam. Cf. p. 67, l. 10.—cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.
68 10 hanc . . . quā: both refer to prīma legiō. — sarcinis: see Introd. III. 9. d, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 ut . . . nōn audērent: subst. clause of result, subj. of futūrum (esse) (§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 Adiuvābat: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact quod Nerviī . . . effecerant (§ 182, first example), and the obj. is consilium.

68 13 Nerviī etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. Nerviī, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the doers of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. Nerviī in mind, he finds first when the act was performed (antiquitus); then why it was done (cum . . . possent); next for what purpose (quō facilius . . . impedirent); then by what means (tenerīs arboribus . . . interiectis); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the act itself (effecerant ut . . . praebērent). — nihil possent: 'had no strength'; nihil is adverbial accusative (§ 99).

68 14 quicquid possunt etc.: cf. nihil (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 quō facilius . . . impedirent: a clause of purpose with a comparative (§ 176).

68 16 vēnissent: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause (§ 214).

68 17 in lātitūdinem: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briers and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 ut . . . praebērent: an obj. clause of result depending on effecerant (§ 187. I). — instar: an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 quō: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by posset in a clause of description (§ 177). Cf. quō, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

68 21 omitendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by sibi, a dative of agent (§ 87).

68 24 Chap. 18. aequālīter dēclīvis: 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 pari acclivitāte: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre downwar (dēclīvis) to the stream; then across the river up the ascent (acclivitāte) on the other side. — adversus huic et contrārius: 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 passūs . . . apertus: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for passūs see § 96. — infimus: see § 125. — ab superiōre parte: 'along the upper portion.'
69 2 silvestris: an adjective modifying collis.—ut nōn . . . posset: a neg. clause of result. What would nē posset express?
69 3 in apertō locō: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.
69 4 secundō: a preposition governing flūmen.
69 5 pedum . . . trium: see § 77. b.
69 6 Chap. 19. cópiis: see § 113. note.
69 7 aliter . . . dētulerant: 'was different from what the Belgae had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).
70 1 cōnsuētūdīne suā: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).—legiōnēs expeditās: see Introd. III. 11.
70 2 conlocārat: contracted from conlocāverat.
70 3 proximē cōnscriptae: 'most recently levied.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
70 7 reciperoent . . . facerent: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by identidem.
70 8 neque . . . audērēnt: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended.'—quem ad finem: translated as if it were ad finem ad quem.
70 9 cēdentēs: agrees with eōs, the obj. understood of însequī. The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.
70 10 opere dimēnsō: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.
70 13 quod tempus . . . convēnerat: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). Tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi . . . visa sunt. An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.
70 15 atque (ita ut) ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant: 'and just as they had determined to do.'
70 20 adversō colle: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).
70 22 Chap. 20. Caesāri: see § 87.—vēxillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.
70 23 prōpōnendum: sc. erat; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of sum must be supplied.
70 24 tubā: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.—ab opere: i.e. the work of fortification.
70 25 qui: the antecedent (eī) is the subj. understood of arcessendī (erant).—aggeris: 'material for a mound.'
70 26 signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. a).
72 1 difficultātibus . . . subsidiō: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.—scientia . . . ūsus: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are
in part. apposition with *duae rēs*, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause *quod ... vetuerat* below.

72 2 quid . . . oportēret: indir. question, obj. of *praescribere*.

72 4 quod . . . vetuerat: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 nihil iam: 'no longer'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§99).—*per sē*: 'on their own responsibility.'—*quae vidēbantur*: 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *administrābant*.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar's career, is referred to by Longfellow, in "The Courtship of Miles Standish," in the following lines:

Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 Chap. 21. *quam in partem*: equivalent to *in eam partem in quam* (§140).

72 11 decimam: this was Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. 1 ff.

72 12 uti . . . retinērent . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinērent: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*öratiōne cohortātus*).

72 14 quam quō: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. 'than the distance to which' (lit. 'than whither').

72 16 pugnantibus: sc. *suīs* or *militibus*, dative with *occurrīt* (§84).

72 18 ut . . . tempus dēfuerit: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning 'so,' 'such,' 'so great,' 'to such a degree,' etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are *tanta* and *tam* (§179. note).—*ad insignia accommodanda*: see §225. a; 'for fitting on the decorations' (of the helmets etc.). See Introd. III. 9. b., and the ill., p. 74.


72 20 Quam . . . cōnstitit: 'into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.' So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 Chap. 22. *magis ut . . . quam ut reī militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat*: 'rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.'
NOTES

72 25 *cum . . . resisterent . . . impeditētur*: see § 189.—*aliae alīa in parte*: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 3 *neque quid . . . prōvidērī (poterat)*: ‘neither could the necessities (lit. ‘what was necessary’) in each part be foreseen.’ — *quid . . . esset*: see § 201.

73 6 *ēventūs variī*: subj. of *sequēbantur*; modified by *fortūnae*.

73 7 Chap. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebates with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71.—*ut . . . cōnstiterant*: ‘from their position’ etc. (lit. ‘as they had taken their position’).

73 8 *aciē*: a genitive form.—*pilis ēmissīs*: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 *his*: i.e. the Atrebates; dative with *obvēnerat* (§ 84).

73 11 *cōnantēs*: sc. *ēōs* (§ 167), obj. of *insecūtī*; ‘while they were trying to cross.’

73 12 *Ipsi*: ‘they themselves.’

73 13 *prōgressī*: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 *nūdātīs*: ‘being exposed.’ The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing.—*cum . . . cōstititisset*: see § 189.

74 1 *intervālō*: abl. (§ 114).

74 2 *duce Boduōgnātō*: abl. abs.; ‘under the leadership of Boduognatus.’

74 4 *apertō latere*: ‘on the exposed flank’; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.


74 7 *ūnā*: adv.

74 8 *pulsōs*: sc. *esse*; subj. *quos*.—*dixeram*: ‘have said,’ p. 70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 *decumānā portā*: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill.: p. xxxv.

74 13 *praecipitēs*: adjective agreeing with *cālōnēs*, but with the force of an adv., ‘pell-mell,’ ‘in utter confusion’ (§ 126). Concerning *cālōnēs* see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 *quī* etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p. 70, ll. 1–4.—*clāmor*: the shouts of the men; *fremitus*, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 *oriēbātur*: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by *clāmor fremitusque* (§ 68).

74 16 *quōrum . . . virtūtis opinīō*: ‘whose reputation for valor’ (lit. ‘opinion of valor’); obj. gen. § 75, b).

75 1 *complēri . . . premī . . . tenēri . . . fugere*: indir. disc. after *vidissent*. These present tenses represent what they saw going on.
75 4 pulsōs superātōsque ... potitōs: sc. esse.
75 7 Ch. 25. Caesar: subj. of processit (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, 'the standard bearer having been killed' etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.
75 9 ubi: construe with vidit (§ 193). — signis: see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.
75 11 sibi ... impedimentō: 'hindered one another in fighting' (§ 89).
75 17 primipilō: in partial apposition with centuriōnibus. For the office see Introd. III. 6. e. Baculus was one of Cæsar’s best centurions.
75 22 ab novissimis: 'in the rear.' — désertō locō: 'deserting their post.'
75 25 in angustō: 'in a difficult situation,' or 'at a crisis.' — vidit: repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.
75 26 posset: see §177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.— scūtō ... militī dētrāctō: 'snatching a shield from a soldier.' For the dative militī cf. hostibus, p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the scūtum see Introd. III. 9. b.
75 29 possent: a purpose clause introduced by quō with a comparative (§ 176).
76 2 etiam ... rēbus: 'even in his own extreme peril.'
76 5 Ch. 26. consisterat: from consistō; 'had taken its position.'
76 6 monuit: with two accusatives, tribūnōs and the subst. clause ut ... coniungere ... inferrent (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.
76 7 conversa etc.: 'should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions') (lit. 'bear turned standards against').
76 8 alius aliī etc.: 'one was helping another'; see § 144. d. i.
76 11 legiōnum duārum: i.e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.
76 13 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp.
76 14 Labiēnus: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.
76 16 Qui: i.e. the soldiers of legion X. How should Qui cum be translated?
76 17 quō ... esset quantōque ... versārētur: indir. questions after cognōsisset; 'in what condition matters stood' etc.
76 19 nihil ... fecērunt: 'left nothing undone in the way of speed' (lit. 'made nothing of remainder'); reliquiē is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).
76 21 Ch. 27. qui: the antecedent is eī understood, in partial apposition with nostrī. — prōcubuissent: see § 177.
76 22 redintegrārent: result, depending on tanta (§ 179. note), as are also occurrarent (l. 23) and praeferrent (l. 25).

77 2 ut . . . insisterent . . . pugnārent . . . conicerent . . . remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word tantam. Cf. p. 76, l. 20. — iacentibus insisterent: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 bis: refers to proximī; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 qui: the antecedent is ēt understood, subj. of conicerent and remitterent. — ut ex tumulō: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pila . . . remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut . . . dēbēret: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men' etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men' etc.). The subj. of dēbēret is the inf. clause hominēs . . . ausōs esse (§ 216. b). The ut clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the infs. trānsire, ascendere, and subīre; transl. quae 'deeds which.' Facilia is pred. adjective.—The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.


77 13 cum . . . arbitrārentur: a causal clause (§ 189). — impeditum (esse) etc.: 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victīs: dative (§ 85).

77 18 qui . . . possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.


77 23 Chap. 29. supra: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduatuci were said to be on the way to reënforce the Nervii.—diximus: tense as in English; contrast dixerāmus, l. 12. — cum . . . venīrent: 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.—cum . . . habēret: a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. b). For the case used after amplius see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocābant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. a).

78 6 impedimentīs: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custōdiām: 'a guard' for booty etc.—praesidium: 'a garrison' to hold the place.
THE GALIC WAR — BOOK II

78 9 ūnā: adv.; 'with it.' — Hī: i.e. the six thousand. — eōrum: i.e. the Cimbrī and Teutōns.— obītum: 'destruction.' The Teutōns were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquae Sextiāe, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulhus, the next year, at Vercellae.

78 10 cum aliās ... aliās ... dēfenderent: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 Chāp. 30. parvulīque proelīs: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 oppidō: abl. of means, hence the omission of in; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 vineis ... aggere ... turrim: see Introd. III. 12.

78 18 irridēre ... inceptāre: historical infinitives (§ 218).— quod ... instituerētur: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said) etc.; see § 188. b.

78 19 Quibusnam ... cōnfidunt: -nam thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to lift on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: "Pray, by what strength of hand do you — especially being such puny little fellows — expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?"

79 1 Chāp. 31. qui ... possītis: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

79 8 trādītis armīs: abl. abs. (§ 117. a).— sī ... dēdūcāmūr: a future less probable condition (§ 199. II. b).

79 9 quamvis: from the pronoun quīvīs.

80 1 Chāp. 32. cōnsuētūdine ... meritō: see § 111.

80 3 ariēs: see Introd. III. 12. b and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 nisi armīs trādītis: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered').— in: 'in the case of.'

80 5 nē ... inferant: a subst. clause, obj. of imperābō. The indir. obj. is ēnīmīs (§ 83).— quam: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying iniūriam.

80 7 facere: sc. sē as subj. We should expect factūrōs (esse).

80 8 ut prope ... adaequārent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 eō diē pāce sunt ūsi: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of pāce see § 107. a.

80 14 Chāp. 33. quam: cf. l. 5.

80 16 ante initō ... cōnsiliō: abl. (§ 111); ante is an adv. modifying initō.
NOTES

80 20 quā: 'where.'
80 23 ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watchtower.
80 24 concursum est, pugnātum ... est: impers. use of the pass.
80 25 ita acriter ... ut: correlatives; 'as bravely as.'
80 26 quī ... iacerent: see § 177.
80 27 pugnāri dēbuit: impers.; transl. as if virīs (l. 25) were the subj., 'as brave men ought to fight.' — in únā virtūte: 'in valor alone.'
81 1 ad: adv.; 'about.'
81 3 sectiōnem ... universam: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions were sold as slaves.
81 5 milium: pred. gen. after esse understood (§ 77. a; see also § 116. a. 1).
82 Chap. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of this chapter as it appears on page 81.
82 3 incolerent: subjv. by attraction (§ 214).
82 4 quī ... pollicērentur: a rel. clause of purpose.— datūrās: takes the f. gender from nātiōnibus.
82 5 in Italiam Illyricumque: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the winter.
82 6 in Carnutēs: to be taken with dēductīs, l. 9.
82 10 supplicātiō: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates.— quod: the antecedent is the whole idea in the preceding clause.

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgæ.

83 1 Chap. 1. Cum in Italiam proficiscerētur: connected in thought with in Italiam profectus est, p. 82, l. 9.— Galbam: this officer later became one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.
83 6 portōriīs: these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing, and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.
83 8 arbitrārētur: subjv. of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b).— utī ... conlocāret: a subst. clause, obj. of permītī.
83 10 secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs etc.: expand this series of abls. abs. into clauses; cf. § 117, second paragraph.
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK III

83 16 hic: refers to vīcus.
83 18 vacuam: pred. adjective after relictam.—ab his: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.
84 6 Chap. 2. ut ... caperent: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with id, 'it.'
84 8 neque eam plēnissimam: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.
84 11 cum ipsī ... dēcurrerent: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'
85 1 Accedebat quod: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of accedebat is the clause quod ... dolēbant (§ 182). A subst. clause with ut and the subjv. might have been used (§ 187. II).
85 2 abstrāctōs: sc. esse.
85 3 Rōmānōs ... adiungere: indir. disc. after sibi persuāsum habēbant, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With persuāsum habēbant cf. coāctum habēbat, p. 22, l. 3; compertum habeō, p. 49, l. 14; habēmus explōrāta, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.
85 7 Chap. 3. perfectae: agrees with the nearer subj., mūnītiōnēs, but belongs to opus as well.
85 8 esset provīsum: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'
85 9 timendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. a). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'
85 14 venīrī: depends on posset, understood from possent, l. 15. Posset is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'
85 15 nōn nūllae ... sententiae: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.
85 16 ut ... contenderent: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with eīus modī.
85 18 Maiōrī ... placuit: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority').—tamen: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other sententiae.
85 20 Chap. 4. ut ... dārētur: a result clause.
85 22 dēcurrere, conicere, prōpugnāre, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superārī: historical infinitives (§ 218); as usual, describing the situation.
85 23 gaesaque: Gallic javelins of unknown form.
85 26 eō: adv.
85 27 quod ... excēdēbant ... succēdēbant: subst. clauses explaining hoc (§ 182).
86 1 nōn modo ... sed nē ... quidem: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.
NOTES

We should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.
86 3 suí recipiendī: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. c).
86 4 CHAP. 5. Cum ... pugnārētur: 'when the fight had been going on.'
86 8 Baculus: see p. 75, ll. 17-18 and note.
86 11 virtūtis: gen. of description.
86 12 ünam esse spem salūtis: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc.—sī ... experīrentur: a conditional clause in apposition with spem. Note that docent, a historical present ind. (§ 153. a), allows secondary sequence, experīrentur (§ 164).—extrēmum auxilium: 'the last resource.'
86 14 intermitterent, exciperent, reficerent, ērumperent, pōnerent: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following certiōrēs facit in the sense of 'instructs.'
86 15 tēla missa exciperent: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.
86 16 post: adv.
86 18 CHAP. 6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' Faciunt and the other presents that follow are historical.
86 19 suī conligendī: see § 224. c; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.
86 21 undique circumventōs interficiunt: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'
86 24 tertiā parte interfectā: abl. abs.; plūs does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).
86 26 armīs: abl. of separation.—exūtīs: belongs with cōpiēs. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.
87 2 aliō ... meminerat, aliīs ... viderat: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) ... but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B. C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Cæsar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.
87 12 CHAP. 7. Crassus: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.
87 13 mare: accusative after proximus; cf. p. 56, l. 11.
87 15 complūrēs: modifies cīvitātēs.
87 17 Coriosolitas: accusative plur. of Coriosolītēs.
87 19 CHAP. 8. Huius ... cīvitātis: i.e. of the Veneti.
87 21 in Britanniam ... cōnṣuērunt: i.e. for the purposes of trade.—cōnṣuērunt: contracted from cōnṣuēvērunt, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK III

87 22 scientiā . . . üsū: abls. of respect (§ 115).
88 1 vectīgāles: adjunct accusative with omnēs (§ 94).
88 2 se: subj. of recuperātūrōs (esse); suōs agrees with obsidēs.
88 5 subita . . . repentina: 'sudden . . . unexpected.'
88 10 quam . . . perferre: 'than to endure,' quam following the com-
parative idea in mālint.
88 13 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending
on the message implied in lēgātīōnem . . . mittunt. The dir. disc. would be
si vīs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nōbīs remitte (§ 205).
88 14 Chap. 9. Caesar: observe again how Cæsar has stated the difficulties
and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.
88 15 aberat longius: 'was too far off'; i.e. to take immediate command
in person.—nāvēs . . . longās: 'war galleys'; see Introd. III. 14. a, and the
illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no
oars.—It will be remembered that Cæsar, at the close of the previous year
(57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, ll. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C.,
before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs,
Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were
to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and Cæsar's term as governor of Gaul
was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.).
Plans were also made to increase Cæsar's legions from eight to ten, and to pro-
vide pay for them from the public treasury. Cæsar seems thus to have been
planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.
88 21 quantum . . . admisissent: transl. freely, 'how great a crime they
had committed' (lit. 'how great a crime they had brought upon themselves').
88 22 lēgātōs . . . retentōs: explanatory of facinus.—quod nōmen:
transl. as if the order were nōmen quod, with nōmen in apposition with lēgātōs,
and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.
88 25 hōc maiōre spē: 'their hope being greater on this account.'
89 2 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance.
89 4 diūtius: 'very long' (lit. 'longer,' i.e. than they desired); see § 145.
89 5 ut . . . acciderent: 'although everything should turn out contrary to
their expectations' (§ 192).
89 6 posse and the following infinitives depend on perspiciēbant (l. 10).
89 7 gestūri essent: an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir.
disc.
89 8 longē aliam . . . atque: 'very different . . . from.'
89 9 conclūsō: i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were
familiar.
89 12 ubi . . . cōnstābat: 'where it was evident that Cæsar would first
wage war.'
NOTES

89 13 Sociōs: pred. accusative with Osismōs etc.
89 18 CHAP. 10. multa: in part. apposition with this word are the nouns iniūria, rebellio, defectio, coniūrātiō, and the neg. purpose clause nē... arbitrárentur. This relation may be represented as follows:

iniūria
rebellio
multa

defectio
coniūrātiō
nē... arbitrárentur

89 21 negligēctā: i.e. left unpunished.
89 22 sibi idem licēre: ‘that the same opportunity was open to them’ (lit. ‘the same thing was permitted to them’).
89 25 odisse: ‘hate’; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§ 46).—priusquam...cōnsiprārent: see § 197. b.
90 3 CHAP. 11. adeat...contineat...prohibeat: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205).
90 4 arcessitī(esse): depends upon dicēbantur and agrees with its subj. in case; ‘were said to have been invited.’
90 10 distinendum cūret: cf. pontem faciendum cūrat, p. 20, l. 11 and note; cūret is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.
90 16 CHAP. 12. eius modi...ut...habērent: ‘of such a sort that they had’ etc. (§ 179).
90 17 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.
90 18 cum...incitāvisset: ‘when the tide had risen.’
90 20 minuente: ‘at the ebb’; intransitive.
90 21 utrāque rē: ‘in either case’ (lit. ‘by each circumstance’), i.e. by land or by sea.
90 23 his...adaequātis: ‘when these (i.e. aggere ac mōlibus) were brought level with the walls of the town.’ The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the agger in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the agger see Introd. III. 13. b.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.
91 1 cuius rēi: i.e. nāvēs taken collectively.
91 3 Haec...faciēbant: ‘this they continued to do’; past descr. of repeated action (§ 154. c). There is the same force in deportābant and recipiēbant above.
91 4 partem: accusative of duration of time (§ 96).
91 5 summa: with difficulītās.—vāstō . . . mari etc.: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 Chap. 13. Namque: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; ' (but the Veneti had less trouble) for.'—ipsōrum: 'their own.'

91 9 aliquantō: abl. of measure of difference.—quam nostrārum nāvium: 'than (those) of our ships.'

91 10 quō facilius . . . possent: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 quamvis: from quīvīs.

91 14 ābl. etc.: 'the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man's) thumb.'

91 15 crassitūdōine: abl. of description.—prō: 'instead of.'

91 16 pellēs: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (pellēs) or tanned (alūtāc).

91 20 tanta onera nāvium: 'ships of so great weight.'

91 22 nostrae classi: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. 'the encounter of our fleet with' etc.

91 23 ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum: 'only in swiftness and the power of the oars'; abl. of respect.—reliqua: '(but) everything else.'

91 25 nostrae: sc. nāvēs.—rōstrō: abl. of means; for a description of the rōstrum see Introd. III. 14. a.

91 27 cōpulis: 'grappling hooks.'

91 28 Accēdēbat ut: 'there was this additional advantage, that,' followed by the subst. result clauses ut . . . fērent . . . cōnsisterent . . . timērent.—sē ventō dedissent: 'ran before the wind.'

92 1 cōnsisterent: 'rode at anchor.'

92 2 nihil: see § 99.

92 3 nāvibus: see § 87.

92 6 Chap. 14. neque eis nocēri posse: 'nor could they be harmed'; only the imper. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. a, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 prīnum . . . visa est: 'as soon as it was seen.'

92 10 neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnstābat quid agerent: 'and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.'

92 14 turribus autem excitātīs: the word tamen following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); 'though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless' etc.

93 1 ex barbarīs nāvibus: 'of (lit. 'from') the barbarians' ships.'

93 4 magnō ūsui: 'of great service'; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint of possible defeat.—fālces: in apposition with rēs.
NOTES

93 6 mūralium falcium: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Introd. III. 13. b). The gen. limits fōrmae understood, dative after absimilī (§ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' Fōrma is abl. of description.—His...praerumpēbantur: 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 adducti erant...praerumpēbantur: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 Gallicis nāvibus: dative of reference (§ 85).

93 13 in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercītūs: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cæsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 paulō fortius: 'a little braver (than usual).'</n
93 17 CHAP. 15. cum...circumsteterant...contendēbant: the same use of tenses as in ll. 7-8, to express repeated action in past time.—bīnae ac ternaes: distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24 Quae...rēs: i.e. the sudden calm.—ad negotium cōnfiiciendum: 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 ad terram pervēnerint: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163. c.—cum...pugnārētur: 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 hōrā fērē quārtā: about 10 A.M.

94 2 CHAP. 16. cum...tum: 'not only...but also.'

94 4 nāvium quod: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 neque quō sē recipērent...défenderent habēbant: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive (§ 177). Cf. quō...tolerārent, p. 32, l. 15.

94 8 ēō gravius...quō: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely...that.'—vindicandum (esse): impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 sub corōnā vēndidit: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cæsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 CHAP. 17. Q. Titūrius Sabinus...in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit: see p. 90, ll. 8-11.

95 7 nōlēbant: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to senātū, a collective noun (§ 65. a).
95 9 perditórum: 'desperate.'
95 12 idóneō... locō: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'
95 13 cum... cónsédisset: concessive.
95 15 hostibus etc.: equivalent to in contemptiónem... hostium; dative of reference.
95 19 eō absentē: i.e. Cæsar.
95 21 lēgātō: dative of agent with dīmicandum (esse).
95 25 Chap. 18. quīd fieri velit ēdocet: 'he tells him what he wants done.'
96 1 prō perfugā: 'in the character of a deserter.'
96 3 neque longius abesse quīn proxímā nocte: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'
96 7 īri: impers., depending on oportēre.
96 8 superiōrum diērum: depends on Sabīnī cunctātiō taken together. In apposition with rēs are cunctātiō, cōnfīrmātiō, inopia, spēs, and the clause quod... crēdunt.
96 12 nōn prius... quam: 'not... until.'
96 13 sit concessum: see § 197. b.
96 15 ut explōrātā victōriā: 'as if victory were already assured.' — quibus... compleant: a rel. clause of purpose.
96 18 Chap. 19. passūs mille: accusative of extent of space. Mille is here an indeclinable adjective.
96 19 quām minimum spatiū: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of dāretur.
96 20 exānimātique pervēnērunt: 'and they arrived all tired out.'
96 26 Quōs: a connecting rel. equivalent to eōs and obj. of cōnsecūti (§ 143).
97 2 equītēs: nominative. — paucōs: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word. — quī... ēvaserant: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'
97 6 ut: correlative with sic. — ad bella suscipienda etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.
97 9 Chap. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 b.c., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous. — P. Crassus: see p. 90, ll. 5-8.
97 12 Praecōnīnus... Mānlius: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 b.c.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82-72 b.c.).
97 17 Galliae prōvinciae: 'of the province of Gaul.'
97 18 his regiōnibus: dative after finitimae, which agrees with cīvitātēs. — nōminātīm ēvocātīs: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'
98 1 Chap. 21. superiōribus victōriīs: see § 107. b.
98 3 quid... posseōnt: indir. question, subj. of perspicē. — sine imperātōrē... adulēscentulō duce: an imperātor is the commander in chief of an army; dux refers to any person holding a command.
98 9 cuniculis: 'mines' (lit. 'rabbits'), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.
98 11 diligentiā: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy's mines by countermines.
98 14 faciunt: 'they do (so).'
98 18 Chap. 22. commodis: with fruantur (§ 107. a). The clause is in apposition with condiciō.
98 19 quōrum . . . amicitiae: 'to whose friendship.'
98 22 quī . . . recūsāret: a rel. clause of description.
98 23 cum his: repeated from cum . . . dēvōtīs on account of the long parenthesis; 'with these (I say).'
99 3 Chap. 23. paucis diēbus . . . erat: 'within only a few days after he had arrived there' (lit. 'within which it had been come there').
99 5 quōqueversus: 'in every direction.'
99 7 citeriōris Hispāniae: pred. gen. This was northern Spain.—fīnitimae Aquitāniae: 'bordering on Aquitania'; fīnitimae is a pred. adjective after quae sunt.
99 11 Q. Sertōriō: see note on p. 97, l. 12.
99 12 cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.
99 15 Quod: explained by the four appositive clauses suās cōpiās . . . augērī.
99 19 nōn . . . dēcertāret: 'he thought a battle should not be delayed.' What is the literal translation?
99 23 Chap. 24. duplicī: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (triplēx aciēs).
99 24 in medium aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.—quid . . . cōnsili: 'what plan' (lit. 'what of plan'); part. gen.
100 1 victōriā: abl. with potīrī (§ 107. a).
100 2 sēsē recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.
100 3 īnfirmiōrēs animō: 'dispirited'; for the case of animō see § 115.
100 5 prōductis cōpiās: concessive; 'although' etc. (§ 117. d).
100 6 opiniōne timōris: 'the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.'
100 8 exspectāri . . . quin . . . īrētur: freely, 'that they should go to the camp without further delay.'
ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the "Commentaries" of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

Chap. 25. quibus: abl. with confidēbat (§ 107. b).—lapidibus...comportandis: 'by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an agger.' The gerundives express means.

opiniōnem pugnantium: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

ex locō etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

ab decumānā portā: i.e. 'in the rear,' where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

omnium oculis...intentīs: 'while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.'

prius...cōnstitērunt...quam...possēt: equivalent to cōnstitērunt priusquam possēt (§ 197. b).

quod plērumque...cōnsuēvit: '(a thing) which usually happens.'

The antecedent of quod is the idea contained in redintegrātīs vīribus. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

per: 'over.'

quae: accusative plur., subj. of convēnisse. It takes its gender from the antecedent milium.

tempore: cf. quibus, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. b.

qui...essent...mīsissent: subjv. clauses of description.

arbitrātus: 'thinking'; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. veritus, p. 64, l. 24.

aliā...ac: 'other...than' or 'different...from.'

continentēs: 'continuous': i.e. far-stretching.

eō: 'thither'; i.e. to the silvās and palūdēs.

deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

conversam: 'fronting'; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy.—prō vāllō: 'as a palisade,'

cōnfectō: 'cleared' (of timber); lit. 'finished.'

tenērentur: 'were being seized.'

eius modi...uti...intermitterētur: 'such that the work was necessarily interrupted.'

sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.
In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56–55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tencteri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Cæsar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. 1. Pompēiō . . . Crassō: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office (§ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 quō: adv., equivalent to in quod.

103 11 Hī . . . illī: 'the latter . . . the former' (§ 134. a). — annō post: 'the following year.' For the case of annō see § 114.

103 12 ratiō: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); āsus, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).

103 13 privātī: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.

103 15 frūmentō: abl. of means. — maximam partem: see § 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'

103 17 quae rēs: i.e. the mode of living just described. Rēs is subj. of alīt and efficit.

103 18 nūllō officiō . . . adsuēfactī: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'; see § 106). The clause quod . . . faciunt is parenthetical.

104 2 locīs frigidissimīs: 'even in their extreme climate' (§ 117. d). — neque: correlative with et, 1. 4.

104 3 vestītūs: part. gen. with quicquam.

104 6 CHAP. 2. eō ut . . . habeant: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.

104 8 quam quō . . . dēsiderent: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. (§ 188. b).

104 15 impēnsō . . . pretiō: 'at high cost.'

104 17 importātīs nōn ūtuntur: 'do not import for use.'

104 22 labōrīs: pred. gen. of description (§ 77. a).

104 27 mōribus: abl. of accordance.

104 29 quamvis pauci: 'however few.'

105 1 Vinum omnīnō . . . importārī nōn patiuntur: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'
105 4 Chap. 3. Publicē: 'as a community.'
105 7 ūnā . . . Suēbis: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'
105 9 ut est captus Germānōrum: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'
105 10 paulō . . . hūmānīōrēs: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i.e. Germans).
105 13 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen (§ 192. note).
105 15 vectīgālēs sībi fēcērunt: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'
105 23 Chap. 4. trāns flūmen: i.e. on the east side; cis Rhēnum (l. 24), the west side.

106 1 Illī: i.e. the Germānī.
106 4 viam: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).
106 5 cōnfectō: with itinere.
106 11 partem: accusative of duration of time.
106 14 Chap. 5. veritus: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.
106 15 nihil . . . committendum (esse): 'no confidence should be placed in them.'
106 16 Est . . . cōnsuētūdinis: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with hoc.
106 17 etiam invītōs: 'even though they are unwilling.'
106 21 rēbus atque auditiōnibus: 'facts and rumors.'
106 22 quōrum eōs . . . paenitēre: see § 81. b.—in vēstigiō: 'on the spot.'
106 23 plērique: i.e. the viātōrēs and mercātōrēs. — ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (eōrum).
106 25 Chap. 6. graviōri bellō: 'too serious a war' (§ 122).
106 26 cōnsuērat: contracted from cōnsuēverat. — ad exercitum: in winter quarters among the Aulerci and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.
106 27 ea . . . facta (esse): ea is explained by the inf. clauses missās (esse) lēgātiōnēs and invitātōsque (esse) eōs.
107 2 omnia . . . fore parāta: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in invitātōs; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'
107 8 equitātū imperātō: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of imperō here.
107 10 Chap. 7. equitibus dēlēctīs: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.
107 16 quicumque: the antecedent is eis understood as indir. obj. of resister.

107 17 Haec tamen dicere: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply se as the subj. of dicere and the following infs.

107 19 eis: i.e. to the Romans.—attribuunt: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).

107 20 eōs: i.e. agrō

107 21 concēdere: 'yield,' as inferior.

107 22 reliquum etc.: 'there was no one else on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of reliquum; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.

107 23 possint: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).

107 24 Chap. 8. quae visum est: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).'

Cæsar gives us only the last part of his speech, but we may imagine that it was after the fashion of his words to Ariovistus (Book I, chap. 43).

107 26 qui . . . potuerint: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise qui . . . possint, l. 28.

108 2 quōrum sint etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'

108 6 Chap. 9. post diem tertium: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227.g).

108 7 propius se: 'nearer them,' se being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.

108 10 trāns: i.e. westward.

108 13 Chap. 10. Vosegō: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.

108 14 parte . . . receptā: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth.

See the map.

108 20 multis . . . effectīs: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.

108 26 Chap. 11. ut erat cōnstitūtum: 'as had been arranged.'

109 2 praemitteret: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'

109 3 sibique ut potestātem faceret: 'give them an opportunity.'

109 4 quōrum si . . . fēcisset: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; fēcisset represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).

109 5 condiciōne: abl. with āsūrōs (esse); see § 107. a.

109 7 daret: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).

109 8 eōdem illō pertinēre: 'tended the same way'; eōdem and illō are advs.—ut . . . reverterentur: a purpose clause explaining eōdem illō.

109 14 qui nūntiārent: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of qui
is the omitted obj. of mittit.—nē . . . lacesserent . . . sustinērent: commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).

109 16 accessisset: see § 198. III. b.

109 18 CHAP. 12. amplius: as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).

109 22 indūtīs: dative of purpose.

109 23 resistentibus: sc. nostrīs, hīs being the indir. obj.

109 24 subfossis etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'

109 26 ut . . . vēnissent: note that dēsisterent is subjv. of result with ut, and that vēnissent depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with prius . . . quam would be in the ind. (§ 197. a).

110 3 genere: see § 102.

110 6 quoad: see § 198. II; compare this use of quoad with that on p. 109, l. 15.

110 11 CHAP. 13. ab eīs quī . . . intulissent: 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.

110 13 dūm . . . augērentur: see § 198. III. b.

110 14 dēmentiae: descriptive gen. in the pred. after esse (§ 77. a); the subj. is exspectāre. Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'

110 15 quantum . . . auctōritātīs: 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for auctōritātīs see § 76. a.

110 17 quibus: i.e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of dandum (esse).

110 19 nē quem . . . praetermitteret: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with cōnsiliō. Quem is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'

110 20 quod . . . vēnērum: explanatory of rēs.

110 23 simul . . . simul: 'partly . . . partly.'—purgandī sui causā: 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. c, 225. b).—quod . . . commi-sissent: see § 188. b.

110 25 ut . . . impetrārent: 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'

110 26 Quōs . . . oblātōs (esse) gāvisus: 'delighted that they were put in his power'; gāvisus is from gaudeō.


111 6 et . . . et: correlative; celeritāte and discessūs explain omnibus rēbus.

111 7 perturbantur, cōpiāsne . . . an . . . an . . . praestāret: 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. b. 1).

111 9 Quōrum timor cum: equivalent to cum timor ēorum (§ 143).

111 11 quī: the antecedent is the subj. understood of restitērunt.

111 16 ad quōs cōnsectandōs: 'to hunt them down.' This action of Cāsar's seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for
Cæsar's victory, Cato, Cæsar's inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Cæsar's conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 CHAP. 15. Germānī etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 23 ad ūnum: 'to a man.'
111 27 veritī: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.
111 28 libertātem: '(this) privilege.'
112 3 CHAP. 16. iūstissima: 'the most important.'
112 7 Accessit . . . quod . . . recēperat . . . coniünxerat: the quod clause is the subj. of accessit. Transl. 'a further reason was' etc. (lit. 'it was added that'). A subst. clause with ut often follows accēdō.
112 8 quam . . . trānsīsse: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.
112 13 dēderent: a subst. clause without ut after postulārent.
112 15 sui . . . imperī: pred. gen. after esse; 'under his power' (§ 73. a).
112 17 Ubīi autem: 'moreover the Ubīi' etc. This introduces the third of Cæsar's reasons (multīs dē causās, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by ulla fuit iūstissima (l. 2), the second by Accessit etiam quod (l. 7).
112 20 premerentur: see § 188. b.
112 21 id sibi . . . satis futūrum (esse): '(saying that) that would be enough for them.'

113 3 CHAP. 17. neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātīs etc.: 'and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people'; for dignitātīs see § 77. a.

114 3 Ratiōnem: 'plan.' A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Cæsar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—bina: 'in pairs.'

114 4 dimēnsa ad altitūdinem: 'measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.'
114 5 pedum duōrum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.
114 7 non sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendicularum: 'not perpendicularly, like a pile' (lit. 'in the fashion of a pile').
114 8 ut . . . prōcumberent: 'so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.'
114 10 ab inferiōre parte: 'downstream.' — contrā ... conversa: 'slanting against'; conversa agrees with duo (tigna).

114 11 Haec utraque ... distinēbantur: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum ... distābat), with a pair of clamps at each end.'

114 12 bipedālibus trabibus: compare with pedum duōrum, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.

114 14 quibus (tignis) ... revinctis: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.

114 15 rērum: 'structure.'

114 16 quō maior ... hōc artius: 'the greater ... the more closely'; abls. of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping tigna from above or below.

114 17 Haec ... contextēbantur: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'

114 19 sublicae ... agēbantur: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).

114 20 prō ariete subjectae: 'serving as a buttress.'

114 21 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. These were probably independent of the bridge.

114 24 neu ... nocērent: 'and that they (trunci etc.) might not harm the bridge.'


115 4 hortantibus eis quōs: 'at the instigation of those whom.'

115 10 Chap. 19. premerentur: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

115 13 utī ... dēmigrārent ... dēpōnerent ... convenīrent: obj. clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase nūntiōs ... dīmīsisse, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.

115 15 hunc etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'

115 19 ut ... iniceret ... ulciscerētur ... līberāret: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with rēbus (§ 183, third example).

115 22 satis ... prōfectum (esse): 'enough had been done.'


116 1 Chap. 20. Caesar's brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. Caesar was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.
NOTES

116 2 ad septentriônês: 'toward the north'; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.
116 4 bellîs: abl. of time (§ 119). — inde: i.e. from Britain.
116 6 sî . . . cognôvisset: a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from the fut. perf. ind. ( §§ 208, 209, note, 210). The clauses are subs. of fore.
116 9 ills: adv.
116 12 quanta . . . poterat: the indir. questions are objs. of reperire.
116 15 qui: with portâs, 'what harbors.'
116 18 CHAP. 21. nàvî longâ: see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.
116 23 quam . . . classem: lit. 'what fleet he had built'; transl. as if the order were classem quam fecerat. For the attraction of the antecedent into the rel. clause see § 140.
116 27 quî polliceantur: a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres. participle.
117 6 magnî: gen. of indef. value (§ 78).
117 7 adeat: a subst. clause without īt, obj. of imperat.
117 9 quantum: sc. tantum as the antecedent word; 'so far as opportunity could be given to him' etc.
117 10 quî . . . audîret: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).
117 14 CHAP. 22. superiórís temporís: 'of the season before'; see Book III, chap. 28.
118 1 cónsuétûdinis: see § 80.
118 2 fécissent: the reason is given on the authority of the légâti, hence the verb is in the subjv.
118 6 hâs . . . antepônendâs: 'that occupation about these trifling matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.'
118 8 imperat: 'demands,' with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.
118 9 Nâvibus . . . onerâriîs: see Introd. III. 14. b, and the ill., p. 117.— quot: sc. tot as the antecedent; '(as many) as he thought' etc.
118 10 quod: the antecedent is id understood, the obj. of distribuit; 'what galleys he had besides' (lit. 'what of galleys,' part. gen.).
118 13 â: adv., 'away,' 'off.'— tênebantur quô minus: 'were detained from'; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).
118 16 in Menapiós . . . in eós pâgos: with dúcendum, which agrees with exercitum, obj. of dedit. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. d).
118 20 CHAP. 23. nactus: from nancîscor.
118 21 tempestâtem: 'weather.'— tertîâ vigiliâ: probably soon after midnight.— solvit: 'cast off' the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor.— ulteriörer portum: the port eight miles away (l. 13). See the map.
118 23 hôrâ . . . quârtâ: about 10 A.M. The distance across is about thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.
288  THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK IV

118 26 montibus angustē etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 dum . . . convenirent: when is dum, 'until,' followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. a.

119 5 Volusēnō: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8.—monuitque . . . administrārentur: 'and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. 'at the nod and at the time') as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion' (lit. 'as things which have' etc.). The obj. of monuit is the subst. clause (ut) . . . administrārentur.

119 6 postulārent: see § 214.

119 7 habērent: see § 190.

119 9 His dimissēs etc.: the first et connects dimissēs and nactus, the second ventum and aestum. Why are dimissēs and nactus not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

120 2 progressus: toward the north.

120 3 ēgreādi: the inf. is common after prohibēō instead of the subjv. with ne, quīn, or quō minus (§ 185. a).

120 5 constitūi: 'to ride,' 'to be anchored.'

120 6 militibus: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics desiliendum . . . consistendum . . . pugnandum erat; pressēs modifies militibus, 'weighted as they were.'

120 9 cum illī etc.: 'while they' (the Britons) etc.; a cum clause of description.

121 1 generis: see § 80.

121 2 pedestribus: 'on land,' where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 Chap. 25. nāvēs longās: subj. of removērī, incitārī, and constitūī; the whole clause is the obj. of iussit (§ 183. note).

121 5 barbarīs inūsitātor: 'more unfamiliar to the barbarians,' i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 indie: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 tormentīs: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 quiē: the antecedent is the subj. understood of inquit. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15.—aquilam: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 obtestātus etc.: 'appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.'
Notes

121 23 ego certē: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.

121 26 inter sē: 'one another.'—nē . . . admitterētur: a subst. clause, obj. of cohortātī.

121 29 adpropinquāvērunt: the subj. is mīlitēs implied.

122 1 Chap. 26. tamen: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.

122 3 alius aliā ex nāvī: see § 144. a. i. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'

122 4 signis: dative, depending on occurrerat (§ 84).

122 5 ubi . . . conspexerant: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by cum meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).

122 6 singulārēs: 'scattered soldiers.'

122 8 laterē apertō: see p. 121, l. 8.

122 10 speculātōria nāvīgia: swift, light boats for reconnoissance.—quōs: the antecedent is hīs, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.

122 11 simul (atque): 'as soon as' (§ 193).

122 13 longius: 'very far.'

122 14 equītēs: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.

122 15 fortūnam: Cæsar's belief in fortūna was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.

122 20 Chap. 27. Commiūs: cf. p. 117, l. 3.

122 22 ōrātōris modō: 'in the character of an envoy.'

122 24 remisērunt: sc. eum, i.e. Commiūm.

122 26 ignōscerētur: impers. (§ 83. a).

122 27 cum . . . petiissent: concessive.

123 6 Chap. 28. post diem quārtum: 'three days after,' according to our reckoning (§ 227. g).—quam: after the comparative idea implied in post.

123 11 aliae . . . aliae: 'some . . . others.'

123 13 propius: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.

123 14 tamen: i.e. though Britain was so near.—ancoris iactis: concessive; 'since they, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'

123 15 adversā nocte: 'in the face of the darkness.'—in altum prōvec-tae: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').

123 17 Chap. 29. ut esset: a result clause, subj. of accidit (§ 187. II).—qui diēs: why does diēs stand in the rel. clause?

123 18 aestūs maximōs: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

123 20 nāvēs: obj. of complēbat.

123 25 id quod: id is in apposition with the clause magna . . . facta est.
THE GALlic WAr — BOOK IV

123 27 quibus . . . possent: a result clause; quibus = ut eis.
124 1 quod . . . cōnstābat: see § 188. a; 'because it was clear to all.' The subj. of oportère is hiemāri, and the whole clause is subj. of cōnstābat.
124 7 chap. 30. paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscērent: 'inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.'
124 8 hōc: 'on this account'; correlative with quod.
124 10 factū: see § 226. b. — dūxērunt: 'they considered.' What does dūcō usually mean?
124 11 prohibēre . . . prōdūcere: subs. of esse. — his . . . interclūsis: 'if these should be overcome or cut off from return'; abl. abs. expressing condition.
124 15 dēdūcere: i.e. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3-4.
124 16 chap. 31. At: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.
124 17 ex ēventū nāvium: 'from what had befallen the ships.' — quod . . . intermiserant: the clause explains eō.
124 18 fore . . . suspicābātur: 'began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.' For this use of the past descr. tense see § 154. c.
124 20 quae . . . nāvēs, eārum: transl. as if eārum nāvium quae.
124 21 aere: the Romans used the word aes for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.
124 22 quae: the antecedent of quae is ea, the subj. understood of comportāri.
124 24 reliquis . . . effēcit: 'he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest' (lit. 'it could be sailed').
125 1 chap. 32. Dum . . . geruntur: see § 198. i. — frūmentātum: supine (§ 226. a).
125 5 statīone: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
125 6 quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: 'than usual.'
125 8 aliquid . . . initum (esse): inf. clause in apposition with id.
125 9 cōnsili: part. gen.
125 11 armāri: 'to arm themselves.'
125 15 ūna: 'only one.' — suspicāti: as present; 'supposing.' Cf. arbi-trātus, p. 101, l. 18 and note.
125 17 dispersōs . . . occupātōs: agreeing with nostrōs understood, the obj. of adortī.
125 20 chap. 33. ex essedīs: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.
125 21 equōrum: obj. gen.; 'the very terror that the horses cause.'
125 26 expeditum . . . receptum: 'a ready retreat.'
126 3 incitātōs equōs sustinēre: 'to check their horses in full gallop.'
126 5 iugō: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (tēmō).
126 7 Ch. 34. Quibus rēbus: 'by means of these tactics.'—perturbātīs nostrīs: dative of indir. obj. after tulīt.
126 13 qui: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of discessērant.
126 16 continērent . . . prohibērent: subjvs. of description.
126 19 suī līberāndī: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224. c).
126 23 Ch. 35. idem . . . fore: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause ut . . . effugērent.
127 1 tantō spatiō . . . quantum: 'over as much ground as'; spatiō is abl. (§ 106. a).
127 10 Ch. 36. propinquā diē aequinoctī: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'
127 11 īnfīrmīs . . . subiciendam: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). Nāvibus is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).
127 19 quōs reliquae: obj. and subj. respectively of capere potuērunt understood.
127 21 Ch. 37. Quibus ex nāvibus: the onerāriae duae mentioned in l. 18.
127 22 in castra: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).
127 24 prīmō: adv.
127 25 sī . . . nōllent: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).
128 1 orbe factō: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.
129 3 Ch. 38. siccitātēs: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.
129 13 supplicātiō: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the supplicātiō of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.
BOOK V

131 2 Ch. 40. pertulissent: for the fut. perf. (§ 199. II. a); it is subjv. to imply indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

131 12 praëstae sudēs: heavy stakes of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the tormenta.

131 14 contabulantur: 'are built up with a series of floors.'—attexuntur: 'are attached' (to the towers).

131 15 cum: see § 192.

131 16 ut: 'so that.'—ultrō . . . vocibus: 'when the soldiers ran to him voluntarily and pleaded with him.'

131 17 sibi parcere: see § 83.

131 19 Ch. 41. sermonis aditum: 'right to claim an interview.'—causamque amicitiae: 'ground for friendship.'

131 25 Errāre . . . spērent: see §§ 199. I. a, 210. —ēōs: Cicero and his men.—quicquam . . . praesidi: see § 76. a.—ab eis . . . qui . . . diffidant: eis refers to the Romans in the other camps.

131 26 hoc . . . animō: see § 116.

131 27 ut . . . recūsent: they are willing to be friends, but not subjects; they merely refuse to admit a standing military force.

131 28 cōnsuētūdinem: the custom of having winter quarters in Gaul.

132 1 incolūmibus: agreeing with illīs.

132 5 sē adiūtōre ūtantur: 'they may use him as an advocate.' His direct words were mē adiūtōre ūtimīnī (§ 205).

132 6 spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā: 'that he (Cicero) hopes that in accordance with his (Caesar's) sense of justice.'

132 7 Ch. 42. spē: of betraying Cicero.

132 10 nūllā . . . cōpiā: 'having no supply' (lit. 'there being no supply').

132 11 quae essent: see § 177.

132 12 exhaurīre: 'to dig out (with their hands) and carry away (in their cloaks).' The one verb does the work of two. An example of what is called "zeugma," a yoking.

132 14 XV: probably an error; the distance seems incredible.

132 18 Ch. 43. ferventēs . . . glandēs: 'red-hot, soft balls of clay.'

132 20 casās: the thatched huts of the encampment.

132 26 ut . . . dēcēderet . . . respiceret . . . pugnārent: see § 179.—cum: see § 192.

133 5 hunc . . . ut: 'had this result, that.'

133 6 ut: 'inasmuch as.'

133 7 primīs: 'to those in front' (next to the wall).—ultīmī: 'those in the rear.'
133 11 hostēs ... coepērunt: 'they began to invite the enemy (to come in) if they wanted to come in.' — vellent: implied indir. disc. (§ 20S. b); their direct words were sē vultis, introīte (§ 205).

133 15 Chap. 44. quī ... primis ordinibus adpropinquārent: see § 177. a. The men would soon be centurions of the first rank.

133 18 dē locō: 'for rank,' 'for promotion.'

133 21 locum: 'opportunity.'

133 26 Mediocri spatiō relictō: i.e. between him and the enemy.

133 30 Pullōni: see § 85. — āvertit ... vāginam: 'this mishap turned the scabbard aside.'

134 1 cōnanti: eī cōnātī (§ 85).

134 7 in locum . . . concidit: 'plunging (lit. 'plunged') into a hollow, he fell.'


134 15 reciderat: 'he had been reduced.'

135 12 biduō: 'for two days' (§ 119. note).

135 13 Ille perlēctam . . . recitat: 'Cicero, having perused it, reads it aloud.'

135 19 Chap. 49. Gallum . . . repetit: 'asks for the Gaul'; Verticō's slave, who carried Cicero's letter to Cāser (chap. 45).

135 20 quī . . . déferat: see § 175.

135 21 admonet . . . faciat: see § 183. In such cases the subjv. is often used without ut.

135 22 eum: Cāser.

135 25 animō: see § 115.

136 1 aequō animō . . . existimābat: 'he thought that he might with composure slacken his speed.'

136 3 haec: referring to castra, and obj. of contrahit. — erant . . . hominum: see § 77. a.

136 5 angustiis viārum: 'by narrowing the streets (of the camp)'; angustiis is an abl. of means (§ 106).

136 6 hostibus: see § 85.

136 10 Chap. 52. neque . . . locum relinqui: 'that no opportunity was left.' — dētrimentō illōrum: 'to do them harm' (§§ 89, 75).

136 14 decimum quemque: 'one man in ten.'

136 17 meritō: in the face of overwhelming odds Cicero had acted with great ability and courage.

136 19 cāsū Sabini et Cottae: these lieutenants of Cāser had been slain.

137 2 rem gestam (esse): the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.


137 4 hōc . . . quod: 'for this reason, that'; hōc is abl. (§ 114).
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK VI

137 5 beneficiō . . . virtūte eōrum: see § 106; eōrum refers to Cæsar's soldiers. — expiātō incommodō: see § 117.

BOOK VI

139 4 Chap. 9. Ambiorix: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy.

139 6 Nōtā . . . ratīōne: 'on the plan already tried and approved'; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.

140 1 pūrgandi sui causā: 'for the sake of clearing themselves.'

140 6 Cognītā: 'having inquired into.'

140 9 Chap. 10. paucis post diēbus: see § 114.

140 18 quaeque: quae is the subj. of gerantur; -que connects mittant and cognoscant.

140 20 Suēbōs omnēs . . . cōnstituisset: indir. disc. after referunt.

140 24 prō nātivō mūrō: 'as a natural wall.'

140 26 prohibēre: 'protects.'

141 1 Chap. 11. ad hunc locum: 'to this point' (of the narrative).

141 2 quō: adv., 'how.'

141 7 eōrum iūdīciō: 'according to their (the Gauls') judgment' (§ 111). — existimantur: merely explanatory, and hence the ind. (§ 178).

141 18 quōrum: the antecedent is principēs.

141 9 redeat: 'is referred' (§ 177). — institūtum: sc. esse.

141 10 nē quis . . . egēret: subst. clause in apposition with eius reī.

141 13 Haec . . . Galliae: 'this same state of affairs exists in general throughout Gaul.'


141 16 Hī: 'the latter' (§ 134. a).

141 19 iactūris: 'sacrifices.'

141 24 iūrāre: i.e. the Hāeduī. — nihil . . . cōnsili: 'no plan' (§ 76).

142 3 infectā rē: 'without having accomplished his purpose.'

142 5 novis: sc. clienťēlis.

142 6 ei: subj. of vidēbant.

142 8 reliquis rēbus: see § 115.

142 10 quōs . . . intellegēbātur: 'because it was perceived that these (the Remi) were equal (to the Hāeduī) in the favor of Cæsar.'

142 11 grātiā: see § 115.

142 13 dicābant: 'gave up'; distinguish from dixēbant.

142 21 cum: 'whenever,' 'as often as' (§ 196).

142 23 quibus . . . in servōs: 'who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over slaves'; for quibus and dominīs see § 88.

142 24 hīs . . . generibus: i.e. the genera duo in l. 19.
143 1 **intersunt**: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.'

143 3 **hī**: i.e. the druids.

143 4 **eōs**: i.e. the Gauls.

143 5 **quod ... facinus**: 'any crime.'

143 7 **idem**: 'they also.'

143 8 **qui ... privātus ... populus**: *qui* is the indef. adjective, 'any.' — **eōrum ... stetit**: 'has not abided by their decision.'

143 9 **sacrificils (eōs) interdīcunt**: abl. of separation (§ 101).

143 11 **his**: dative after **dēcēdunt** (§ 84).

143 12 **quid ... incommōdi**: see § 76. a.

143 16 **sī quī**: 'whoever.'

143 22 **Disciplīna**: 'system of training.'

144 5 **Chap. 14. ea**: neuter plur. referring to **numerum versuum**. — **cum ... ütantur**: concessive (§ 192).

144 6 **ratiōnibus**: 'transactions.'

144 8 **neque ... studēre**: 'nor do they wish that those who are learning should, through dependence on written words, give less attention to the memory.'

144 10 **praesidīō litterārum**: 'because of the reliance on written form.'

144 12 **animās ... trānsire ad aliōs**: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions.

144 14 **metū mortis neglēctō**: 'by disregarding the fear of death' (§ 117).

144 15 **Chap. 15. Alterum genus**: cf. **alterum equitum**, p. 142, l. 25. — **ūsus**: a noun.

144 22 **ut ... amplissimus, ita plūrimōs**: 'the more powerful ... the greater number.'

145 5 **Chap. 16. habent institūta**: this differs from **instituerunt** in denoting that the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.

145 6 **simulācrā**: wooden figures resembling human beings.

145 11 **dēscendunt**: 'resort to' (lit. 'descend to').

145 12 **Chap. 17. Mercurium**: 'a Mercury.' Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity in their attributes and functions.

145 13 **ferunt**: 'they call.'

145 21 **cum**: cf. p. 142, l. 21.

145 22 **cēperint**: subjv. of implied indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir.; **dēvovent** looks to the future.

145 25 **neglēctā ... religiōne**: 'in violation of his vow' (§ 117).

145 26 **aut capta ... aut ... audēret**: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his house or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down').
3 Chap. 18. spatia . . . finiunt: as emblematical of the darkness of the underworld, the home of Dis, or Pluto. This use is common to many primitive peoples. The English word "fortnight" is a relic of it. The custom apparently arose from keeping time by the changes of the moon.

5 diēs subsequātur: i.e. they count from the first night instead of from the first day.

7 cum adolēvērunt: cf. p. 145, l. 21; p. 142, l. 21.

9 filiumque . . . dūcunt: 'they consider it disgraceful' etc.

11 Viri . . . commūnicant: i.e. they set aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dower brought by the wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund.

14 frūctūsusque: 'revenues,' 'profits.' — vitā: see § 115.

19 si . . . vēnit: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances. — in servīlem modum: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime.

20 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.

22 prō cultū: 'considering the degree of civilization.'

23 cordi: 'dear'; dative of cor, 'heart.'

24 supra hanc memoriam: 'before our time.'

25 iūstis: 'regular.'

1 Chap. 20. Quae cīvitātēs: equivalent to eae cīvitātēs quae.

2 habent . . . sānctum: 'have it established by law.'

4 nēve: 'and that . . . not.' — quō: indef.

7 quae vīsa sunt: 'what seems best' (to conceal).

13 Chap. 21. Deōrum . . . Lūnām: Tacitus, on the contrary, speaks of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules also. But Cæsar's knowledge of the religion of the Germans may have been incomplete, or some new deities may have been introduced in the century and a half between Cæsar and Tacitus. In other particulars there is a striking agreement in the accounts.

17 à parvīs: 'from childhood.'

20 Chap. 22. fīnēs . . . propriōs: 'private lands.'

21 in annōs singulōs: 'each year.'

22 quantum . . . agri: see § 76.

23 aliō: adv.

24 nē . . . commūtēnt: this and the following clauses are in apposition with causās.

1 agri cultūrā: 'for agriculture'; abl. of price (§ 108).

5 ut . . . continēant: 'that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.'

9 Chap. 23. proprium virtūtis: 'significant of their valor' (§ 73. a).

10 iūs dicunt: 'administer justice.'

19 ea: refers to latrōcīnia.
NOTES

148 21 quī . . . profiteantur: 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' Profiteantur represents an impv. (§ 205).
148 25 omniumque . . . dērogātur: 'and thereafter confidence is withdrawn from them in everything.'

BOOK VII

150 3 Chap. 1. P. Clōdī: Publius Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party. He was a bitter enemy of Cicero (the orator), whom he had succeeded in driving into exile. Clodius was killed in a street brawl on the twentieth of January of this year, by Milo, a ruffian of the aristocratic party. For a while all orderly government was at an end, and the Gallic leaders hoped that a new uprising might be successful.

150 7 quod . . . vidēbātur: the antecedent of quod is retnērī . . . posse. It naturally seemed to the Gauls impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis.
150 9 quī . . . dolērent: 'being indignant' (§ 177); the characteristic subjv. often approaches a relation of cause. — ante: adv., modifying dolērent.
150 11 principēs Galliae: subj. of queruntur.
150 12 locīs: see § 120. b.
150 13 Accōnis: the leader of the recent rebellion among the Senones; Cæsar had him put to death.
150 15 quī . . . faciant . . . vindicent: purpose (§ 175); sc. eōs, the antecedent of quī.
150 16 suī capitis periculō: 'at the risk of their lives' (§ 108).
150 18 ut . . . interclūdātur: depends on ratiōnem esse habendam.
151 5 Chap. 2. principēs . . . fāctūrōs: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'
151 7 obsidibus: see § 106. — cavēre inter sē: 'take security from each other.' — nē rēs efferātur: the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.
151 8 conlātīs . . . signīs: by placing their standards together they pledged themselves to support each other.
151 15 Chap. 3. negotiandī: their business was money lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were controlled by Roman citizens.
151 16 cōnstiterant: 'had settled.'
151 19 quae: 'any.' — maior atque inlūstriō: i.e. than usual.
151 20 clāmōre: by this means news was carried with great rapidity.
151 22 quae . . . gesta essent: see § 177. — Cēnabī: see § 120. a.
152 1 Chap. 4. totius Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul.
152 3 incendit: sc. eōs.
152 6 Prohibētur: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'
153 1 quodque ante tempus: 'and before what time'; quod is interrogative
   (§ 201).
153 4 dubitantēs: 'those who hesitated.'
153 15 Chap. 5. dē cōnsiliō: 'on the advice.'
153 17 Quī: meaning the cōpiās equitātīs peditātīisque.
153 20 quibus . . . cognōverint: 'who they knew had this plan' (§ 88).
153 22 ipsī: the Bituriges.—Id eāne dē causā quam . . . fēcerint:
   'whether they did this for the reason which.'
153 23 quod . . . cōnstat: 'because it is not at all clear to us.'
154 1 nōn . . . pōnendum: Cæsar refuses as a historian to make a positive
   statement of what he does not know.
154 4 Chap. 6. virtūte . . . Pompēi: 'by the energy of Pompey.' Pompey
   had been made dictator.
154 6 quā . . . posset: indir. question (§ 201) depending on the idea of
   doubt in difficūltae.
154 8 sē absentē: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army.—
   dimicātūrās (esse): sc. eās, i.e. the legions.
154 9 sī ipse . . . vidēbat: the most submissive Gaules were not at such a
   time to be depended on, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.
154 10 eīs: indir. obj. of committī, the subj. of which is salūtem.
154 12 Chap. 7. Lucterius: an officer of Vercingetorix; see p. 153, l. 9.
154 16 cōnsiliīs antevertendum (esse): see § 84; the subj. of antevertendum
   is ut . . . proficīscerētur.
154 18 Rutēnis prōvinciālibus: a part of the Ruteni had been incorporated
   in the Province.
154 24 Chap. 8. quod . . . putābat: 'because he (Lucterius) thought.'—
   periculōsum: sc. esse.
154 25 proficīscitur: 'he (Cæsar) sets out.'
155 1 dūrissimō tempore anni: Pompey was put in authority on February 25
   (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the true time);
   Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cévennes about the
   middle of January.
155 5 nē singulāri quidem . . . hominī: 'not even to a solitary wayfarer,'
   to say nothing of an army.
155 14 fortūnis cōnsulat: see § 85.
155 19 Chap. 9. ūsū . . . praecepērat: 'he had suspected would come to
   pass.'—per causam: 'on the pretext'; his real motive was to join his
   main force.
155 21 Brūtum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterwards one of Cæsar's assas-
   sins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with
   the Veneti (p. 90, l. 12).
NOTES

155 22 datūrum . . . absit: this was a mere pretense; his real design was to reach his army, but he fears to let his own men know his plans.
155 25 recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.
155 28 ubi . . . hiemabant: his route would lie due north up the Saône, along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was not far from three hundred miles.—quid . . . cōnsilī: see § 76. a.
155 29 dē suā salūte: 'affecting his own safety'; opposed to any design on his forces.
156 1 reliquās legiōnēs: two legions were somewhere near the Treveri, and six at Agedincum, about one hundred and forty miles apart.
156 2 priusque . . . quam . . . posset: see § 197. b.
156 6 Hæduīisque attribuerat: see p. 32, ll. 22–25.
156 8 CHAP. 10. difficultātem: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, sī . . . continēret, nē . . . dēsiceret, and sī . . . ēdīceret, nē . . . labōrāret.
156 10 stipendiāriīs: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.
156 11 quod . . . vidēret: 'since it (Gaul) would see that friends found no protection in him (Cæsar).'
156 13 ab rē frūmentāriā: 'in respect to his supply of corn.'
156 14 tantā . . . acceptā: 'by such reproach' (§ 117).
156 16 praemittit . . . quī . . . doceant: see § 175.
158 2 CHAP. 63. circummittunt: i.e. by the Hædui.
158 6 ratiōnēsque . . . commūnicet: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.
158 12 illī: i.e. the Remi (see Book II, chap. 5) and the Lingones.
158 17 requirunt: 'recall with regret.'
158 18 summae spei: 'of high ambition.'
158 21 CHAP. 64 Ipse: i.e. Vercingetorix.—ēi reī: i.e. for bringing the hostages.
158 22 Hūc: at Bibracte, the capital of the Hædui.
158 23 peditātū . . . contentum: contentus takes the abl.
158 25 perfacile . . . factū: see § 226. b.
159 1 aequō . . . animō: 'without complaint.'—modo . . . corrumpant: 'only let them destroy'; for corrumpāmus ('let us destroy'), a hortatory subjv. (§ 172. a) in indir. disc.
159 2 quā . . . iactūrā . . . videant: 'since they see (§ 190) that by this loss.'
159 5 hūc: 'to these.'
159 7 Alterā ex parte: i.e. from the west.
159 11 superiōre bellō: the war eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued (p. 15, ll. 3, 4).
159 14 Chap. 65. cohortium: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.

159 15 L. Caesare: a cousin of Julius, consul iir 64 B.C.

159 16 ad omnēs . . . oppōnēbantur: 'were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.'

159 19 mūrōsque: 'strongholds'; not simply the walls of the oppida.

159 22 interclūsis . . . poterat: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed.

159 25 equitēsque: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic.

159 26 qui . . . cōnsuērant: see p. 51, ll. 19–27.

159 27 minus idōneīs equis: these are described in Book IV, chap. 2.

160 2 Chap. 66. equitēsque qui . . . imperāti: see p. 158, ll. 22, 23.

160 4 per . . . finēs: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, chap. 62) toward the east, and thus leaving the hostile Hædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see the map facing p. 150).

160 9 Id: i.e. the flight of the Romans.

160 11 parum prōfici: 'that little advantage was gained.' — reversūrōs (esse): i.e. Rōmānōs.

160 13 adoriantur: for adorīāmur ('let us charge on them'; § 172. a), in indir. disc.—Si peditēs . . . nōn posse: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry. Vercingetorix knew Cæsar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reënforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (suis), the march would be delayed.

160 14 magis futūrum: 'is more likely.'

160 16 dignitāte etc.: by the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.—spoliātum irī: fut. inf. pass.—Nam dé equitibus hostium: i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

160 17 quin . . . audeat, nē ipsōs . . . dubitāre: 'even they themselves ought not to doubt that' etc.

160 18 Id quō . . . animō: 'that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage' (§ 176).

160 19 prō castrīs: 'in front of the camp,' by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

160 21 cōnfīrmāri oportēre: 'that they ought to bind themselves.'

160 26 Chap. 67. ā primō agmine: 'at the front of the (Roman) line of march.'

162 5 aiciemque convertī: by a change of front, turning the line of march into a line of battle.

162 14 proximīs comitiis: i.e. of the Hædui, for chief magistrate.
162 19 Chap. 68. Alesiam: "Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."—Froude's "Cæsar."

162 23 quantum: 'as far as.'
164 2 Chap. 69. locō: in apposition with colle (§ 54. note).
164 6 pari altitūdinis fastigiō: 'of equal height.'
164 7 quae pars... hunc omnem locum: 'all that part of the hill which.'

Pars, the antecedent of quae, is put in the rel. clause (§ 140); hunc omnem locum takes the place of hanc omnem (partem); cf. p. 68, l. 23, where the antecedent noun appears in both clauses (Locī... quem locum).

164 10 mūnitōnis: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation, that is, a series of works surrounding the town, to resist a sortie.
164 11 tenēbat: 'extended.'
164 13 statiōnēs: in the daytime a mere picket guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (execubitōribus) on their walls.
164 17 Chap. 70. intermissam collibus: 'lying between (lit. 'broken by') hills.'
164 20 castrīs: 'camps,' plur.; on the high ground south of the city.
164 23 angustiōribus: 'too narrow,' either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the entrance of the enemy.
164 24 ācrius: 'with all the more vigor.'
165 1 venīrī... existimantēs: 'thinking that an immediate attack is to be made on them'; for venīrī see § 66.
165 4 portās: the gates of the town; these were closed to prevent those who manned the exterior defenses from rushing into the town in a panic.
165 11 Chap. 71. suae... sē: referring to Vercingetorix (§ 133).—neu: 'and not,' the regular way of continuing a neg. purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of neu.
165 14 Ratiōne initā: 'having made a calculation.'
165 17 nostrum opus (erat) intermissum: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.
165 21 cōpiās omnēs: not those holding the fortification east of the town (p. 164, ll. 7–10), but all the outlying pickets elsewhere.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202–213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

199 1 Chap. 13. Si . . . voluisset: in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is Helvētīī and the preds. are ibunt and erunt. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while Helvētīī becomes accusative, Helvētiōs (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (itūrōs, futūrōs) agree.

The first subord. verb, faciet, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. ēgit, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, cōnstitueris and volueris, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

199 4 Sin bellō . . . Helvētiōrum: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. reminīscere, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

199 6 Quod . . . dēspiceret: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is nōlī, with the infs. tribuere and dēspicere. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., tribueret and dēspiceret, with nē (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs adortus es and trānsierant are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; possent, being already subjv. (§ 194. b), remains in the same form.
NOTES 303

199 *ipsōs . . . sé*: both these pronouns were *nōs* in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. a. *Ipsōs* is essentially emphatic, *sē* not especially so; hence *ipsōs* is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with *suae*; moreover, *sē* referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with *suae* referring to Cæsar. — *sē . . . niterentur*: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is *didicimus*, which is changed regularly to the inf. *didicisse*. The subord. verbs, *contendimus* and *nītāmur*, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 11 Quā rē . . . prōderet: in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is *nōti*, which with *committere* is changed to *nē committeret* (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb *cōnstitimus* becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while *capiat* and *prōdat*, being already in the subjv. (§ 137. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 18 CHAP. 14. *fuisse*: this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for *fuit* in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been *fuisset*, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. b), we should have had *futūrum fuisse* in the indir. (§ 213. a). — *déceptum*: sc. *esse*.

199 19 *commissum*: sc. *esse*. This depends on *intellegēret*, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

199 24 *posse*: a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. a).

200 4 *doleant*: we might have expected *dolērent*; see § 162 and § 163. a. The same principle applies to *velint*, which might have been *vellent*; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

200 14 CHAP. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

201 12 CHAP. 18. Sī quid accidat: a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. b) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

201 23 CHAP. 20. Quod sī . . . accidisset: do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was *acciderit*, *if anything shall have happened* (§ 199. II. a).

201 25 *futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur*: see § 212.

202 6 CHAP. 31. *Nōn minus* etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. a).

203 7 *Futūrum esse . . . utī . . . pellerentur*: see § 212.

203 32 CHAP. 32. *velut si córam adesset*: be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was *velut sī . . . adsit* (§ 200 and note).

204 5 CHAP. 34. *ipsī*: for *mihi* of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 199, l. 9, and § 136. a.
304 INDIRECT DISCOURSE

204 6 ventūrum fuisset: the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. a).

204 14 Chap. 35. Throughout this chapter Cæsar is speaking to the ambassadors. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

204 25 Si . . . fēcisset: a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

205 9 Chap. 36. qui . . . faceret: note that this would be faciat in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

205 26 Chap. 40. iūdicāret: a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. d and note); verērentur and dēspērārent following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. b.

206 12 Si . . . commovēret: a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. a, 210).

BOOK II

210 28 Chap. 14. inciderint: in dir. disc. this would be incidērunt in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. a).

211 3 Chap. 15. dēdīsset: this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also prōìcīssent (§ 190).
From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter

THE IDES OF MARCH

(See page 8)
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

   FIRST DECLENSION — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
   SECOND DECLENSION — O-stems, Gen. Sing. -ī
   THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -īs
   FOURTH DECLENSION — U-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs
   FIFTH DECLENSION — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ēī

   a. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The stem is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the base and stem of domina.

2. FIRST DECLENSION. Ā-STEMS

   domina, lady   Stem dominā-   Base domin-   

   Singular                       Plural
   terminations                  terminations

   Nom.  domina        -a          dominae        -ae
   Gen.  dominae       -ae         dominārum     -ārum
   Dat.  dominae       -ae         dominīs        -īs
   Acc.  dominam       -am         dominās        -ās
   Abl.  dominā         -ā          dominīs        -īs

   a. Dea and filia have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.
3. **SECOND DECISION. O-STEMS**

*a. Masculines in -us*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>dominus</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>domino-</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>domin-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
<td>dominōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
<td>dominōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as domine.

2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergi’li, fili.

*b. Neuters in -um*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pilum, spear</th>
<th>Stem pilo-</th>
<th>Base pil-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>Stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pilī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pilō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pilō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -ī in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

*c. Masculines in -er and -ir*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Puer, boy</th>
<th>Ager, field</th>
<th>Vir, man</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stem Puero-</td>
<td>Agro-</td>
<td>Viro-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base Puer-</td>
<td>Agr-</td>
<td>Vir-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>puer</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>ager</th>
<th>Vir</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>agrī</td>
<td>Virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>Virō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>agrum</td>
<td>Virum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>Stem</td>
<td>agrō</td>
<td>Virō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

307

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>pueri</th>
<th>agrī</th>
<th>virī</th>
<th>-ī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>-ōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. Third Declension

1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.

I. Consonant Stems

1. Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

Bases or Stems: princip-

Singual

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>prīnceps</th>
<th>mīles¹</th>
<th>lapis¹</th>
<th>-s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>prīncipis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>lapidis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>prīncipi</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>lapidī</td>
<td>-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>prīncipem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>lapidem</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>prīncipe</td>
<td>mīlīte</td>
<td>lapide</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>prīncīpes</th>
<th>militēs</th>
<th>lapidēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>militum</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>prīncīpes</td>
<td>militēs</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>militibus</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ In the nominative a final -t or -d of the stem is dropped before -s.
### Latin Grammar

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rēx, m., <em>king</em></th>
<th>iūdex, m., <em>judge</em></th>
<th>virtūs, f., <em>virtue</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rēx¹</td>
<td>iūdex¹</td>
<td>virtūs¹</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēgis</td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
<td>virtūtis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēgi</td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
<td>virtūtī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rēgem</td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
<td>virtūtem</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rēge</td>
<td>iūdice</td>
<td>virtūte</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural         |                 |                    |                      |
| Nom. rēgēs     | iūdicēs         | virtūtēs           | -ēs                  |
| Gen. rēgum     | iūdicicum       | virtūtum           | -um                  |
| Dat. rēgibus   | iūdicibus       | virtūtibus         | -ibus                |
| Acc. rēgēs     | iūdicēs         | virtūtēs           | -ēs                  |
| Abl. rēgibus   | iūdicibus       | virtūtibus         | -ibus                |

2. **Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular**

#### a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>cōnsul, m., <em>consul</em></th>
<th>legiō, f., <em>legion</em></th>
<th>ōrdō, m., <em>row</em></th>
<th>pater, m., <em>father</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō²</td>
<td>ōrdō²</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
<td>ōrdinis</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cōnsuli</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
<td>ōrdini</td>
<td>patri</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
<td>ōrdinem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
<td>-em</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
<td>ōrdine</td>
<td>patre</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural         |                      |                    |                 |                     |
| Nom. cōnsulēs  | legiōnēs            | ōrdinēs            | patrēs          | -ēs                 |
| Gen. cōnsulum  | legiōnum             | ōrdinum            | patrum          | -um                 |
| Dat. cōnsulibus| legiōnibus           | ōrdinibus          | patribus        | -ibus               |
| Acc. cōnsulēs  | legiōnēs            | ōrdinēs            | patrēs          | -ēs                 |
| Abl. cōnsulibus| legiōnibus           | ōrdinibus          | patribus        | -ibus               |

¹ In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -s and forms -x; and a final -t or -d is dropped.

² Stems in -in and -ön drop -n and end in -ō in the nominative.
### FORMS

#### b. Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases</th>
<th>flūmen, n., river</th>
<th>tempus, n., time</th>
<th>opus, n., work</th>
<th>caput, n., head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>flūmen</th>
<th>tempus</th>
<th>opus</th>
<th>caput</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminis</td>
<td>temporis</td>
<td>operis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūmini</td>
<td>temporī</td>
<td>operī</td>
<td>capitī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>tempus</td>
<td>opus</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>tempore</td>
<td>opere</td>
<td>capite</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>flūmina</th>
<th>tempora</th>
<th>opera</th>
<th>capita</th>
<th>-a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>flūminum</td>
<td>temporum</td>
<td>operum</td>
<td>capitum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
<td>tempora</td>
<td>opera</td>
<td>capita</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
<td>temporibus</td>
<td>operibus</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.** Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

#### II. I-Stems

##### a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>caedes, f., slaughter</th>
<th>hostis, m., enemy</th>
<th>urbs, f., city</th>
<th>cliensis, m., retainer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stems</td>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>urbi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bases</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>caedes</th>
<th>hostis</th>
<th>urbs</th>
<th>cliensis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedis</td>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>urbis</td>
<td>clientis</td>
<td>-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedi</td>
<td>hosti</td>
<td>urbī</td>
<td>clientī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caadem</td>
<td>hostem</td>
<td>urbem</td>
<td>clientem</td>
<td>-em (-im)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caede</td>
<td>hoste</td>
<td>urbe</td>
<td>cliente</td>
<td>-e (-ī)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>caedes</th>
<th>hostēs</th>
<th>urbēs</th>
<th>clientēs</th>
<th>-ēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>hostium</td>
<td>urbium</td>
<td>clientium</td>
<td>-ium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedis, -ēs</td>
<td>hostis, -ēs</td>
<td>urbīs, -ēs</td>
<td>clientis, -ēs</td>
<td>-īs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>urbibus</td>
<td>clientibus</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Avis, civis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -ī or -ē.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turri or turre.
b. Neuters

Insigne, n., decoration  animal, n., animal  calcar, n., spur

Stems

- Insigni-
- Animāli-
- Calcāri-

Bases

- Insign-
- Animāl-
- Calcār-

Singular

| Nom. | Insigne | animal | calcar | -e or - |
| Gen. | insignis | animālis | calcāris | -is |
| Dat. | insignī | animāli | calcāri | -ī |
| Acc. | insignis | animal | calcar | -e or - |
| Abl. | insignī | animāli | calcāri | -ī |

Plural

| Nom. | insignia | animālia | calcāria | -ia |
| Gen. | insignium | animālium | calcārium | -ium |
| Dat. | insignibus | animālibus | calcāribus | -ibus |
| Acc. | insignia | animālia | calcāria | -ia |
| Abl. | insignibus | animālibus | calcāribus | -ibus |

7. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

Adventus, m., arrival  Cornū, n., horn

Stem adventu-  Base advent-  Stem cornu-  Base corn-

Singular

| Nom. | adventus | cornū | -us | -ū |
| Gen. | adventūs | cornūs | -ūs | -ūs |
| Dat. | adventŭū (ū) | cornū | -uī (ū) | -ū |
| Acc. | adventum | cornū | -um | -ū |
| Abl. | adventū | cornū | -ū | -ū |

Terminations

Plural

| Nom. | adventūs | cornua | -ūs | -ua |
| Gen. | adventuum | cornuum | -uum | -uum |
| Dat. | adventibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |
| Acc. | adventūs | cornua | -ūs | -ua |
| Abl. | adventibus | cornibus | -ibus | -ibus |
### 8. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ė-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dies, m., day</td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>di-</td>
<td>res, f., thing</td>
<td>res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
<td>-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td>-ēś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>-ēī</td>
<td>dies</td>
<td>-ēś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>diem</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>die</td>
<td>re</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ēdus, m., god</td>
<td>deo-</td>
<td>de-</td>
<td>domus, f., house</td>
<td>domu-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Singular** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Nom.** | deō | domūs | vis | iter |
| **Gen.** | domūs | vis (rare) | itineris |
| **Dat.** | domūsc | vī (rare) | itinerī |
| **Acc.** | domum | vim | iter |
| **Abl.** | domōc, -ū | vī | itinere |

| **Plural** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Nom.** | deē, di | domūs | virēs | itinerera |
| **Gen.** | domūsc, domum | virium | itinerum |
| **Dat.** | domibus | viribus | itineribus |
| **Acc.** | domōs | virīs, -ēs | itinereta |
| **Abl.** | domīsc, -īs | viribus | itineribus |

* a. The vocative singular of ēdus is like the nominative.
* b. The locative of domus is domī.
ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O-STEMS AND Ā-STEMS

a. ADJECTIVES IN -us

bonus, good  Stems bono- m. and n., bonā- f.  Base bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. bonus</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. boni</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>boni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonō</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonō</td>
<td>bonaa</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. boni</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. bonorum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td>bonis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Adjectives in -er

liber, free  Stems libero- m. and n., liberā- f.  Base liber-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberam</td>
<td>liberum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberā</td>
<td>liberā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
<td>libera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. liberōrum</td>
<td>liberārum</td>
<td>liberōrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. liberōs</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td>liberās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FORMS

**pulcher, pretty**  
Stems pulchro- m. and n., pulchrā- f.  
Base pulchr-

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrūm</td>
<td>pulchrām</td>
<td>pulchrūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrārum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
<td>pulchrūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

**alias, another**  
Stems alio- m. and n., aliā- f.  
Base ali-

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>aliōi</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>unus</td>
<td>ûna</td>
<td>ûnum</td>
<td>ûni</td>
<td>ûna</td>
<td>ûna</td>
<td>ûna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>unusus</td>
<td>ûnus</td>
<td>ûnus</td>
<td>ûnōrum</td>
<td>ûnārum</td>
<td>ûnārum</td>
<td>ûnārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ûnī</td>
<td>ûnī</td>
<td>ûnī</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ûnum</td>
<td>ûnam</td>
<td>ûnum</td>
<td>ûnōs</td>
<td>ûnās</td>
<td>ûnās</td>
<td>ûnās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ûnōd</td>
<td>ûnād</td>
<td>ûnōd</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
<td>ûnīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. So also ûllus, ûllus, sōlus, tōtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utra, utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).*
12. **Adjectives of the Third Declension. I-stems**

### I. Three Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>FEM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### II. Two Endings

omnis, omne, every, all  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. One Ending

pār, equal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC. AND FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pār</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pari</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>parem</td>
<td>pār</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pari</td>
<td>pari</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.
13. **PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES**

Table of Participles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amanṭis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amantem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iēns, going **STEM ienti-, eunti-** **BASE ient-, eunt-**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euntem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. **REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audāciōr</td>
<td>audācius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>brevior</td>
<td>brevius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (ācri-)</td>
<td>āciōr</td>
<td>ācius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. **DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>altior, higher</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>altior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>altioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>altiorī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>altiorēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>altiorē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plur, more

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>-plurēs</td>
<td>plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-plurium</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-pluribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>-plūris</td>
<td>plūrīum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>-plūre</td>
<td>plūrius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16. **IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES**

**Positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>meilior, melius, better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius, greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>-plur, more</td>
<td>plūrimus, -a, -um, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, old</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>maximus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvenis, -e, young</td>
<td>iūnior</td>
<td>minimus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, veteris, old</td>
<td>vetustior, -ius</td>
<td>veterrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facillior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, difficult</td>
<td>difficillior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, similar</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>similimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracillior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus, outward</td>
<td>exterior, outer, exterior</td>
<td>extremus { outermost, last }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferus, below</td>
<td>inferior, lower</td>
<td>infimus { lowest }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterus, following</td>
<td>posterior, later</td>
<td>postrēmus { last }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, above</td>
<td>superior, higher</td>
<td>postumus { }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cis, citrā, on this side]</td>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>supremus { highest }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[in, intrā, in, within]</td>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>citimus, hithermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prae, prō, before]</td>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>intimus, inmost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prope, near]</td>
<td>propior, nearer</td>
<td>prīmus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ultrā, beyond]</td>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>proximus, next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17. **REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

**Positive**
- cărē (cārus), dearly
- miserē (miser), wretchedly
- ācriter (ācer), sharply
- facile (facilis), easily

**Comparative**
- cărius
- miserius
- ācrius
- facilius

**Superlative**
- căriissimē
- miserrimē
- ācerrimē
- facillimē

18. **IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS**

**Positive**
- diū, long, a long time
- bene (bonus), well
- male (malus), ill
- magnopere, greatly
- multum (multus), much
- parum, little
- saepe, often

**Comparative**
- diūtius
- melius, better
- peius, worse
- magis, more
- plūs, more
- minus, less
- saepius

**Superlative**
- diūtissimē
- optime, best
- pessimē, worst
- maximē, most
- plūrimum, most
- minimē, least
- saepissimē

19. **NUMERAL ADJECTIVES**

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting unus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINALS (How many)</th>
<th>ORDINALS (In what order)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1, unus, -a, -um</td>
<td>prīmus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>secundus (or alter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, trēs, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, quīnque</td>
<td>quīntus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7, septem</td>
<td>septime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9, novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10, decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11, undecim</td>
<td>ūndecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. Declension of duo, two, trēs, three, and mille, a thousand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōs or duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trīs or trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of ūnus cf. § 11.
21. **PRONOUNS**

**PERSONAL**

**FIRST PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ego, I</em>;</td>
<td><em>nōs, we</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECOND PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>tū, thou, you</em>;</td>
<td><em>vōs, you</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOM.**

- *ego* (I)
- *nōs* (we)

**GEN.**

- *meī* (my)
- *nostrum, -trī* (our)

**DAT.**

- *mihi* (me)
- *nōbīs* (us)

**ACC.**

- *mē* (me)
- *nōs* (us)

**ABL.**

- *mē* (me)
- *nōbīs* (us)

*a.* The demonstrative pronoun is, *ea, id* is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22. **REFLEXIVE**

**FIRST PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>me, myself</em></td>
<td><em>us, ourselves</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SECOND PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>thee, you, yourself</em></td>
<td><em>you, yourselves</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THIRD PERSON**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>him(her, it)self</em></td>
<td><em>themselves</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GEN.**

- *meī* (my)
- *nostrum, -trī* (our)

**DAT.**

- *mihi* (me)
- *nōbīs* (us)

**ACC.**

- *mē* (me)
- *nōs* (us)

**ABL.**

- *mē* (me)
- *nōbīs* (us)

**NOTE.** Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23. **POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES**

The possessive pronominal adjectives *my, mine, your, yours,* etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

**SINGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>meus, mea, meum</em></td>
<td><em>tuus, tua, tuum</em></td>
<td><em>suus, sua, suum</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st Pers.</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>noster, nostra, nostrum</em></td>
<td><em>vester, vestra, vestrum</em></td>
<td><em>suus, sua, suum</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE.** Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine *mi*; as, *mi fili, O my son.*
24. Suus is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, puer patrem suum videt, the boy sees his (own) father; agricolae agrōs suōs amant, the farmers love their (own) fields.

When not reflexive, his, her, and its are usually expressed by eius, the genitive singular of is, ea, id; and their by eōrum (masculine and neuter) and eārum (feminine), the genitive plural of is, ea, id. Thus:

puer patrem eius videt, the boy sees his (not his own) father
agricolae agrōs eōrum amant, the farmers love their (not their own) fields

25. INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -iūs and -i in the genitive and dative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPSE, SELF</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>ipsi’us</td>
<td>ipsi’us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIC, THIS (HERE), HE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ISTE, THIS, THAT (OF YOURS), HE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
<td>isti’us</td>
<td>isti’us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dat.</strong></td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Acc.</strong></td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abl.</strong></td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

ille, that (yonder), he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illi'us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is, this, that, he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

idem, the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eī'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eun'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. In the plural the two i's in idem and iisdem are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written idem and isdem.

26.

RELATIVE

qui, who, which, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Fem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27. **INTERROGATIVE**

vis, substantive, *who, what*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></td>
<td><strong>NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative adjective quī, quae, quod, is declined like the relative.

28. **INDEFINITES**

quis and quī, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of quis and quī.

**quisque, each**

**SUBSTANTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>MASC. AND FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
<th><strong>MASC.</strong></th>
<th><strong>FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quisque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quaeque</td>
<td>quodque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
<td>quemque</td>
<td>quamque</td>
<td>quodque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
<td>quāque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ADJECTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>MASC.</strong></th>
<th><strong>FEM.</strong></th>
<th><strong>NEUT.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quīdam</td>
<td>quaedam</td>
<td>{quoddam}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’dam</td>
<td>cuius’dam</td>
<td>{quiddam (subst.)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>{quoddam}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quendam</td>
<td>quandam</td>
<td>{quiddam (subst.)}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōdam</td>
<td>quādam</td>
<td>quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29. **quīdam, a certain one, a certain**

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has quoddam and the substantive quiddam.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quīdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quendam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ qua is generally used instead of quae in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
### FORMS

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quīdam</td>
<td>quaedam&lt;br&gt;quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>quōrun’dam&lt;br&gt;quārun’dam</td>
<td>quaedam&lt;br&gt;quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>quibus’dam&lt;br&gt;quibus’dam</td>
<td>quaedam&lt;br&gt;quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quōsdam&lt;br&gt;quāsdam</td>
<td>quaedam&lt;br&gt;quaedam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quibus’dam&lt;br&gt;quibus’dam</td>
<td>quaedam&lt;br&gt;quaedam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 30. quisquam, substantive, any one (at all)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quisquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius’quam</td>
<td>cuius’quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
<td>quiquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 31. aliquis, substantive, some one. aliquī, adjective, some

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquis&lt;br&gt;aliquid</td>
<td>aliquī&lt;br&gt;aliqua&lt;br&gt;aliquod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicu’ius&lt;br&gt;aicu’ius</td>
<td>alicu’ius&lt;br&gt;aliqua&lt;br&gt;aliquod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquem&lt;br&gt;aliquid</td>
<td>aliquem&lt;br&gt;aliquam&lt;br&gt;aliquod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliquō&lt;br&gt;aliquō</td>
<td>aliquō&lt;br&gt;aliqua&lt;br&gt;aliquō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aliquī</td>
<td>aliquae&lt;br&gt;aliquā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alicuō’rum</td>
<td>aliquā’rum&lt;br&gt;aliquō’rum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ali’quibus&lt;br&gt;ali’quibus</td>
<td>ali’quibus&lt;br&gt;ali’quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliquōs&lt;br&gt;aliquās</td>
<td>ali’quibus&lt;br&gt;ali’quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ali’quibus</td>
<td>ali’quibus&lt;br&gt;ali’quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a. quis (quī), any one, any, is the least definite of these. aliquis (aliquī), some one, some, is more definite than quis. quisquam, any one (at all), and its adjective ullus, any, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.*
### REGULAR VERBS

#### 32. FIRST CONJUGATION. Á-VERBS. *AMÔ*

**Principal Parts** *amô, amâre, amâvī, amâtus*

**Pres. Stem** *amā-*  **Perf. Stem** *amâv-*  **Part. Stem** *amât-*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td><em>I love, am loving, do love, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I am loved, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amô</em></td>
<td><em>amo</em></td>
<td><em>amâmur</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâs</em></td>
<td><em>amâris</em></td>
<td><em>amâminî</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amat</em></td>
<td><em>amâtur</em></td>
<td><em>amântur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th><em>I loved, was loving, did love, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I was loved, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbam</em></td>
<td><em>amâbâmus</em></td>
<td><em>amâbar</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbâs</em></td>
<td><em>amâbâtis</em></td>
<td><em>amâbâris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbat</em></td>
<td><em>amâbant</em></td>
<td><em>amâbâtur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th><em>I shall love, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I shall be loved, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbô</em></td>
<td><em>amâbîmus</em></td>
<td><em>amâbor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbis</em></td>
<td><em>amâbitis</em></td>
<td><em>amâberis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâbit</em></td>
<td><em>amâbunt</em></td>
<td><em>amâbitur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th><em>I have loved, loved, did love, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I have been (was) loved, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amâvî</em></td>
<td><em>amâvîmus</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, sum</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâvistî</em></td>
<td><em>amâvistis</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, es</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâvit</em></td>
<td><em>amâvĕrant, -re</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, -a, -um</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th><em>I had loved, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I had been loved, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amâveram</em></td>
<td><em>amâverămus</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, eram</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâverâs</em></td>
<td><em>amâverătis</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, eräs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâverat</em></td>
<td><em>amâverant</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, erat</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th><em>I shall have loved, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I shall have been loved, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>amâverô</em></td>
<td><em>amâverimus</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, erô</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâveris</em></td>
<td><em>amâveritis</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, eris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>amâverit</em></td>
<td><em>amâverint</em></td>
<td><em>amâtus, erit</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Forms

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amem</td>
<td>amēmus</td>
<td>amer</td>
<td>amēmur</td>
<td>amä, love thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amējis</td>
<td>amēris, -re</td>
<td>amēmini</td>
<td>amā, love ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amet</td>
<td>amēnt</td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td>amentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārem</td>
<td>amārēmus</td>
<td>amārer</td>
<td>amārēmur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārēs</td>
<td>amārējis</td>
<td>amārēris, -re</td>
<td>amārēmini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
<td>amārentur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>amāverīmus</td>
<td>amātus, -sim</td>
<td>amātī, -simus</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāverījis</td>
<td>-s, -sis</td>
<td>-ae, -s</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>-um, -sit</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissem</td>
<td>amāvissēmus</td>
<td>amātus, -essēmus</td>
<td>amātī, essēmus</td>
<td>amanto, they shall love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
<td>amāvissētis</td>
<td>-es, -esse</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>amanto, they shall love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvisset</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>-um, -eset</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td>amanto, they shall love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre, be thou loved</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt be loved</td>
<td>amātūris, -a, -um esse, to be about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāmini, be ye loved</td>
<td>amātō, he shall be loved</td>
<td>amanto, they shall be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāre, to love</td>
<td>amāvisse, to have loved</td>
<td>amātūris, -a, -um esse, to be about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārī, to be loved</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um esse, to have been loved</td>
<td>amātum īri, to be about to be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāns, -antis, loving</td>
<td>amātūris, -a, -um, about to love</td>
<td>amātus, -a, -um, having been loved, loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amandus, -a, -um, to be loved</td>
<td>amandus, -a, -um, to be loved</td>
<td>amandus, -a, -um, to be loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amandi, of loving</td>
<td>amandūs, of loving</td>
<td>amandūs, of loving</td>
<td>amandum, loving</td>
<td>amandō, by loving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Sometimes called the future passive participle.
### Principal Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneó, monēre, monui, monitus</td>
<td>monitus, sum monitū, sumus monēmus, monēritū, -ā, -um monērit, -ae, -a est monēritum, erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Active Indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I advise, etc.</th>
<th>I am advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneó</td>
<td>mone-or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēt</td>
<td>monētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Descriptive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was advising, etc.</th>
<th>I was advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbām</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall advise, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēberis, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have advised, I advised, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive Indicative

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I advise, etc.</th>
<th>I am advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneó</td>
<td>moneor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēt</td>
<td>monētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Descriptive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was advising, etc.</th>
<th>I was advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbām</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall advise, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēberis, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have advised, I advised, etc.</th>
<th>I have been (was) advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistī</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um monitū, -ae, -a est monitum, erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have advised, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been advised, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td>monuerēmus, erō monitū, -ae, -a est moniterū, erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monuerētis, eris monitū, -ae, -a est moniterū, erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monueriunt, erit monitū, -ae, -a est moniteriū, erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FORMS

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monear</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēās</td>
<td>monēātis</td>
<td>moneāris, -re</td>
<td>moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
<td>monērer</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
<td>monērēris, -re</td>
<td>monērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monuerīmus</td>
<td>sim monitus, sis sit monitī, ae sit</td>
<td>simus sitis sint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monuerītis</td>
<td>-a, -um essim monitus, -ae, -a sus sit essem monitī, esset essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monuissemus</td>
<td>essem monitus, -ae, -a sus sit essēmus essētis essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuissēs</td>
<td>monuisētis</td>
<td>-a, -um essē monitus, -ae, -a sus sit essētis essent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monuisent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monē, advise thou</td>
<td>monēre, be thou advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēte, advise ye</td>
<td>monēmini, be ye advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monētō, thou shalt advise</td>
<td>monētor, thou shall be advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētō, he shall advise</td>
<td>monētor, he shall be advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētōte, you shall advise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monento, they shall advise</td>
<td>monentor, they shall be advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. monēre, to advise</td>
<td>monēri, to be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. monuisse, to have advised</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise</td>
<td>monitum iri, to be about to be advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. monēns, -entis, advising</td>
<td>Ger. monendus, -a, -um, to be advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise</td>
<td>Past monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. monendī, of advising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. monendō, for advising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. monendum, advising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. monendū, by advising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supine</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc. monitum, to advise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. monitū, to advise, in the advising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Third Conjugation. Ė-Verbs. *rego*

**Principal Parts** *rego*, *regere*, *rēxi*, *rēctus*

**Pres. Stem** *rego*  **Perf. Stem** *rēx*  **Part. Stem** *rēct-

### Active

#### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I rule, etc.</th>
<th>I am ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rego</em></td>
<td><em>rēgor</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regis</em></td>
<td><em>rēgeris</em> , -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regit</em></td>
<td><em>rēgitur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Descriptive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was ruling, etc.</th>
<th>I was ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>regēbam</em></td>
<td><em>rēgebā'mus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regēbas</em></td>
<td><em>rēgebā'tis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regēbat</em></td>
<td><em>rēgebant</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall rule, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>regam</em></td>
<td><em>rēgar</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>regēs</em></td>
<td><em>rēgēris</em> , -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>reget</em></td>
<td><em>rēgētur</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxi</em></td>
<td><em>rēximus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxisti</em></td>
<td><em>rēxistis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxit</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērunt, -re</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I had been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxeram</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērāmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerās</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērātis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerat</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērant</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerō</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērīmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxeris</em></td>
<td><em>rēxēritis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>rēxerit</em></td>
<td><em>rēxērint</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## FORMS

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regāmus</td>
<td>regar</td>
<td>regāmur</td>
<td>regāris, -re</td>
<td>regāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regās</td>
<td>regātis</td>
<td>regāris, -re</td>
<td>regātur</td>
<td>regātis, -re</td>
<td>regantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regat</td>
<td>regant</td>
<td>regēris, -re</td>
<td>regētur</td>
<td>regēris, -re</td>
<td>regērēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgerem</td>
<td>rēgerēmus</td>
<td>reger</td>
<td>regerēmur</td>
<td>rēgerētis</td>
<td>regerērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgerēs</td>
<td>rēgerētis</td>
<td>regerētis</td>
<td>regerētur</td>
<td>rēgerētis</td>
<td>regerētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgeret</td>
<td>rēgerent</td>
<td>rēgerent</td>
<td>rēgerentur</td>
<td>rēgerent</td>
<td>rēgerentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēxissemus</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisse</td>
<td>rēxissettis</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisset</td>
<td>rēxissent</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxissem</td>
<td>rēxissemus</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
<td>rēctus, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisse</td>
<td>rēxissettis</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
<td>rēcti, -ae, -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxisset</td>
<td>rēxissent</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
<td>rēctis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rege, rule thou</td>
<td>regere, be thou ruled</td>
<td>regimini, be ye ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regite, rule ye</td>
<td>regiter, thou shalt be ruled</td>
<td>regitor, he shall be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### FUTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regitō, thou shalt rule</td>
<td>regitor, thou shalt be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitō, he shall rule</td>
<td>regitor, he shall be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitōte, ye shall rule</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reguntō, they shall rule</td>
<td>reguntor, they shall be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. regere, to rule</td>
<td>regē, to be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled</td>
<td>rēctus, -a, -um esse, to have been</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be</td>
<td>rēctum īri, to be about to be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. regēns, -entis, ruling</td>
<td>Pres. regendus, -a, -um, to be ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
<td>Fut. rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>regendī, of ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regendūm, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regendūm, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>regendūm, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>regendī, of ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regendūm, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs dicō, ducō, facīō, and ferō are dic, duc, fac, and fer.
### Latin Grammar

#### 35. Fourth Conjugation. Ī-Verbs. **Audiō**

**Principal Parts** audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. Stem</th>
<th>Perf. Stem</th>
<th>Part. Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audi-</td>
<td>audīv-</td>
<td>audit-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Active

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I hear, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>I am heard, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audiōmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audiōris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiōtur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Descriptive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>I was hearing, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I was heard, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>I shall hear, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I shall be heard, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiām</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiēt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>I have heard, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I have been heard, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audiūmimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audīvistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīvērant, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>I had heard, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I had been heard, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēveram</td>
<td>audiēverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēverās</td>
<td>audiēverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēverat</td>
<td>audiēverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><em>I shall have heard, etc.</em></th>
<th><em>I shall have been heard, etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēverō</td>
<td>audiēverimimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēveris</td>
<td>audiēveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēverit</td>
<td>audiēverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FORMS

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audiam</th>
<th>Audiamus</th>
<th>Audiar</th>
<th>Audiamur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audias</td>
<td>Audiatis</td>
<td>Audiaris, -re</td>
<td>Audiamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiat</td>
<td>Audiant</td>
<td>Audiatur</td>
<td>Audiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audirem</th>
<th>Audiremus</th>
<th>Audirer</th>
<th>Audiremur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audires</td>
<td>Audiretis</td>
<td>Audireris, -re</td>
<td>Audiremini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiret</td>
<td>Audirent</td>
<td>Audiretur</td>
<td>Audirentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audiverim</th>
<th>Audiverimus</th>
<th>Auditus, sim</th>
<th>Auditi, sīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audiveris</td>
<td>Audiveritis</td>
<td>-a, -um sīs</td>
<td>-ae, -a sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiverit</td>
<td>Audiverint</td>
<td>-ae, -a sit</td>
<td>-ae, -a sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audivissem</th>
<th>Audivissēmus</th>
<th>Auditus, essēmus</th>
<th>Auditi, essēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audivisses</td>
<td>Audivissētis</td>
<td>-a, -um essēs</td>
<td>-ae, -a essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audivisset</td>
<td>Audivissent</td>
<td>-ae, -a esset</td>
<td>-ae, -a essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audī, hear thou</th>
<th>Audître, be thou heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audīte, hear ye</td>
<td>Audimini, be ye heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audītō, thou shalt hear</th>
<th>Auditor, thou shalt be heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audītō, he shall hear</td>
<td>Auditor, he shall be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audītōte, ye shall hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audīuntō, they shall hear</td>
<td>audiuntor, they shall be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Audire, to hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>Audivisse, to have heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>audītūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>audiēns, -entis, hearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>audiēndus, -a, -um, to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>audiēndī, of hearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>audiēndō, for hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>audiēndum, hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>audiēndum, hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>audiēndō, by hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUPINE (Active Voice)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>audiēnum, to hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>audiēndū, to hear, in the hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Latin Grammar

#### 36. Third Conjugation. Verbs in -īō. **Capiō**

**Principal Parts** capiō, capere, cēpi, captus  
**Pres. Stem** cape-  
**Perf. Stem** cēp-  
**Part. Stem** capt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>ca'pior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>ca'peris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>ca'pitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Descriptive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>ca'piē'bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>ca'piēbā'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
<td>ca'piēbā'tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>ca'piar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>ca'piē'ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>ca'piē'tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**  
cēpi, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.

**Past Perfect**  
cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.

**Future Perfect**  
cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.

**Subjunctive**  
**Present**  
capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.

**Past**  
caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.

**Perfect**  
cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. captus, -a, -um sim, sis, sit, etc.

**Past Perfect**  
cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. captus, -a, -um essem, essēs, esset, etc.

**Imperative**  
**Present**  
2d Pers. cape capite capere capimini
FORMS

FUTURE

2d Pers. capitō capitōte capitor capitōtō
3d Pers. capitō capiuntō capitor capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres. capere capi
Perf. cēpisse captus, -a, -um esse
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um esse captum īri

PARTICIPLES

Pres. capiēns, -ientis
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um
Past captūrus, -a, -um

GERUND

Gen. capiendī
etc.

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. captum
Abl. captū

37. DEPONENT VERBS

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{I.} & \quad \text{hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge} \\
\text{II.} & \quad \text{vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear} \\
\text{III.} & \quad \text{sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow} \\
\text{IV.} & \quad \text{partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide}
\end{align*}
\]

Note. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -īo verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

Pres. hortor vereor sequor partior
hortāris, -re verēris, -re sequeris, -re partīris, -re
hortātur verētur sequitur partitūr
hortāmur verēmur sequimur partīmur
hortāmini verēmini sequiminī partīminī
hortantur verentur sequuntur partianturtur
P.D. hortābar verēbar sequēbar partiēbar
Fut. hortābor verēbor sequar partiar
Perf. hortātus sum veritus sum secūtus sum partītus sum
P. P. hortātus eram veritus eram secūtus eram partītus eram
F. P. hortātus erō veritus erō secūtus erō partītus erō
LATIN GRAMMAR

Subjunctive

Pres. horter verear sequar partiar
Past hortārer verērer sequerer partīrer
Perf. hortātus sim veritus sim secūtus sim partītus sim
P. P. hortātus essem veritus essem secūtus essem partītus essem

Imperative

Pres. hortāre verēre sequere partīre
Fut. hortātor verētor sequitor partītor

Infinitive

Pres. hortāri verēri sequī partīri
Perf. hortātus esse veritus esse secūtus esse partītus esse
Fut. *hortātūrus esse *veritūrus esse *secūtūrus esse *partītūrus esse

Participles

Pres. *hortāns *verēns *sequēns *partiēns
Fut. *hortātūrus *veritūrus *secūtūrus *partītūrus
Past hortātus veritus secūtus partītus
Ger. hortandus verendus sequendus partiendus

Gerund

*hortandī, etc. *verendī, etc. *sequendī, etc. *partiendī, etc.

Supine

*hortātum, -tū *veritum, -tū *secūtum, -tū *partītum, -tū

38. I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation:

Indicative

Pres. amātūrus sum, I am about to love
Past Descr. amātūrus eram, I was about to love
Fut. amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love
Perf. amātūrus fui, I have been, was, about to love
Past Perf. amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love
Fut. Perf. amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love

Subjunctive

Pres. amātūrus sim
Past amātūrus essem
Perf. amātūrus fuerim
Past Perf. amātūrus fuissem
**FORMS**

**INFINITIVE**

| Pres. | amātūrus esse, to be about to love |
| PERF. | amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love |

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

**INDICATIVE**

| Pres. | amandus sum, I am to be, must be, loved |
| Past Descr. | amandus eram, I was to be, had to be, loved |
| Fut. | amandus erō, I shall have to be loved |
| Perf. | amandus fui, I was to be, had to be, loved |
| Past Perf. | amandus fueram, I had had to be loved |
| Fut. Perf. | amandus fuerō, I shall have had to be loved |

**SUBJUNCTIVE**

| Pres. | amandus sim |
| Past | amandus essem |
| Perf. | amandus fuerim |
| Past Perf. | amandus fuissem |

**INFINITIVE**

| Pres. | amandus esse, to have to be loved |
| PERF. | amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved |

**IRREGULAR VERBS**

39. sum, am, be

**Principal Parts** sum, esse, fui, futūrus

| Pres. Stem es- | Perf. Stem fu- | Part. Stem fut- |

**Indicative**

**Present**

| SINGULAR | | PLURAL |
| sum, I am | | sumus, we are |
| es, thou art | | estis, you are |
| est, he (she, it) is | | sunt, they are |

**Past Descriptive**

| eram, I was | | erāmus, we were |
| erās, thou wast | | erātis, you were |
| erat, he was | | erant, they were |
Latin Grammar

Future

erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be
erimus, we shall be
critis, you will be
erunt, they will be

Perfect

fuī, I have been, was
fuisti, thou hast been, wast
fuit, he has been, was
fuimus, we have been, were
fuistis, you have been, were
fuērunt, they have been, were

Past Perfect

fueram, I had been
fuerās, thou hadst been
fuerat, he had been
fuerāmus, we had been
fuerātis, you had been
fuerant, they had been

Future Perfect

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, thou wilt have been
fuerit, he will have been
fuerimus, we shall have been
fueritis, you will have been
fuerint, they will have been

Subjunctive

Present

Singular | Plural
---|---
sim | simus
sis | sitis
sit | sint

Perfect

fuerim | fuerimus
fueris | fueritis
fuerit | fuerint

Past

Singular | Plural
---|---
essem | essēmus
esssēs | essētis
esset | essent

Past Perfect

fuissem | fuissēmus
fuissent | fuissētis

Imperative

Present

2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou
2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye

Future

2d Pers. Sing. estō, thou shalt be
3d Pers. Sing. estō, he shall be
2d Pers. Plur. estōte, ye shall be
3d Pers. Plur. suntō, they shall be

Infinitive

Pres. esse, to be
Perf. fuisse, to have been
Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore,
      to be about to be

Participle

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be
FORMS

40. possum, be able, can

Principal Parts possum, posse, potuī, ——

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td>pos'sumus</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>possĭ'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potes</td>
<td>potest'tis</td>
<td>possīs</td>
<td>possĭ'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>potest</td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>possint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>possē'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>poterimus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>potuimus</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
<td>potuerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>potuerāmus</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
<td>potuisse'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
<td>poterimus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive

Pres. posse

Participle

Pres. potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

41. prósum, benefit

Principal Parts prósum, pródesse, prófuī, prófutūrus

Pres. Stem pródes-     Perf. Stem prófu-   Part. Stem prófut-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>prósum</td>
<td>pró'sumus</td>
<td>prósim</td>
<td>prósi'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pródes</td>
<td>pródes'tis</td>
<td>prósīs</td>
<td>prósi'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pródest</td>
<td>prósunt</td>
<td>prósit</td>
<td>prósint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>próderam</td>
<td>próderāmus</td>
<td>pródessem</td>
<td>prodessē'mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>próderō</td>
<td>próderimus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>prófuī</td>
<td>prófuimus</td>
<td>prófuerim</td>
<td>prófuerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>prófuieram</td>
<td>prófuierāmus</td>
<td>prófiussem</td>
<td>prófuissēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>prófuierō</td>
<td>prófuierimus</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperative

Pres. 2d Pers. pródes, pródeste     Fut. 2d Pers. pródestō, pródestōte

Infinitive

Pres. pródesse     Perf. prófuiisse     Fut. prófutūrus, -a, -um esse

Future Participle prófutūrus, -a, -um
42. Principal Parts

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{volò, velle, volui,} & \quad \text{be willing, will, wish} \\
nölò, nölle, nölui, & \quad \text{be unwilling, will not}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
mölò, mölle, mölui, & \quad \text{be more willing, prefer}
\end{align*}
\]

Nölò and mölò are compounds of volò. Nölò is for ne (not) + volò, and mölò for mà (from magis, more) + volò. The second person vis is from a different root.

### Indicative

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>volò</th>
<th>nölò</th>
<th>mölò</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nön vis</td>
<td>mävís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volt</td>
<td>nön volt</td>
<td>mävolt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>volumus</th>
<th>nölumus</th>
<th>mälumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nön vultis</td>
<td>mävul’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nölunt</td>
<td>mälunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>volēbam</th>
<th>nölēbam</th>
<th>mälēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volam, volēs, etc.</td>
<td>nölam, nölēs, etc.</td>
<td>mālam, mālēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nölui</td>
<td>māluí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nölueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nöluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>volumus</th>
<th>nölumus</th>
<th>mälumus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nön vultis</td>
<td>mävul’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nölunt</td>
<td>mälunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

#### Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>velim</th>
<th>nölim</th>
<th>mälim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velis</td>
<td>nölis</td>
<td>mälis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>nölit</td>
<td>mälit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>velí‘mus</th>
<th>nölí‘mus</th>
<th>mäli‘mus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velí‘tis</td>
<td>nölí‘tis</td>
<td>mäli‘tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nölint</td>
<td>mälint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>vellem</th>
<th>nöllem</th>
<th>mällem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nöluerim</td>
<td>mäluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nöluissem</td>
<td>mäluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>nöli</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nölite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nölitō, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 43. **ferō, bear, carry, endure**

**Principal Parts**
- *Pres. stem*: fer-
- *Perf. stem*: tul-
- *Part. stem*: lāt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>ferō, ferimus</td>
<td>feror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers, fertis</td>
<td>ferris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert, ferunt</td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P. D.</strong></td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
<td>ferar, ferēris, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P. P.</strong></td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um ērō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>feram, ferās, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>ferrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>tulerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P. P.</strong></td>
<td>tulissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres. 2d Pers.</strong></td>
<td>fer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. 2d Pers.</strong></td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3d Pers.</strong></td>
<td>fertō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Passives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferri</td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participles</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>ferēns, -entis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>lātūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>lātus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Latin Grammar

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>ferendi</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>ferendum</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>látum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>látū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Principal Parts

- **eō**, go
- Pres. Stem **i-**
- Perf. stem **i- or iv-**
- Part. Stem **it-**

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>eō</th>
<th>īmus</th>
<th>eam</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>ī</th>
<th>ite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īs</td>
<td>ītis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ibam</th>
<th>īrem</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>ītō</th>
<th>ītōte</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Fut.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ībō</th>
<th></th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
<th>ītō</th>
<th>euntō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Perf.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ī (īvī)</th>
<th>ierim (īverim)</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
<th>ītō</th>
<th>euntō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**P. P.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ieram (īveram)</th>
<th>īssem (īvissem)</th>
<th>3d Pers.</th>
<th>ītō</th>
<th>euntō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**F. P.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ierō (īverō)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>īre</th>
<th>īens, gen. euntis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>īsse (īvisse)</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ī</th>
<th>ite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles**

- Pres. iěns, gen. euntis
- Fut. itūrus, -a, -um
- Ger. eundum

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>eundī</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>eundum</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>itum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eundō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eundō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>itū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes

- The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as **ītur, itum est,** etc.
- In the perfect system the forms with **v** are very rare.

#### 45. fīō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen

**Principal Parts** fīō, fieri, factus sum

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>fīō</th>
<th>fiam</th>
<th>2d Pers.</th>
<th>fī</th>
<th>fite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>fīebam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fiam, fiēs, etc.</td>
<td>fierem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| | | | | | |
### I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

#### Indicative

| Perf. | coepī, began | meminī, remember |
| P. P. | coeperam    | meminineram      |
| F. P. | coeperō     | memininerō       |

#### Subjunctive

| Perf. | coeperim    | meminerim       |
| P. P. | coepissem  | meminissem      |

#### Imperative

| Singular | mementō        |
| Plural   | mementōte     |

#### Infinitive

| Perf. | coepisse  | meminisse       |
| Fut.  | coepētūrus esse | ödisse       |

### II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

#### Indicative

| Pres. | licet, is permitted |
| Past  | licēbat            |
| Fut.  | licēbit            |
| Perf. | licuit (licitum est) |
| P. P. | licuerat (licitum erat) |
| F. P. | licuerit (licitum erit) |

#### Subjunctive

| liceat  |
| licēret |

#### Infinitive

licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse
B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative:

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement:
   Caesar venit, Caesar is coming

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question:
   venitne Caesar? is Caesar coming?

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command:
   veni, Caesar, come, Caesar

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate:

I. Subject. The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said:

   Caesar respondit, Caesar made answer; responditne Caesar? did Caesar make answer?

   In both of these sentences Caesar is the subject.

a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb:
   scribit, he writes; scribunt, they write; scribimus, we write

b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun:
   haec pericere est facile, to accomplish these things is easy; accidit ut plēna lūna esset, it happened that the moon was full
II. **Predicate.** The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

\[ \text{lūna est plēna, the moon is full} \]

\textit{a.} The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb \textit{sum} or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

\[ \text{Pisō erat cōnsul, Piso was consul;} \ \text{tū es ille, you are he;} \ \text{oppidum erat magnum, the town was large} \]

\textit{b.} The verb \textit{sum}, combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the \textit{copula}, that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

\[ \text{Diviciācus appellātur amīcus, Diviciacus is called friend} \]

49. **Transitive Verb.** A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

\[ \text{imperātōrem videō, I see the general} \]

50. **Intransitive Verb.** An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

\[ \text{imperātor venit, the general is coming} \]

51. **Phrase.** A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

\[ \text{vir erat magnae virtūtis, he was a man of great courage;} \ \text{omnibus precibus ōrābant, they implored with all (manner of) entreaties} \]

In these sentences \textit{magnae virtūtis} and \textit{omnibus precibus} are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. **Direct Object.** The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

\[ \text{Caesar eum incūsat, Cæsar upbraids him} \]

\[ \text{Helvētiī aiciem ĭnstruxērunt, the Helvetii drew up a line of battle} \]
53. Indirect Object. The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

\[ \text{agros Haeduis dat, he gives fields to the Haeudi} \]

54. Appositive. A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

\[ \text{Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, venit, Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came} \]

Note. A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. Forms of Sentences. In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

\[ \text{Caesar venit, Caesar comes} \]

b. A compound sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

\[ \text{Caesar venit et hostes fugerunt, Caesar came, and the enemy fled} \]

c. A complex sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

\[ \text{cum Caesar venisset, hostes fugerunt, when Caesar had come, the enemy fled} \]

56. Clause. A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, \( \text{Caesar venit, hostes fugerunt, cum Caesar venisset} \), is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

\[ \text{cum Caesar venisset, hostes fugerunt, when Caesar had come, the enemy fled; here cum Caesar venisset is the subordinate clause and hostes fugerunt is the main clause} \]
b. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. a):

Caesar vēnīt et hostēs fūgērunt, Cēsar came and the enemy fled;
here both clauses are coördinate

57. Modifiers. A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

miles fōrtis ācriter pugnāt, the brave soldier fights fiercely; the words fōrtis and ācriter modify the subject and predicate respectively
imperātor bonō animō in urbem vēnīt, a general of great courage has come into the city; the phrases bonō animō and in urbem modify the subject and predicate respectively
imperātor quem nōmināvī pontem aedificāvit ut flūmen trānsīret, the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river; the clauses quem nōmināvī and ut flūmen trānsīret modify the subject and predicate respectively

AGREEMENT

NOUNS

58. Predicate or Appositive. A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

Ariovistus erat rēx, Ariovistus was king
Labiēnum, lēgātum, mīsit, he sent Labienus, the lieutenant

ADJECTIVES

59. General Rule. Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

iter est longum, the journey is long
mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung
Gallia est dīvisa, Gaul is divided
60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb sum or its equivalent (§ 48. II. a), it is called a predicate adjective:

Suēbōrum ġēns est longē maxima et bellicōssissima Germānōrum omnium, *the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans*

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an attributive adjective:

prīma legiō in castra vēnit, *the first legion came into camp*

**Agreement with Two or More Nouns**

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by et, -que, or atque (ac), a predicate adjective is in the plural number, and an attributive adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun.

dominus et servus sunt dissimilēs, *master and slave are unlike*

bonus rēx et rēgīna, *the good king and queen*

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a predicate adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life; and an attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun:

pater et māter sunt cārī, *father and mother are dear*

gladius et scūtum sunt magna, *the sword and shield are large*

cārus pater et māter

pater et māter cāra *the dear father and mother*

**Note.** If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine:

rēx et libera cīvitās sunt inimīca, *a king and a free state are incompatible*

rēx et classis sunt tūtī, *the king and the fleet are safe*
PRONOUNS

64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives (§ 59):

hī sunt extrā prōvinciam primī, these are the first beyond the province
hoc proelium factum est, this battle was fought

a. Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

lēgātī qui convocāti erant convēnērunt, the envoys who had been
summoned assembled
lēgātī quōs convocāverat convēnērunt, the envoys whom he had
summoned assembled

Note. When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

Rhēnus, quod est flūmen Gallicum, the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream

VERBS

65. General Rule. Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

Orgetorix deligitur, Orgetorix is chosen
Helvētī oppida incendunt, the Helvetii burn their towns

Note. A finite verb is one having person and number.

a. A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this
magna multitūdō vēnērunt, a great multitude came

66. Impersonal Verbs. When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in -um:

pugnātūr, fighting is carried on; pugnātum est, fighting was carried on
67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by et, -que, or atque (ac) the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

summa alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi innāta est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired

oppidum et vicus incenduntur, the town and village are burned

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

Matrona et Sēquana dividit etc., the Marne and Seine divide etc.,

B. G. I. 1

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor the verb is in the singular number:

neque imperātor neque lēgātus erat timidus, neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

Caesar respondit, Caesar replies

Labiēnus erat lēgātus Labienus was a lieutenant

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre, Cæsar daily demanded grain,

B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.
73. **Possessive Genitive.** A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner:

> inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, B. G. I. 6

*a.* The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate:

> duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, Ariovistus had two wives, B. G. I. 53

74. **Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns:**

> nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō (instead of meī) iūre impeditīri, it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people, B. G. I. 36

75. **Subjective and Objective Genitive.** A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the subject or the object of the action or feeling denoted by the noun:

*a.* timor militum tantus erat ut fugerent, the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled.  

Here the phrase timor militum means that the soldiers fear; hence militum, as the subject of the feeling expressed by timor, is a subjective genitive.

Cf. patrum nostrōrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers, B. G. II. 4

*b.* timor militum hostēs dēturrīt, the (their) fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back.

Here the phrase timor militum means that the soldiers are feared; hence militum, as the object of the feeling expressed by timor, is an objective genitive.

Cf. prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populi Rōmānī, for the ancient wrongs of (inflicted by) the Helvetii upon the Roman people, B. G. I. 30

In this sentence Helvētiōrum is a subjective genitive, populi Rōmānī is an objective genitive.
76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

\[ \text{tres partēs cōpiārum trādūxērunt, they led across three quarters (parts)} \]
of their forces

a. The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):

\[ \text{quantum habeat in sē bonī cōnstantia, how much advantage (of good)} \]
firmness has, B. G. I. 40

\[ \text{ nisi quid erit auxīlī, unless there shall be some (of) aid, B. G. I. 31 } \]
satis esse causae arbitrābātur, he thought there was sufficient reason
( enough of reason), B. G. I. 19

Exception. Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) and the indefinite pronoun quidam usually take the ablative with ē (ex) instead of the partitive genitive:

\[ \text{ūnus ex eīs, one of those; quidam ex mīlitibus, one of the soldiers} \]

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. a):

\[ \text{vir et cōnsīlī magnī et virtūtīs, a man of (both) great discretion and} \]
courage, B. G. III. 5

a. Genitive of Description as Predicate. The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:

\[ \text{est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, for this is a Gallic custom,} \]
B. G. IV. 5

\[ \text{flūminis erat altītūdō pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was} \]
about three feet, B. G. II. 18

b. The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):

\[ \text{fossam obdūxīt circiter passuum quadrīngentōrum, he extended a ditch} \]
of about four hundred paces, B. G. II. 8
78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives tanti, quanti, pluris, and minonis are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

*tanti eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, he pointed out that his good
will was of so great value in his sight (apud sē); B. G. I. 20*

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

*aciem īnstruxit legiōnum quattuor, he drew up a line of battle of four
terms, B. G. I. 24*

**Genitive with Adjectives**

80. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, also participles in -ns used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

*hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperīti, men uncivilized and
unacquainted with our customs, B. G. IV. 22*

*reī militāris perītissimus, thoroughly skilled in military practice,
B. G. I. 21*

*vir amāns reī pūblicae, a man fond of the republic*

**Genitive with Verbs**

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. Verbs of Memory. With reminīscor, remember, and oblivīscor, forget:

*quod si veteris contumēliae obliviscī velim, but if I should be willing
to forget the old affront, B. G. I. 14*

*reminiscere veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī, remember the former
misfortune of the Roman people, B. G. I. 13*

b. Verbs of Feeling. With paenītēt, repent, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

*cōnsilīorum eōs paenītēt, they repent of their plans (lit. it repents them
of their plans), cf. B. G. IV. 5*
c. With the verb interest, it concerns:

docet quantō opere reī pūblicae intersit, he shows how greatly it
concerns the common welfare, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb potior, get possession of, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. a):

tōtius Galliae potiri, to get possession of the whole of Gaul, B. G. I. 3

DATIVE

82. Dative of Indirect Object. The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that to which or for which anything is or is done. It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object:

eī filiam suam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3

83. Dative with Special Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning to favor, please, help, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, threaten, injure, envy, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare; also with temperō meaning to refrain:

civitāti persuāsit, he persuaded the state, B. G. I. 2
prīma aciēs victis resīstit, the first line resists the vanquished,
cf. B. G. I. 25

Note. Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is to give a command to, to grant pardon to, to be obedient to, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice:

mihi quidem persuādētur, I am indeed persuaded (lit. it is persuaded to me), B. G. I. 40

84. Dative with Compounds. The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dé, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes circum:
Iccius, qui tum oppido praeerat, Iccius, who was then in command of the town, B.G. II. 6

Note. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

cursī civitāts calamitātem populō intulerat, part of the state had brought disaster on the people, B.G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of bene and satis:

sē Allobrogesi satisfaciētis, if you will make amends to the Allobroges, B.G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnes in fugā sibi praeсидium pōnēbant, all sought safety for themselves in flight, cf. B.G. II. 11

tōtius bellī imperium sibi postulant, they demand for themselves the command of the entire war, B.G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying to take away from, particularly compounds of ab, dē, and ex, take the dative:

scūtō militī dētrāctō, the shield being snatched from a soldier, B.G. II. 25

Rōmānī Haeduīs libertātem ēripient, the Romans will take away liberty from the Hāeduī, cf. B.G. I. 17

Note. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of advantage or disadvantage to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote agency; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

Sēquaniōs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, B.G. I. 32

omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls, B.G. I. 31
88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb *sum* to denote *possession*:

*in mūro cōnsistentē potestās erat nūlli, no one was able to keep his footing on the wall* (lit. the possibility was to no one), B. G. II. 6

*nūllus aditus est ad ēōs mercātōrībus, traders have no access to them* (lit. no access to them is to the traders), B. G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (*to them*) is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, while the idea of possession (*to the traders*) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote *purpose* or *end*, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85):

*pollīcitus est sībi ēam rem cūrae futūram, he promised that he would look out for that matter* (lit. that matter should be for a care to himself), B. G. I. 33

*novissimīs praesidīō erant, they were (for) a protection to the rear*, B. G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting *nearness, likeness, fitness, service*, and their opposites:

*finitimī Belgīs erant, they were adjacent to the Belgoz*, B. G. II. 2

*castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, he chose a place suitable for the camp*, B. G. I. 49

*proximī Gallīae sunt, they are nearest to Gaul*, cf. B. G. II. 3

### ACCUSATIVE

91. Direct Object. The *direct object* of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

*legātōs dē pāce misērunt, they sent envoys in regard to peace*, B. G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative:

*nostrōs nōn esse ōferiōrēs intellēxit, he found that our men were not inferior*, B. G. II. 8

Note. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).
93. Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching may be followed by two accusatives—one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

*Caesar* Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, *Caesar* demanded grain of the *Haedui*, B.G. I.16

Note. This construction is found with ērō, poscō, rogō, flāgitō, doceō, and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of rogō and of verbs of teaching and a few others the accusative of the *person* becomes the subject, and the accusative of the *thing* is retained:

**Active:** agrōs Gallōs rogāvit, he asked the Gauls for territory

**Passive:** Gallī agrōs rogātī sunt, the Gauls were asked for territory

94. Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the *adjunct accusative*:

*Eum vergobretum appellant Haedui, the Haedui call him vergobretus,*

cf. B.G. I.16

*Ariovistum amīcum appellant, they call Ariovistus friend*

Note. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

*Ariovistus amīcus appellātur, Ariovistus is called friend*

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with *trāns* may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

*tres partēs cōpiārum Helvētii id flūmen trādūxerant, the Helvetii had led three fourths of their forces across that river,* cf. B.G. I.12

Note. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

*Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt, the Belgae were led across the Rhine,*

cf. B.G. II.4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes *duration of time and extent of space*:
haec magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, they continued to do this during a great part of the summer, B.G. III. 12
finēs in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL patēbant, the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles, cf. B.G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place whither is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition ad or in; but with names of towns and the word domus, home, the preposition is omitted:

*in Italiam profectus est, he set out for Italy, B.G. II. 35
Rōmam ad senātum vēnī, I came to Rome to the senate*
*Bibracte ire contendit, he hastened (to go) to Bibracte, B.G. I. 23
domum suam quisque revertitur, each returns to his home, cf. B.G. II. 10*

Note. Ad is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is to the neighborhood of instead of to:

*ad Genāvam pervēnit, he came to (the vicinity of) Geneva, B.G. I. 7*

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

*id eis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this course (lit. he persuaded this (course) to them), B.G. I. 2*

In this sentence id, the object of persuāsit, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

*nihil saxa timēbant, they did not fear the rocks at all, cf. B.G. III. 13
maximam partem lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk, B.G. IV. 1*

In these sentences nihil and partem are used adverbially.
VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in -us of the second declension, which have the vocative in -e:

\[ \text{ibi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs tū, Caesar, esse volueris, the Helvētiī will be (in the place) where you, Caesar, shall have wished them to be, B.G. I. 13} \]

\[ \text{et tū quoque, Brūte! and thou too, Brūtus!} \]

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex, is used to denote separation:

\[ \text{hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant, they kept the enemy from battle, cf. B.G. IV. 34} \]

\[ \text{proelīō supersedēre statuit, he decided to hold aloof from battle, B.G. II. 8} \]

a. When the place from which is the name of a town or the word domus, home, the ablative is used without a preposition:

\[ \text{erant itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were two routes by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6} \]

Note. When the idea is not directly out of or from a town, but from the neighborhood of it, the preposition ab is used:

\[ \text{ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit, he came from (the vicinity of) Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii, B.G. I. 10} \]

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without ab or ex, to denote the origin from which anything is derived:

\[ \text{initium ortum est ab Ambiōriē, the beginning was made by (lit. arose from) Ambiōriēx, B.G. V. 25} \]

\[ \text{Pisō amplissimō genere nātus est, Piso was born of most distinguished family, cf. B.G. IV. 12} \]
103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with ex or de to denote the material of which anything consists:

naves factae sunt ex robere, the ships were made of oak, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The agent or doer of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with ab or ab:

ab non nullis Gallis sollicitabantur, they were incited by some (of the) Gauls, cf. B. G. II. 1

Note. When the agent is considered as a means to an end, the accusative with per is used:

per tres potentiores populos Galliae potiri posse sperant, through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without quam is regularly followed by the ablative:

celerius omnium opinione venit, he came more quickly than any one had expected (lit. than the expectation of all), cf. B. G. II. 3

Note 1. The comparative may, however, be followed by quam, and the two things compared are then put in the same case:

iustitia est melior quam laus, justice is better than praise

Note 2. After the comparatives plus, minus, amplius, and longius, without quam, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative:

aditus in latitudinem non amplius pedum CC relinquebatur, an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left (lit. an approach of two hundred feet—not more), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence pedum is the genitive of measure (§ 77. b), the construction it would have if amplius were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the means or instrument of an action:

equitatum suo sumptu alit, he maintains the cavalry at (by means of) his own expense, cf. B. G. I. 18

a. The ablative of means is used to denote the way by which:

eodem itinere contendit, he hastened by the same route, B. G. I. 21
SYNTAX — NOUNS

107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used:

a. With the verbs útor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor, and their compounds:

Caesar īsdem ducibus úsus est, Caesar employed the same guides, cf. B.G. II. 7
castrīs nostrī potiti sunt, our men got possession of the camp, B.G. I. 26
commodīs fruuntur, they enjoy advantages, cf. B.G. III. 22

Note. Potior may take the genitive (§ 81. d).

b. With the verbs fidō, cōnfidō, nītor, and the verbal adjective frētus:
eīs Crassus nōn multum cōnfidēbat, Crassus placed little reliance in these, cf. B.G. III. 25
Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriēs frētī sunt, the Sotiates relied on their former victories, cf. B.G. III. 21

c. With opus est and úsus est, there is need:

opus factō est, there is need of action, cf. B.G. I. 42

Note. Opus may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative:
sī quid mihi opus est, if I need anything

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of buying and selling the price is expressed by the ablative:

parvō pretiō redēmpta, bought in at a low price, B.G. I. 18

Note. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express cause:

Dumnorīx grātiā plūrimum poterat, Dumnorix had great power because of his influence, B.G. I. 9

Note. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake, regularly follow a noun in the genitive:

huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power, B.G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with cum, sometimes with both:
nudō corpore pugnant, *they fight with body unprotected*, cf. B.G. I. 25
mognō cum strepitū ēgressī sunt, *they went forth with great din*, cf. B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that *in accordance with* which anything is, or is done, often with *ex* or *de*:

īnstitūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, *Caesar led out his forces according to his custom*, B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The *circumstance* or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative:

eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī nōn poterant, *they could not accomplish that under our sway*, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote *accompaniment*, regularly with *cum*:

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, *I know with how great danger I did that*, B.G. I. 17

cum puerīs mulieribusque, *with children and women*, B.G. II. 28

*Note.* With some military expressions *cum* may be omitted; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective:

Caesar subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiās, *Caesar followed with all his forces*, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of contention and the like require *cum*:

*cum Germānīs contendunt, they fight with the Germans*, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*:

alterum iter erat multō facilius, *the other route was much easier* (lit. easier by much), cf. B.G. I. 6

ā milībus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, *about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans* (lit. off (ā) by two miles), B.G. V. 32. The preposition ā is here used as an adverb
115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

- *linguā inter sē differunt, they differ from one another in language*, B. G. I. 1
- *infirmiōrēs animō, dispirited (lit. weaker in respect to courage)*, B. G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

- *hominēs inimicō animō, men of unfriendly disposition*, B. G. I. 7

  a. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

  1. Statements of *measure, number, time, and space* are in the genitive.

  2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

- *mūrum pedum sēdecim perdūcit, he extended a wall (of) sixteen feet*, B. G. I. 8
- *Germāni ingenti magnitūdine corporum sunt, the Germans are of great size of body*, cf. B. G. I. 39

  b. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. *magnitūdine* in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though*, etc.

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

  a. Condition:

- *ā quibus nōs dēfendere, trādītīs armīs, nōn poterimūs, from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms (lit. our arms having been surrendered)*, B. G. II. 31
b. Time:

initā aëstāte Q. Pedium mīsit, in the beginning of summer (lit. summer having been begun) he sent Quintus Pedius, B.G. II. 2

c. Cause:

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, depopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre, they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns (lit. their fields having been laid waste), B.G. I. 11

d. Concession:

turribus excitātīs, tamen hās altītūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them (lit. towers having been erected), B.G. III. 14

e. Circumstance:

ea omnia, inscientibus i̇psīs, fēcerat, he had done all those things without their knowledge (lit. they being unaware), cf. B.G. I. 19

f. Means:

nāvibus i̇unctīs, cōnātī sunt, they tried by means of joining boats (lit. boats having been joined), cf. B.G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of sum, which is lacking in Latin:

Sēquanīs invītīs, īre nōn poterant, if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go (lit. the Sequani (being) unwilling), B.G. I. 9

ea omnia, mē invītō, fēcisti, you have done all those things against my will (lit. I (being) unwilling), cf. B.G. I. 19

is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsonē cōnsulibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (lit. Messala and Piso (being) consuls), B.G. I. 2
119. Ablative of Time. The time at which or within which is expressed by the ablative:

*eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat*, at that time he held the chief position in the state, B.G. I. 3

*paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliāe finibus pellentur*, within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul, B.G. I. 31

Note. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96):

*eā tōtā noctē continentēr iērunt*, they marched uninterruptedly during that entire night, B.G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in. Names of towns omit the preposition:

*in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt*, they wage war in the territories of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 1

*proelium Philippīs factum est*, the battle was fought at Philippi

a. The so-called locative case is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also *domī, at home*. The locative case ends in -ae in the first declension, and in -i in the second, being just like the genitive singular:

*conciliō Gallōrum Samarobrivae perāctō, after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samarobrива, B.G. V. 24*

*Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātūs, Caesar after tarrying several days at Avaricum, B.G. VII. 32*

*domī nihil erat, there was nothing at home, B.G. I. 28*

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives locō, locīs, parte, partibus, when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive:

*aliēnō locō proelium committunt*, they join battle in an unfavorable place, B.G. I. 15

Note 1. The way by which is put in the ablative case without a preposition:

*frūmentum flūmine Ararī subvexerat*, he had brought grain up the river Saōne, cf. B.G. I. 16

Note 2. For expressions denoting the place from which see § 101. a.
ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees as in English:
altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality:
si quid erat dūrius, if there was any uncommonly hard (task), B.G. I. 48

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality:
mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B. G. I. 6

124. The superlative of an adjective with quam preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality:
quam maximum numerum coemēbant, they purchased the largest number possible, B. G. I. 3

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives medius, ìmus, summus, and reliquus may denote a part of the object described:
in colle mediō aciem įnstrūxit, he drew up a line of battle in the middle of the hill, B. G. I. 24
summus mōns à Labienō tenēbātur, the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, cf. B. G. I. 22

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb:
animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs trīstēs terram intuēri, Caesar noticed that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground, B.G. I. 32

127. Adjectives are often used substantively, that is, like nouns:
nostrī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt, our (men) slew a large number of them, B. G. II. 10
PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, ego, tū, nōs, and vōs, are not used except for emphasis.

\[ \text{ego certē meum officium praestiterō, I, at least, will have done my duty. B.G. IV. 25} \]

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally is (§ 135):

\[ \text{lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ēt dēdidērunt, they sent envoys to Caesar and surrendered to him, B.G. II. 28} \]

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus, agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

\[ \text{puella librōs meōs habet, the girl has my books} \]

Here the possessive, meōs, agrees with librōs, the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, puella, is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, suī, sibi, sē, and its possessive adjective, suus, -a, -um, regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

\[ \text{sē suaque dēdidērunt, they surrendered themselves and their property, B.G. II. 15} \]
133. **Indirect Reflexives.** In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives:

\[ \text{dat negotium Gallis uti sē certiorem faciant, he directs the Gauls to inform him, cf. B.G. II. 2} \]

**Note.** The reflexive, sūi, sibi, sē, refers to the *third person* only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō mē, I praise myself</td>
<td>laudāmus nōs, we praise ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās tē, you praise yourself</td>
<td>laudātis vōs, you praise yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat sē, he praises himself</td>
<td>laudant sē, they praise themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES**

134. **Hic and Ille.** Hic refers to something near; ille to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words *this* and *that*:

\[ \text{mea haec est Gallia, sīcūt illa vestra, this (part of) Gaul is mine, just as that (part) is yours, cf. B.G. I. 44} \]

*a.* When hic and ille are used together, hic generally refers to the latter of two objects, and ille to the former:

\[ \text{hi rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī dōmī remanent, the latter (just mentioned) again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former (mentioned previously) remain at home, B.G. IV. 1} \]

135. **Is.** Is as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either *this* or *that.*

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, her, him, them*):

\[ \text{ēī filiam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B.G. I. 3} \]
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, *ipse*, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

- *sē laudat, he praises himself*; *ipse puerum laudat, he himself praises the boy*

  a. *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):
  - *si quid ipsis ā Caesare opus esset, (he said) if he needed anything from Cāsar (lit. if any need was to himself), B.G. I. 34*

  b. *Ipse* is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:
  - *suā ipsōrum linguā ētuntur, they employ their own language*
  - *suum ipsīus exercitum habet, he has his own army*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

- *Sabinus, cum eis cōpiēs quās ā Caesare accēperat, Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Cāsar, B.G. III. 17*

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

- *Vesontiō, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, B.G. I. 38*

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

- *quōrum per finēs ierant, his imperāvit, he ordered these through whose territories they had gone, B.G. I. 28*
140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:

*quam fæcerat classem iubet convenire*, he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble (lit. what fleet he had etc.), B. G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

*erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent*, there were two ways by which (ways) they could go out from home, B. G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

*qui cognōserent mīsit*, he sent (men) to reconnoiter, B. G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

*qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent etc.*, when these had met him on the way etc., B. G. I. 27

*nōstrī nōn eādem alacritāte ūtēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removēri iussit*, our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. *When Cæsar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed*, B. G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant without designating which one; some of the most common and their uses are:

*a. Quis, some one, any one, some, any, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after sī, nisi, nē, or num; quīdam, a certain one, a certain, is the most definite:*

*sī quis dicit, if anybody says*

*verētur nē quis veniat, he fears that some one may come*

*quīdam ex militibus dīxit, a certain one of the soldiers said*, B. G. I. 42
b. Aliquis, some one, some, is more definite than quis:

aliquis dicit, some one may say

c. Quisquam, any one, and the indefinite adjective ullus, any, are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative:

cēr quisquam iūdicāret? why should any one judge? B.G. I. 40

neque ullā necessitāte continēbantur, nor were they restrained by any necessity, B.G. II. 11

d. Alius, another, and alter, the other (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings:

alius . . . alius, one . . . another

alii . . . alii, some . . . others

alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other

r. Alius used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed:

alius alīā ex nāvī sē adgregābat, they gathered, (one from one ship,) another from another ship, B.G. IV. 26

alīī alīam in partem ferēbantur, they rushed, (some in one direction,) others in another direction, B.G. II. 24

ADVERBS

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest:

se diūtius dūcī intellēxit, he realized that he was being put off too long, B.G. I. 16

plūrimum domī poterat, he was very powerful at home, cf. B.G. I. 20

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

146. The usual negative adverb is non; this is regular with the indicative mood.

a. Non combined with another negative word, as nūllus, makes an indefinite affirmative: non nūlī, some
147. Nē is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

ad haec cōnstitit nē tempus dīmitteret, *he took his stand by these* that *he might not lose time*, B.G. II. 21
quā rē nē committeret, *(he told him) that he should therefore not bring it to pass*, B.G. I. 13

PREPOSITIONS

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. Prepositions with the Accusative. The prepositions used with the accusative are ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, īnfrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, super, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus.

Note. The adjectives propior, proximus, and the adverbs propius, proxime, sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

proximi Rhēnum, *next to the Rhine*; propius tumulum, *nearer the mound*

150. Prepositions with the Ablative. The prepositions used with the ablative are ā (ab, abs), coram, cum, dē, ē (ex), in, prae, prō, sine, sub, tenus.

a. Cum is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

nēmō mēcum sine suā pernicē contendit, *no one has striven with me without his destruction*, B.G. I. 36
hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōnstituerat, *him especially he had decided to keep with him*, B.G. V. 6
proximi sunt Germānīs, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt, *they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war*, B.G. I. 1

Note. In and sub govern both cases. With the accusative they denote *motion toward* a place; with the ablative *rest in* a place:

exercitum sub iugum mittit, *he sends the army under the yoke*
in oppidiō manet, *he remains in the town*
SYNTAX — VERBS

CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. Coördinating Conjunctions. Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as *et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem*, etc.

b. Subordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as *cum, antequam, quod, si, etsi, quamvis*, etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing:

*hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgae are the bravest of all these*, B.G. I. 1

a. Historical Present. The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly:

*ad Galbam accurrunt atque docent etc., they rush up to Galba and point out etc.*, B.G. III. 5

Note. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive 1 Tense. The past descriptive tense is used:

a. To denote an action going on in past time:

*Helvētīi agrōs populābantur, the Helvetii were devastating the fields*, B.G. I. 11

1 The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.
b. In description:
mons altissimus *impendebat*, a very high mountain overhung, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun:
nostrōs *prohibēbant*, *they tried to keep back our men*, B.G. V. 9
sē in proxima oppida *recipiēbant*, *they (regularly) retreated to the nearest town*, B.G. III. 12
suspicābātur, *he was beginning to suspect*, B.G. IV. 31

Note. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future:

*vōbiscum pācem faciam*, *I will make peace with you*, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent:
a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary *have*:

*uti supra dēmōnstrāvimus*, *as I have shown above*, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute):

eō exercitum dūxit, *he led his army thither*, B.G. III. 28

Note. The past participle with *habeō* has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb:

*vectigālia redēmpta habet*, *he has bought up the revenues*, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect¹ Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time:

Helvētīi iam suās cōpiās trādūxerant, *the Helvetii had already led their troops across*, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future:

*ubi cōnstitueris*, *where you shall have determined*, B.G. I. 13

¹ The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:

\[ \text{eāmus (§ 172. a), let us go} \]
\[ \text{nē dēspexerīs (§ 172. c), do not despise} \]

Note. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. Eāmus and dēspexerīs above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past\(^1\) subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:

\[ \text{utinam scriberet (§ 172. e. 2), O that he were writing (now). This implies that the act is not now going on} \]
\[ \text{quid facerem? (§ 172. d), what was I to do?} \]
\[ \text{tum viderēs (§ 172. f), then you might have seen} \]

c. The past perfect\(^1\) subjunctive refers to past time:

\[ \text{utinam scripsisset (§ 172. e. 3), O that he had written (then). This implies that the act was not then performed} \]

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as primary and secondary. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

\(^1\) The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.
The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

**Indicative**

(1) Present
(2) Past descriptive
(1) Future
(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. b)
(2) Past perfect
(1) Future perfect

**Subjunctive**

(1) Present
(2) Past

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

**Indicative**

I ask  
I asked  
I shall ask  
I asked  
I had asked  
I shall have asked

**Subjunctive**

(1) quaeřō  
(2) quaeřēbam  
(1) quaeřam  
(2) quaešivi  
(2) quaešiveram  
(1) quaešiverō

**Indicative**

I ask  
I asked  
I shall ask  
I asked  
I had asked  
I shall have asked

**Subjunctive**

(1) quaeřō  
(2) quaeřēbam  
(1) quaeřam  
(2) quaešivi  
(2) quaešiveram  
(1) quaešiverō

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

**Indicative**

I ask  
I asked  
I shall ask  
I asked  
I had asked  
I shall have asked

**Subjunctive**

(1) quaeřō  
(2) quaeřēbam  
(1) quaeřam  
(2) quaešivi  
(2) quaešiveram

From this use of tenses follows the rule:

162. Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.
163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

a. Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

respondit sī obsidēs dentur sēsē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given, B.G. I. 14

b. The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§ 156. b), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§ 156. a) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

ita didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus, we have been so trained that we strive more by courage, B.G. I. 13

c. A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§ 179), may follow a secondary tense:

temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus dēfuerit, so short was the time that there was no opportunity, B.G. II. 21

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§ 153. a) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

diem dicunt quā die conveniant, they appoint a day on which (day) they shall assemble, B.G. I. 6

esse spem docent, sī extrēmum auxilium experīrentur, they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource, B.G. III. 5

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī, fāgitāre, meanwhile Caesar demanded of the Hāduī every day the grain which they had promised, B.G. I. 16

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

166. a. Not in Indirect Discourse. Except in indirect discourse (§ 203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

bellum gerere dēbet, he ought to be waging war

pudet mē hoc fēcisse, I am ashamed to have done this
b. In Indirect Discourse. In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is present, past, or future with reference to the time denoted by the verb of saying etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses the same time as that of the verb of saying:

   dicit esse spem, he says that there is hope
   dicēbat esse spem, he said that there was hope
   dicet esse spem, he will say that there is hope

2. The perfect infinitive expresses time before that of the verb of saying:

   dicit fuisse spem, he says that there was hope
   dicēbat fuisse spem, he said that there had been hope
   dicet fuisse spem, he will say that there was hope

3. The future infinitive expresses time later than that of the verb of saying:

   dicit futūram esse spem, he says that there will be hope
   dicēbat futūram esse spem, he said that there would be hope
   dicet futūram esse spem, he will say that there will be hope

Tenses of the Participle

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. b), express a time present, past, or future with reference to the verb with which it is used:

   haec fīens à Caesare petiit, weeping he asked this from Cæsar,
   B.G. I. 20

   dē his rēbus certior factus, trānseuntēs adgressus est, when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing (lit. having been informed, he attacked (them) crossing)
MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. **Statement of Facts.** Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact:

- *est aliud iter, there is another road*
- *Ariovistus fuit rēx, Ariovistus was king*
- *Caesar veniet, Cæsar will come*

170. **Questions.** A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb:

- *quis hoc fēcit? who did this?*
- *ubi est puer? where is the boy?*

a. Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles -ne, nōnne, or num.

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word:

   *scribitne epistulam? is he writing the letter?*

2. **Nōnne** expects an affirmative answer:

   *nōnne epistulam scribit? he is writing the letter, is he not? or, is he not writing the letter?*

3. **Num** expects a negative answer:

   *num epistulam scribit? he is not writing the letter, is he?*

b. A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by utrum or -ne (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by an, or:

   *utrum scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?*
   *scribetne, an veniet? will he write, or come?*
Note. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?

2. If the second member means simply or not, annōn is used in direct questions, necne in indirect questions (§ 201):

scribitne annōn? is he writing or not?
quaerō scribatne necne, I ask whether he is writing or not
déclarābant utrum ex üsū esset necne, they announced whether it was advantageous or not, cf. B.G. I. 50

171. Rhetorical Questions. A rhetorical question is one that is asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēsne iniūriās perferre possum? can I endure such injuries?

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:

a. Exhortation, in the first person plural, present tense; the negative is nē:

nē hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us not kill these robbers, cf. B.G. VII. 36

b. Command, in the third person, present tense:

obsidēs reddat, let him return the hostages, B.G. I. 35

c. Negative Command, or Prohibition, with the negative nē:

nē désespereris or nē déspiciās, do not despise

Note 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by nōli, nōlite, with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

Note 2. The uses under a, b, and c are often called volitive (from volō, will) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. Deliberation, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or indignation:

quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsistam? what plan of battle shall I adopt?

cf. B.G. III. 14

cūr déspērētis? why should you despair? B.G. I. 40

Note. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.
c. Wish (Optative Subjunctive), often with utinam. The negative is nē. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows:

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without utinam:

   (utinam) scribat
   (utinam) scripsit

   \{ \text{may he write} \}

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time; past subjunctive with utinam:

   utinam scriberet, \textit{would (or I wish) that he were writing}

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time; past perfect subjunctive with utinam:

   utinam scripsisset, \textit{would (or I wish) that he had written}

f. Possibility (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is nōn:

   aliquis dīcat, \textit{some one may say}
   tum viderēs, \textit{then you might have seen}

Note. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition:

   laudētur (si hoc faciat), \textit{he would be praised (if he should do this)}
   laudārētur (si hoc faceret), \textit{he would be praised (if he were doing this)}
   laudātus esset (si hoc fēcisset), \textit{he would have been praised (if he had done this)}

The Imperative

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty:

   "dēsītē," inquit, "commīlitōnēs," "leap down, fellow soldiers,"
   \textit{he said, B. G. IV. 25}

Note. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by nōli, nōlite, with the infinitive (§ 172. c. note 1):

   nōli committere, \textit{do not bring it to pass}, cf. B. G. I. 13
MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Clauses of Purpose

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by _ut, that_ (in order that), affirmative; and _nē, that not, lest_, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

nōn nūlī _ut timōris suspicīōnem vitārent remanēbant_, some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear, B.G. I. 39

_ nē graviōrī bellō occurreret ad exercitum proficīscitur_, he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

legātōs mittunt _quī dicerent_, they sent envoys to say (lit. who should say), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by _quō_, which is equivalent to _ut eō_:

manīpulōs laxāre iussit _quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent_, he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily, B.G. II. 25

Note. For substantive clauses of purpose see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. a).

Clauses of Description or Characteristic

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling _what kind_ of person or thing it is, is called a clause of _description or characteristic_, and takes the subjunctive:

domī nihil erat _quō famem tolerārent_, there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger, B.G. I. 28
a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as est qui, sunt qui, unus est qui, sólus est qui:

erant omnínō itinera duo quibus itineribus domó exīre possent, there
were in all two ways by which they could go out from home,
B.G. I. 6

únus sum qui addúcit nōn potuerim, I am the only one who could not be
influenced, B.G. I. 31

178. A relative clause that simply tells what person or thing the
antecedent is, instead of what kind it is, or one that only adds a fact
without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes
the indicative:

ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, negat sē posse etc.,
when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came,
he said that he could not etc., B.G. I. 8

Quam cōnstituerat tells what day, not what kind of day.

auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā éas régiones posita est, arcessunt, they
summoned reënforcements from Britain, which is situated oppo-
site to those regions, B.G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the quae clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

Clauses of Result

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned
in the main clause are introduced by ut, so that, and take the subjunc-
tive mood. The negative in clauses of result is nōn:

mōns impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a mountain
towered above, so that a very few (men) could easily keep (them)
back, B.G. I. 6

collis nāscēbātur silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī possit, a
hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be
gained, B.G. II. 18
382

LATIN GRAMMAR

Note. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning so, so great, such, etc., like ita, sic, tantus, tālis, etc.:

ita Helvētii institūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere consuērint, the Helvetii have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere, no one is so old that he does not think (lit. who does not think) that he can live for a year

Note. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether ut with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence ut is might have been used instead of quī.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN, CLAUSES

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. Quod Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by quod, that, take the indicative to state a fact:

quod glōriāmini, eōdem pertinet, (the fact) that you boast, amounts to the same thing, B.G. I. 14

The quod clause is the subject of pertinet.

hōc est miserīor fortūna, quod nē in occultō quidem querī audent, their lot is the more pitiful in this, that they do not dare to complain even in secret, B.G. I. 32

The quod clause is in apposition with hōc.

a. Quod at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning as to the fact that:

quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es etc., as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly etc., B.G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with ut or nē and the subjunctive are used after verbs of commanding, persuading,
requesting, urging, wishing, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future:

his utī conquererent imperāvit, he ordered these to hunt (them) up (lit. that they should hunt (them) up), B.G. I. 28

persuādet Castīcō ut rēgnum occupāret, he persuades Casticus to seize the supreme power (lit. that he should seize), B.G. I. 3

In these sentences the ut clause is used as object.

dat negotium Senonibus ut ea cognōscant, he employs the Senones to find this out (lit. he gives employment to the Senones etc.), B.G. II. 2

Here the ut clause is in apposition with negotium.

erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret, it had been enjoined on him that he should not engage in battle, B.G. I. 22

Here the nē clause is the subject of erat praeceptum.

Note. Cōnor, iubeo, patior, volō, nōlō, and mālō take the infinitive:

nāvēs longās paulum removērī iussit, he ordered the ships of war to be withdrawn a little, B.G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of fearing substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by nē, rendered that, lest, or by ut, rendered that not:

verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, they feared that our army would be led against them, cf. B.G. II. 1

verēbantur ut exercitus noster ad eōs addūcerētur, they feared that our army would not be led against them

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing. Verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like, are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by nē, quīn, or quō minus. Nē is used when the main verb is affirmative, quīn when it is negativated, quō minus in either case:

dēterrēre potes nē maiōr multitūdō trādūcātur, you are able to prevent a larger number from being brought over, B.G. I. 31

Germanī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla conicerent, the Germans could not be prevented from hurling their weapons, B.G. I. 47

neque recūsābunt quō minus sub Germanōrum imperiō sint, nor will they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 31
a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive:

nostros nāvibus ęgredi prohibēbant, they kept our men from going forth from the ships, B.G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after nōn dubitō, etc. Negatived expressions of doubt (nōn dubitō, I do not doubt; nōn dubium est, there is no doubt) are followed by quīn (that) and the subjunctive:

nōn dubitō quīn supplicium sūmat, I do not doubt that he will exact punishment, B.G. I. 31
nōn est dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint, there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful (tribe) of all Gaul, B.G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of accomplishing, effecting, etc., especially faciō, efficiō, perficiō, etc. They may be used also as appositives:

obsidēs utī inter sē dent perficit, he brings it about that they give hostages to one another, B.G. I. 9 (object)
factum est utī Germānī mercēde arcessentur, it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay, B.G. I. 31 (subject)
hanc grātiam refert, ut grauētur, he makes this return, (namely) that he objects, B.G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as it happens, it remains, it is added, etc., as fit, accidit, accēdit, etc.:

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was a full moon, B.G. IV. 29

Note 1. Substantive clauses with ut, substantive clauses with quod (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

Note 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of saying etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.
CAUSAL CLAUSES

188. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, etc. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quando*, *because*, take:

- The *indicative* when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer:

  fortissimī sunt Belgae propterē quod longissimē *absunt*, the Belgae are the bravest because they are farthest away, B.G. I. 1

  Here Cæsar gives his own reason why the Belgae are the bravest.

- The *subjunctive* when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply *alleged* as the reason of some one else:

  *Haedui (veniebant) questum quod Harūdēs finēs populārentur*, the *Haedui came to complain because (they said) the Harudes were devastat-*

  ing their fields, B.G. I. 37

  Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason *alleged* by the *Haedui*.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Causal clauses introduced by *cum*, *since* or *because*, take the subjunctive:

- his *cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent*, lēgātōs mittunt, *since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys*, B.G. I. 9

  *praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit queritur*, he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has *undertaken the war*, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

- *magnam Caesar iniūriam facit qui vectīgālia dēteriōra faciat*, Cæsar *does a great wrong in making* (lit. who makes, i.e. because he *is making*) the revenues lower, B.G. I. 36

  *Note*. In this use the relative is equivalent to *cum* is etc. It is often preceded by *ut*, *utpote*, or *quippe*. Cf. B.G. IV. 23, *ut quae . . . habērent*. 
191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by quamquam, etsi, tametsi, although:

quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs, although they are of the same race, they are more civilized, B. G. IV. 3

nam etsi vidēbat, tamen nōn putābat etc., for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think etc., B. G. I. 46

Note. Quamquam often introduces a principal clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated and yet.

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by cum, ut, quamvis, although:

cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs dabuntr, pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace, B. G. I. 14

ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen perspiciēbant etc., and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware etc., B. G. III. 9

Note. Cum is used in temporal clauses (when, § 194) and in causal clauses (since, § 189) as well as in concessive clauses (although). When tamen (nevertheless) occurs in the main clause, the cum clause is concessive; if praesertim (especially) precedes, the cum clause is probably causal.

Temporal Clauses

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, etc. Temporal clauses introduced by postquam, after, ut, ubi, when, cum primum, simul, simul atque (ac), as soon as, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present:

postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venire vidit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, after he saw that all the forces of the Belgae were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across, B. G. II. 5

Caesar ubi suōs urgērī vidit, prōcessit, when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced, B. G. II. 25
194. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

a. **Definitive**: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

> *cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factiōnis princīpēs erant Haedui,
> *when* Caesar came into Gaul, the Hāedui were at the head of one faction, B.G. VI. 12

b. **Descriptive**: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

> *cum* ab his quaereret, sīc reperiēbat, *when* he made inquiries from these, he gained the following information, B.G. II. 4
> *cum* dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī légātōs misērunt, *when* he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys, B.G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. a) *cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factiōnis princīpēs erant Haedui, the time of the Hāeduan supremacy is merely dated, or fixed, by the *cum* clause, and is true independently of Cæsar’s coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. b) *cum* dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī légātōs misērunt, the fact Rēmī légātōs misērunt, the Remi sent envoys, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

**Note.** Temporal clauses of description with *cum* correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

195. **Cum Clauses denoting Time and Cause.** Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases *cum* with the subjunctive is always used:

> Helvētiī, *cum* id intellegērēnt, légātōs misērunt, the Helvetii sent envoys *when* (since) they learned that, cf. B.G. I. 13

**Note.** This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

196. **Cum meaning whenever.** *Cum*, *whenever*, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:
ad eós sē, cum ūsus est, recipiunt, *they retreat to these whenever it is necessary*, cf. B.G. IV. 2

cum fūnēs adductī erant, praerumpēbantur, *whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off*, B.G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam. Temporal clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, *before*, have the following uses:

a. When they denote an *actual fact* they take the indicative:

neque prius fugere dēstītērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum perrēnērunt,
*nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine*,
B.G. I. 53

b. When they denote something *anticipated*, but not sure, they take the subjunctive:

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, *before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him*, B.G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, dōnec, or quoad. I. Dum, meaning *while*, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. a), even though the time is past:

dum haec geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est, *while this was going on, word was brought to Caesar*, B.G. I. 46

II. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, meaning *as long as*, take the indicative:

quoad potuit, fortissīmē restītīt, *he resisted bravely as long as he was able*, B.G. IV. 12

III. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, meaning *until*, have two uses:

a. The indicative, to denote an *actual fact*:

neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad praecepiēs hostēs ēgērunt, *nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy*, B.G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something *anticipated*:

dum nāvēs conveniēnt exspectāvit, *he waited until the ships should arrive*, B.G. IV. 23
Conditional Sentences

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by si, if, or nisi, si non, unless, if not. The subordinate clause is called the condition (or protasis) and the main clause the conclusion (or apodosis).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes:

I. Present Conditions:
   a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative:

   *si hoc facit, laudatūr, if he is doing this, he is praised*

   b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive:

   *si hoc faceret, laudāretur, if he were doing this (but he is not), he would be praised (at the present time)*

II. Future Conditions:
   a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative:

   *si hoc faciet, laudābitur, if he does (shall do) this, he will be praised*

   *si hoc fæcerit, laudābitur, if he shall have done this, he will be praised*

   b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive:

   *si hoc faciat (fæcerit), laudētur, if he should do this, he would be praised*

III. Past Conditions:
   a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative:

   *si hoc faciebat, laudābātur, if he was doing this, he was praised*

   *si hoc fēcit, laudātus est, if he did this, he was praised*
b. **Conditions Contrary to Fact**; these take the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive:

\[ \text{si hoc fécisset, laudátus esset, if he had done this (but he did not), he would have been praised} \]

**Note.** The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

\[ \text{si hoc facit, eum laudàte, if he is doing this, praise him} \]

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

**200. Clauses of Comparison with velut, velut sī.** A conditional clause of comparison introduced by velut, velut sī, as if, takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

\[ \text{absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī córam adsit, horrent, they stand in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence (absentis) just as (they would) if he were (should be) present, B.G. I. 32} \]

**Note.** Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads velut sī adesset, horrēbant.

**INDIRECT QUESTIONS**

**201.** Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of inquiring, asking, knowing, telling, etc. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive.

\[ \text{quae in eo reprehendat ostendit, he points out what he censures in him, B.G. I. 20} \]

\[ \text{intellegō quantō id cum periculō fecerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17} \]

**Note.** The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by "yes" or "no" are introduced without distinction by num or -ne, translated whether.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the direct discourse:

his Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitātiōnis datur," to these Caesar answered, "I entertain less (of) doubt," B.G. I. 14
"dēsīlīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs," "leap down, comrades," he said, B.G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in indirect discourse, and is used after verbs of saying and thinking:

his Caesar respondit sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, to these Caesar answered that he entertained less (of) doubt, B.G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of saying is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

eōs incūsāvit: Arioivistum populi Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetisse, he upbraided them (saying) that Arioivistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people, B.G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 208 and b):

Caesar frūmentum quod essent pollicitā flāgitāre, Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:
The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of saying:

Direct: (ego) tranśli non meā sponte, I did not cross of my own free will

Indirect: Ariovistus respondit tranśisse sēsē nōn suā sponte, Ariovistus replied that he had not crossed of his own free will, B.G. I. 44

205. Imperative Sentences. An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondit sī quid vellent, revertentur, he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return, B.G. I. 7

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quid vultis, revertimini, if you want anything, return

206. Prohibitions. In a prohibition having nōli, nōlite, and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with nē in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and nōli disappears:

nōli committēre, do not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, (Divico said) that he should not bring it to pass
207. Questions. I. Real Questions (§170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cūr in meās possessionēs venīs? *why do you come into my possessions?* B.G. I. 44

**Indirect:** Ariovistus respondit ... cūr in suās possessionēs venīret, Ariovistus answered (asking) *why he came into his possessions*

II. a. Rhetorical Questions (§171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

**Direct:** num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum? *can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* B.G. I. 14

**Indirect:** Caesar respondit ... num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse, Caesar answered (asking) *whether he could put aside the recollection etc.*

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§172, d) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cūr dē vestrā virtūte dēspērētis? *why should you be diffident of your own courage?* B.G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (quaesīvit) cūr dē suā virtūte dēspērārent, (he inquired) *why they should be diffident of their own courage*

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

**Direct:** hi sunt idem Germānī qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerunt, *these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army,* B.G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (Caesar dicit) hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint, (Caesar says) *that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army*

*a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative mood may be retained:*
certior factus est, ex ea parte vicī quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū
dissessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from
that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls,
B.G. III. 2

b. Implied Indirect Discourse. The subjunctive may be used
in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect.
This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. b):

Caesar frumentum quod essent pollicitī flāgitāre, Cæsar demanded the
grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect
discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of saying, according
to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, dicit, he says, will
be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; dixit, he said, by
the past or past perfect subjunctive:

Direct: id quod in Nerviis fēci, faciam, I will do that which I did
in (the case of) the Nervii, B.G. II. 32

Indirect: dicit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcerit, factūrum esse, he says
that he will do that which he did in (the case of) the Nervii
dixit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset, factūrum esse, he said that he
would do that which he had done in (the case of) the Nervii

Direct: verēmur angustiās itineris quae intercēdunt, we fear the
difficulties of the way which intervene, cf. B.G. I. 39

Indirect: dicunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae intercēdant, they
say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene
dixerunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae intercēderent, they said that
they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened

Note. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as
was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will
become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative
will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

Exception: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense
is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of saying:

respondit ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare,
cōnśuērint, he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they
were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them), B.G. I. 14
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. a, II. a, III. a) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gerunt, vincunt, if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

Indirect: dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, vincere, he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. b) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the future infinitive; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gerant, vincant, if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

Indirect: dicit hostēs, sī bellum gerant, victūrōs esse, he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer
dixit hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs esse, he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. a, b), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by fore (futūrum esse) ut with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

Direct: sī bellum gerent, vincentur, if they shall wage war, they will be conquered (more probable)
sī bellum gerant, vincentur, if they should wage war, they would be conquered (less probable)

Indirect (both more probable and less probable): dicit sī bellum gerant fore ut vincantur, he says that if they shall (should) wage war, they will (would) be conquered
dixit sī bellum gererent fore ut vincerentur, he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered
213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b, III. b) the verb in
the condition (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged.
The verb in the conclusion (past or past perfect subjunctive) under-
goes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form
of the future participle in -ūrus with fuisse:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gererent, vincerent, if the enemy were
waging war (now), they would be conquering

Indirect: dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs fuisse,
he says (or said) that if the enemy were waging war, they would
be conquering

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gessissent, vīcissent, if the enemy had
waged war, they would have conquered

Indirect: dicit (or dixit) hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, victūrōs fuisse,
he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would
have conquered

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form
futūrum fuisse ut is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

Direct: hostēs sī bellum gessissent, victī essent, if the enemy had
waged war, they would have been conquered

Indirect: dicit (or dixit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, sī bellum gessis-
sent, vincerentur, he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged
war, they would have been conquered.

Subjunctive by Attraction

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative
is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or
equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs postulārent, omnēs rēs administrārentur, he
directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics de-
manded, B.G. IV. 23

dat negotium Senonibus utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant, he
employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on
among them, B.G. II. 2
The Infinitive

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain case constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject:

a. With esse:

perfacile est cōnāta perficere, it is easy to accomplish the undertakings, B.G. I. 3

b. With impersonal verbs:

nōn oportet mē impedīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered, B.G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object:

a. With subject accusative; after verbs of wishing, ordering, permitting, allowing, and the like:

liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit, he ordered the children to be brought to him (as) hostages, B.G. II. 5

b. With subject accusative; after verbs of saying, thinking, perceiving, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204):

Caesar certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās coniūrāre, Caesar was informed that all the Belgae were conspiring, B.G. II. 1

c. Without subject accusative; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning to be able, be accustomed, decide, begin, dare, try, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the complementary infinitive:

cōpias parāre coeōrunt, they began to prepare forces, B.G. III. 23

cōnstituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare those things, B.G. I. 3
218. Historical Infinitive. In vivid narration the infinitive with subject nominative may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

*Cæsar Haeduōs frūmentum fūgitāre, Cæsar demanded grain of the Hādui*, B.G. I. 16

**Participles**

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. Time:

*patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged (lit. all Gaul having been ravaged)*, B.G. II. 4

b. Cause:

*quibus rēbus Cæsar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sībi existimāvit, because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, Cæsar thought that he ought to hasten*, B.G. I. 37

c. Condition:

*damnātum poenam sequī oportebat, punishment was to follow, if he was condemned (lit. having been condemned)*, B.G. I. 4

d. Concession:

*beneficiō adfectus hanc grātiam refert, though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return (lit. having been treated)*, cf. B.G. I. 35

e. Simple Relative Clause:

*submōtīs restitērunt, they resisted those who had been routed*, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. Participles used as Nouns. The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

*opiniōnem pugnantium praebēbant, they gave the impression of (men) fighting*, cf. B.G. III. 25
222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in -urus is used with the verb sum to form what is called the active periphrastic conjugation. This denotes future, or intended, action:

praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, except what they were going to carry with them, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in -ndus (§ 224), is used with the verb sum to form what is called the passive periphrastic conjugation. This is used to denote what must be, or ought to be, done. The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all (kinds of) cruelties have to be endured, cf. B.G. I. 32

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

Note. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regularly used impersonally:

concedendum esse nōn putābat, he did not think that he ought to comply (lit. that it ought to be complied)

Gerund

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second declension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

hominēs bellandī cupīdī, men eager for warfare (lit. desirous of warfare), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions and does not take an object:

Caesar respondit diem sē ad delīberandum sūmpṣturum (esse), Caesar answered that he would take time for deliberating, B.G. I. 7
d. Ablative:

reperiēbat in quaerendō Caesar, *Caesar found on inquiry* (lit. *in inquiring*), *B.G.* I. 18

Note. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

**Gerundive**

224. The gerundive (ending in *-ndus*) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II) denotes what must be, or ought to be, done.

*Caesari omnia únō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time* (lit. *all things had to be done by Caesar etc.*), *B.G.* II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

*priadeae faciendae facultās dabātur, an opportunity for securing* (lit. *of securing* plunder was afforded), cf. *B.G.* IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be *praedam faciendī facultās*, with *praedam* as object of the gerund *facciendī*. The translation in both constructions is the same.

*ab his fit initium retinendī Sili, these take the initiative in detaining Silius, B.G. III. 8*

*in petendā pāce culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude, B.G. IV. 27*

*ad eās rēs cōnfiendās, for accomplishing these measures, B.G. I. 3*

c. With the personal and reflexive forms *meī, tui, suī, nostri, vestri*, a form in *-ndi* is commonly used without change in gender or number:

*neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquent, neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves, B.G. III. 6*

As *suī* is plural, we might here expect *conligendōrum* to agree with it.
d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like *cūrō*, *to care for, see to*, etc.:

*pontem faciendum cūrat*, *he causes a bridge to be built* (lit. *he sees to a bridge to be built*), B.G. I. 13

*Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose*

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:

*a. In the accusative with ad:*

*respondit diem sé ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum (esse), he replied that he would take time to deliberate*, B.G. I. 7

*ad eās rēs cōnfiendiās Orgetorīx dēligitur*, *Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures*, B.G. I. 3

*b. In the genitive with causā or grātiā:*

*venīsne speculandī causā? do you come for the sake of spying?*  
*cf. B.G. I. 47*

*id nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō, I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul*, B.G. I. 44

*Supine*

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative (-um) and ablative (-ū):

*a. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:*

*vēnī auxilium postulātum, I came to ask aid*, B.G. I. 31

*b. The supine in -ū is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):*

*optimum factū esse dūxērunt, they considered it the best thing to do* (lit. *best with respect to doing*), B.G. IV. 30

*Note.* The supine in -um may take an object; the supine in -ū never does:

*lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, they send envoys to ask aid*, B.G. I. 11.
227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows:

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Caesar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Name</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iānuārius, -a, -um</td>
<td>January, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Februārius, -a, -um</td>
<td>February, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mārtius, -a, -um</td>
<td>March, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aprīlis, -e</td>
<td>April, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maius, -a, -um</td>
<td>May, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iūnius, -a, -um</td>
<td>June, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quīntilis, -e</td>
<td>July, -e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>November, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December, -bris, -bre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The seventh month (Quintilis) was later called Iūlius in honor of Julius Caesar, and the eighth (Sextilis), Augustus, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the fifth (quintilis) month, August the sixth (sextilis), September the seventh (september), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the Calends (Kalendae, -ārum), the first day of the month; the Nones (Nōnae, -ārum), the fifth day; and the Ides (Īdūs, Íduum), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kalendae</th>
<th>Nōnae</th>
<th>Ídūs</th>
<th>Kalendae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16... 27 28 29 30 31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur on the Calends, on the Nones, on the Ides, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Phrase</th>
<th>English Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kalendis Februāriis,</td>
<td>on the first of February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōnis Aprīlibus,</td>
<td>on the fifth of April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nōuis Octōbrībus,</td>
<td>on the seventh of October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ídibus Iānuāriis,</td>
<td>on the thirteenth of January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ídibus Mārtīis,</td>
<td>on the fifteenth of March</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned backwards. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word pridie, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month:

pridie Kalendas Februarias, the thirty-first of January
pridie Nonas Iauariias, the fourth of January
pridie Idus Martiias, the fourteenth of March
pridie Idus Septembris, the twelfth of September

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days before the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the third day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the fourth day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase ante diem (translated the day before) was used with the accusatives Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, the word diem being modified by the proper ordinal numeral:

ante diem tertium Kalendas Octobres, the third day before the Calends of October (September 29)
ante diem quartum Kalendas Octobres, the fourth day before the Calends of October (September 28)
ante diem sextum Idus Mertiias, the sixth day before the Ides of March (March 10)
ante diem quintum Nonas Maias, the fifth day before the Nones of May (May 3)

Note. These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows:


i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule:

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add one to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date.
The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

in a.d. V. Kal. Nov., to the fifth day before the Calends of November (October 28)
opus contulit in ante diem III. Id. Oct., he postponed the work to the 13th of October

Note. Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (mēnis intercalāris) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

228. The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, B.G. I. 2) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (ab urbe conditā abbreviated to A. U. C.). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date A.U.C., the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Caesar was killed in 710 A.U.C., or 44 (754–710) B.C.
LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Order of Words. In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated when speaking by stress of voice, and in a written sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

2. The most emphatic place is the first; next in importance is the last; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the subject, and the second in importance is normally the verb, the tendency is to place these respectively first and last. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

```
Strong    Weak    Strong
```

Subject followed by its modifiers        Modifiers followed by Verb

4. For convenience this is called the normal order. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:
a. By placing words to be emphasized first, more rarely last:

_Gallōs Garumna flūmen dīvidit_, the Gauls are separated by the Garonne river (lit. the Gauls the Garonne river separates)

*magna dis immortālibus habenda est grātia*, great gratitude is due the immortal gods

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attributive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and adjectives of quantity and place (for example, _ulterior, citerior, inferior_, etc.) is before the nouns they modify; the normal position of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives is after their nouns:

- *ille imperātor*, _that general_ (normal order)
- _imperātor ille*, _that famous general_ (normal order reversed)
- _mors frātris tui*, _the death of your brother_ (normal order)
- _tui frātris mors*, _your brother's death_ (normal order reversed)

c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic it precedes:

_Caesār imperātor, Caesar, the general_

_imperātor Caesār, the general, Caesar_

d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual emphasis:

_dēlectat mē ōratiō, the speech delights me_

e. The copula _sum_ (§ 48. II. b) ordinarily stands last, or between the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes existence (there _was_, there _is_, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject:

_erat nūllum aliud iter, there was no other way_

**EXERCISE**

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show the importance of those italicized:

1. Orgetorix, who was the _richest_ of the Helvetii, made a _conspiracy_.
2. The _Helvetii were hemmed in_ on all sides. 3. The Helvetii _excel_
the rest of the Gauls. 4. There is a river, the Rhone by name, which separates our province. 5. The territories of the Belgae are farthest away. 6. They keep the Germans away from their territories by almost daily battles. 7. Many of the Helvetii were noble, but Orgetorix excelled the rest. 8. A very high mountain hems them in on one side. 9. Orgetorix persuaded certain ones of the Helvetii who were desirous of power. 10. The Sequani are nearest to the province, the Belgae are farthest away.

Note. A superior figure standing after a word (for example, so) refers to that word only; placed before a word (for example, so), it refers to two or more following words.


LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.

b. Agreement of Relatives, § 64. 

c. Agreement of Appositives, § 58.
d. Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xli-xl iii)

Note. From now on the Exercises are divided into two parts. The sentences in the first part are sufficiently easy to be used for oral work, if desired, and illustrate how the text may be used as a basis for similar sentences. By changing case and number, mood, tense, voice, person, and the like, the teacher may extend the practice at will. For example, "Pelias was the brother of Æson, who held the kingdom in Thessaly"; "The kingdom in Thessaly had been held by Æson, the brother of Pelias."

1. Æson, the brother of Pelias, held the kingdom in Thessaly. 2. The brother whom Pelias had driven out was named Æson. 3. The friends who went to Delphi consulted the oracle. 4. Jason was the man whom the oracle pointed out. 5. The golden fleece which he
left there was intrusted to the king. 6. The task which he had undertaken was most difficult. 7. The brothers do not wish to set out alone. 8. The messengers whom the king had sent out returned the next day. 9. The ship that he built was wider than ours. 10. A great number of men had gathered from all the regions of Greece.

II. There was once a king in Thessaly who was called Æson. When he had held the kingdom (for) a few years, he was driven out by Pelias, his brother. Jason, the son of Æson, would have been put to death, if he had not been snatched out of danger by the friends of his father. After a few years Jason was sent to get possession of the fleece.

1 cum. 2 § 96. 3 § 199. III. b. 4 pater. 5 Latin, that he might get possession of, § 174.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.
8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multi pueri et puellae or pueri et puellae multae, many boys and girls
bonus puer et puella, the good boy and girl
pueri et puellae erant boni, the boys and girls were good
rex et regina capti sunt, the king and girls were captured
virtus et studium militum erant magna, the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great
naves captivique restituti sunt or naves captivique restituta sunt, the ships and the captives were restored

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlv, xlv)

I. 1. Hercules and Orpheus were most famous. 2. Jason and his ship will be famous. 3. He was driven back to the same part of the island from which he had set out. 4. The night was dark, and the danger was great. 5. The nymph attempted to persuade the boy. 6. Hercules and the nymph followed the boy. 7. The Argonauts and
the Harpies were unfriendly. 8. These birds were sent by Jupiter. 9. The birds had been named Harpies. 10. The Argonauts and Phineus rejoiced greatly.

II. Of all the companions whom Jason had chosen I think that Hercules and Orpheus were the most famous. But there were many others whose names were noted. They set sail with the applause of all.

1 unde. 2 Partitive genitive with most famous, § 76.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a. note.

EXAMPLES

pueri et puellae qui erant boni, the boys and girls who were good
rēx et rēgina qui captī sunt, the king and queen who were captured
virtūs et studium mīlitum, quae erant magna, the valor and zeal of
the soldiers, which were great
nāvēs captīvique quae restitūta sunt, the ships and the captives
which were restored
Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, Corinth, which was a famous
city

Note. When the antecedents represent both persons and things, the relative pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:

nāvēs captīvique qui restitūti sunt

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlvi, xlvii)

I. 1. The messengers whom the king had sent came to the ship. 2. The messenger who came to the ship called Jason to the palace. 3. The rewards that he promised were great. 4. There was a huge rock that had been placed by Jupiter. 5. The rocks that had been placed there were large. 6. This is the large rock that Jupiter had placed there. 7. These are the doves that he sent forth. 8. You will come to the Phasis, which is a river in the territory of the Colchi.
II. When the Argonauts had come to the river Phasis, which is in the territory of the Colchi, Jason demanded of the king that he should hand over the fleece. But the king replied, "I will hand the fleece over if you accomplish two most difficult tasks." Jason replied, "I am ready to undergo all dangers."

Ⅰ. The nuntius mittitur, a messenger is sent
nuntii mittuntur, messengers are sent
cōnsul et lēgātus veniunt, the consul and the envoy are coming
neque cōnsul neque lēgātus venit, neither the consul nor the envoy is coming
senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this
senātus haec intellegunt, the senate know this

Note. When subjects are of different persons the verb is in the first person rather than in the second or the third, and in the second rather than in the third:

egen et tú scribimus, you and I are writing
ego et Mārcus scribimus, Marcus and I are writing
tū et Mārcus audiēbātis, you and Marcus heard

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlviii, xlix)

I. 1. Jason and his companions had betaken themselves to the appointed place. 2. Jason with his companions betakes himself to the king. 3. The bulls were inclosed in a huge stable. 4. Medea and her brother had escaped at midnight. 5. Medea will escape with her brother by night. 6. The woman and the boy went to the ship. 7. Neither the woman nor the boy will go to the king. 8. Medea and I went to the ship. 9. You and your brother will be left at the ship. 10. You and I were hurrying into the forest.
II. Jason accomplished with the greatest difficulty the two tasks that had been proposed by the king. Medea, the daughter of the king, who had given aid to Jason, was now in great danger. She went to the place where the Argonauts were and begged them not to forsake her.  

1. cum, § 110.  
2. obsecrō nē, § 183.  
3. sē, § 133.  

LESSON VI  


a. The Present Indicative, § 153.  
b. The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. a, b, c.  
c. The Future Indicative, § 155.  
d. The Perfect Indicative, § 156. a, b.  
e. The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.  
f. The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.  

EXERCISE  
(Ritchie, pages 1, li)  

I. 1. The tree was being guarded by a dragon. 2. Jason and Medea had approached the tree. 3. The dragon that had been guarding the tree was overcome by sleep. 4. The Argonauts await in vain the return of their leader. 5. A light was seen among the trees. 6. Jason and Medea are received with great joy. 7. It will not be safe to remain in this place. 8. The king of the Colchians pursues the Argonauts. 9. Jason, with the Argonauts, will soon arrive at a river. 10. Jason will return with Medea to Pelias.  

II. Jason and Medea went to the tree where the dragon was guarding the golden fleece. The Argonauts, who were waiting in vain at the ship, began to despair of their safety; for they did not doubt that this task was one of the greatest danger.  

1. enim (does not stand first in its clause). 2. quin, § 186. 3. § 77. a.
LESSON VII

12. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.
13. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, § 217. b.

EXAMPLES

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī pācem faciunt (fēcērunt, facient), the Romans are making (made, will make) peace
pācem faciō (fēci, faciam), I am making (made, shall make) peace
occāsiō nōn omittenda est, the opportunity ought not to be neglected

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcō Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcissee, factūros esse), I say that the Romans were making (had made, would make) peace
dīcō mē pācem facere (fēcissee, factūrum esse), I say that I am making (made, shall make) peace
dīcō occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, I say that the opportunity ought not to be neglected
dīxit Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcissee, factūros esse), he said that the Romans were making (had made, would make) peace
dīxit sē pācem facere (fēcissee, factūrum esse), he said that he was making (had made, should make) peace
dīxit occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, he said that the opportunity ought not to be neglected

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages lii–liv)

I. 1. They handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 2. They said that they had handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 3. His last day is at hand. 4. We saw that his last day was at hand. 5. We shall do this. 6. I said that we should do this. 7. They said that he would do this. 8. He says that they will do this. 9. They see that their father is an old man. 10. We did not think that he would send Medea away. 11. They had hoped that they should receive the kingdom. 12. Medea does not think that this opportunity ought to be neglected.
II. When Jason returned to Thessaly with the golden fleece, Pelias did not wish to hand over the kingdom to him. Medea, Jason’s wife, who had hoped that she should be queen, persuaded the daughters of the king to kill their father. But when the citizens had learned that Pelias had perished, they drove Jason and Medea out of the kingdom.

1 in, § 97. 2 rēgina. 3 Dative, § 83. 4 ut, § 183.

LESSON VIII

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.
16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES
explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or qui) locum dēligant, he sends forward scouts to choose a place
explōrātōrēs praemisit ut (or qui) locum dēligent, he sent forward scouts to choose a place
pontem facit quō facilius trānseat, he builds a bridge that (by which) he may cross the more easily

EXERCISE
(Nepos, chapters 1–3)

I. 1. We do not doubt that the Romans are most powerful. 2. We did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 3. He does not doubt that the Romans had been most powerful. 4. I did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 5. Roman envoys came to the king to learn of his plans. 6. Soldiers will be sent to take the city by storm. 7. Hannibal set out for Spain that he might get an army together and take Saguntum by storm. 8. He set out from Carthage immediately that he might the earlier lead his forces across into Italy.

* The terms “pure purpose” and “pure result” are used to distinguish adverbial clauses of purpose or result from relative or substantive clauses of this character.
9. He sent lieutenants to collect an army. 10. He built roads that he might the more easily lead his army into Italy.

II. Hannibal, the most famous commander of the Carthaginians, collected an army that he might conquer the Romans; but he was weakened by the envy of his (fellow) citizens. When Hamilcar, his father, was setting out for Spain, he bade his son swear that he would never be on terms of friendship with the Romans. Hannibal gave his father this oath and kept (it).

1 quīn, § 186. 2 Express by an ut clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. 3 Use a relative clause of purpose. 4 § 101 a. 5 quō mātūris, lit. by which the earlier, § 176. 6 Cf. note 5. 7 iubeō, with infinitive, § 217 a. 8 § 217 b. 9 in amīcitīā.

LESSON IX

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and a.
18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description:

mīles qui fugiat est timidus, a soldier who runs away is cowardly
nēmō fuit militum quīn (= quī nōn) volnerārētur, there was not one of the soldiers who was not (lit. but was) wounded

In these sentences the clauses qui fugiat and quīn volnerārētur describe, or tell what kind of soldier it is, and hence take the subjunctive. Compare these sentences with the following:

ille mīles, qui fugit, est timidus, that soldier, who is running away, is cowardly

Here the clause qui fugit does not describe the soldier, but simply states a fact about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative (§ 178).

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses:

sunt qui maledicant, there are some who slander
nēmō est qui hoc nōn crēdat, there is no one who does not believe this
b. Clauses of Pure Result:

*Affirmative* clauses of purpose and result are alike in form; but *negative* clauses of purpose are introduced by *né* (§ 174), *negative* clauses of result by *ut nōn*:

*iter fēcit ut oppidum caperet*, *he marched to take the town* (purpose)
*iter tam celeriter fēcit ut oppidum caperet*, *he marched so quickly that he took the town* (result)
*fūgit nē interficētur*, *he fled that he might not be killed* (negative purpose)
*tam celeriter fūgit ut nōn caperētur*, *he fled so swiftly that he was not captured* (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result:

*nēmō est tam timidus quī fugiat*, *no one is so cowardly that he (lit. who) runs away*

*nēmō est tam fortis quīn (= quī nōn) reī novitāte perturbētur*, *no one is so brave as not to be (lit. but that he is) disturbed by the unexpected occurrence*

These sentences are equivalent to *nēmō est tam timidus ut fugiat* and *nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn perturbētur*. The word *tam* in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the two constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

**EXERCISE**

(Nepos, chapters 4–6)

I. 1. This disease of the eyes was so severe that he did not afterwards use his right eye. 2. He is so afflicted by this infirmity that he is carried in a sedan. 3. This battle was fought so quickly that they immediately set out for Rome. 4. He inspires so great terror in the Romans that they do not dare to go outside the rampart. 5. So great was Hannibal that nobody desired to oppose him in line of battle. 6. The consuls who oppose him in line of battle are brave. 7. Brave is the soldier who now desires to carry on war. 8. There are many soldiers who are most brave. 9. This commander is so brave that he desires to oppose Hannibal in line of battle. 10. The resources of his country were so exhausted that he desired to settle the war.
II. When Hannibal had defeated Scipio, he crossed the mountains that he might arrive quickly in Etruria and Apulia. It would be tedious to recount all his battles; but so long as he was in Italy, he defeated all the commanders who opposed him in line of battle. If he had set out for Rome, he would have taken the city by storm.

1 adeō. 2 Omit. 3 sic. 4 tam. 5 pellō. 6 Latin, into. 7 longum est enumeräre. 8 quam diū.

LESSON X


21. Substantive Clauses introduced by quod, ut, and né, §§ 182, 183 and note.

EXAMPLES

accessit quod exercitum habuerat, there was added the fact that he had had an army
hortor ut veniat, I urge him to come (lit. that he come)
imperat né eant, he commands them not to go
Gallī Rōmānōs expellere cōnātī sunt, the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans

Note 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following:

hortor, cohortor, urge, exhort
imperō, order, command
moneō, advise

ōro, petō, rogō, ask
persuādeō, persuade
postulō, demand

Note 2. The following verbs take the infinitive:

cōnor, attempt
iubeō, command

patior, allow
vetō, forbid

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 7–10)

I. 1. They ask that the captives be returned. 2. They commanded him to return the hostages. 3. They had demanded that the hostages should be returned. 4. I advise that the money be put back in the treasury. 5. They will persuade him to set out with these armies. 6. He was ordered to conduct the ships to Asia. 7. He urges them
to guard this temple. 8. There was added the fact that they had attempted to carry on war. 9. He urged them not to carry on war. 10. They ordered him not to guard the temple. 11. There is added the fact that they are guarding this temple.

II. After the Carthaginian ambassadors had thanked the Romans because they had made peace with them, they asked that their captives should be returned. The Romans did not send back the captives because Hannibal was still with the army. Hannibal was called back; but when he had returned home, he was made king.

I. uō. 2 Not accusative, § 83. 3 in, § 97. 4 quod, § 188. a, b. 5 etiam nunc. 6 apud.

LESSON XI

22. Substantive Clauses (continued), § 181.
23. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.
24. Substantive Clauses introduced by quīn or quō minus, §§ 185, 186.

EXAMPLES

efficit, he brings it about
fit, it happens
accidit, it happens
additur, it is added
ut obsidēs (nōn) dent, that they give (do not give) hostages
eōs impedivit quō minus (nē) flūmen trānsirent, he hindered them from crossing the river
eōs nōn impedivit quīn flūmen trānsirent, he did not hinder them from crossing the river
nōn dubitō quīn Helvētīi exextant, I do not doubt that the Helvetii are going forth

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 11–13)

1. Nobody doubts that he is writing something about peace. 2. We did not doubt that he would seek safety by flight. 3. It happened that the envoys were not at Rome. 4. He will bring it about that hostages will be given. 5. He hindered them from sending envoys to Carthage. 6. They cannot hinder us from sending our envoy to
Rome. 7. I do not doubt that the Romans will surround his house with a large army. 8. Hannibal could not be hindered from taking poison. 9. Nobody doubts that Hannibal was a most brave man. 10. It is added that he devoted some time to literature.

II. The Romans sent ambassadors to Prusias, king of Bithynia, to ask that Hannibal should be surrendered. Prusias replied, "Seize him yourselves if you can; I do not doubt that you will easily find the place where he is." But Hannibal took poison, because he did not wish to lose his life at another's will.

1 § 97. 2 possum impedire. 3 sūmō. 4 nōn nihil temporis, § 76. 5 dimittō. 6 aliēnō arbitriō.

LESSON XII

25. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, or quandō, § 188. a, b.


EXAMPLES

queritur quod dēstitūtus est he is complaining because he has been abandoned
queritur quod dēstitūtus sit they said

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his own reason (in a causal clause of fact, which takes the indicative), and that in the second he is giving the reason alleged by the person who is complaining.

cum mōns intercēderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed
cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp

EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book I, chapters 1-3)

I. 1. The Belgians were brave because they were farthest away from the province. 2. The Helvetians were brave because (they said) they fought with the Germans. 3. They chose Orgetorix because he was the noblest of all. 4. They chose Dumnorix because (they said)
he held the leadership in the state. 5. The Helvetians had been greatly grieved because they thought their boundaries were narrow. 6. They will persuade Dumnorix because he is the brother of Diviciacus. 7. They had been influenced by Orgetorix because his authority was very great.

The Helvetians, because they were the most powerful people of Gaul, decided to go out from their territory. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased. Orgetorix, the noblest of the Helvetians, persuaded Casticus, the Sequanian, to seize the sovereignty in his own state; and he also persuaded Dumnorix, the Hæduan, to attempt the same thing. There was no doubt that they hoped they should gain possession of all Gaul.

1 Not the simple ablative, § 104. 2 dé. 3 itemque. 4 idem.

LESSON XIII

27. Temporal Clauses introduced by postquam, ut, ubi, etc., § 193.

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by cum.

a. The indicative in definitive clauses in past narrative, § 194. a.
b. The subjunctive in circumstantial clauses in past narrative, § 194. b.

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, § 197. a, b.

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, dōnec, or quoad, § 198. III. a, b.

EXAMPLES

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages
multōs amīcōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city
hostēs eōs adgressī sunt cum inermēs essent, the enemy attacked them (at a time) when they were defenseless
incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived
incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenirent, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive

The clause priusquam...pervenērunt in the fourth sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fifth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in anticipation of their possible arrival.

The same difference between fact and anticipation is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperator in urbe manebat dum legiōnēs pervenērunt, the general remained in the city until the legions arrived
imperator in urbe manebat dum legiōnēs pervenirent, the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive
imperator in urbe manēbit dum legiōnēs perveniant, the general will remain in the city until the legions arrive

EXERCISE
(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 4–7)

I. 1. When they were attempting to collect men from the fields, Orgetorix died. 2. They burned all their towns and villages before they went out of their territory. 3. They will burn their towns and villages before they go from home. 4. After these things were announced to Cæsar, he hurried into Gaul. 5. He will arrive at Geneva before the envoys are sent to him. 6. He waited until the soldiers assembled. 7. They did not wait until the soldiers should assemble. 8. He will not wait until the soldiers assemble. 9. They say that he will not wait until the soldiers assemble.

II. The Helvetians, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, were attempting to march through our province. They sent to Cæsar ambassadors, the noblest of the state, to say that they had no other way, and to ask that it be permitted them to do this. Cæsar did not think that the request should be granted, but he said that he should take time to think about (it).

1 Present subjunctive, §§ 197. 6, 162. 2 § 101. a. 3 § 228. 4 Not infinitive. 5 concedendum esse, § 66. 6 diem. 7 ad deliberandum.
LESSON XIV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and a. 1, 2, 3; b. 1, 2.

32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 8–10)

I. 1. Which legion does Cæsar have with him? 2. I ask which legion Cæsar has with him. 3. I asked which legion Cæsar had with him. 4. Does this lake flow into the river Rhone? 5. He will ask whether this lake flows into the river Rhone. 6. Will not the ambassadors return to him? 7. He was not a friend to the Helvetians, was he? 8. Did they permit the Helvetians to go through their territory or not? 9. Will he enlist the legions which are in Italy? 10. They asked whether he would enlist the legions.

II. (When 1 the ambassadors returned to Cæsar, he said that he could not give them a way through the province.) The Helvetians, having attempted by night to break through, were driven back by the Roman soldiers. But the Sequanians, 2 through the intercession of Dumnorix the Hæduan, permitted the Helvetians to go through their territory. (When this had been announced to Cæsar, he set out immediately for 3 Italy that he might lead his legions out of winter quarters and hasten into Gaul.)

1 ubi. 2 Latin, Dumnorix being intercessor, § 118. 3 in, § 97.

LESSON XV

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. I. a, b.

b. Future Conditions: More Probable (More Vivid Future) and Less Probable (Less Vivid Future), § 199. II. a, b.

c. Past Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. III. a, b. NONAE (L)
EXAMPLES

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a. Present} & \quad \text{si hoc facit, fortis est, if he is doing this, he is brave} \\
& \quad \text{si hoc faceret, fortis esset, if he were doing this, he would be brave} \\
\text{b. Future} & \quad \text{si hoc faciet, fortis erit, if he does (shall do) this, he will be brave} \\
& \quad \text{si hoc faciat (fecerit), fortis erit, if he should do this, he would be brave} \\
\text{c. Past} & \quad \text{si hoc faciebat, fortis erat, if he was doing this, he was brave} \\
& \quad \text{si hoc fécit, fortis fuit, if he did this, he was brave} \\
& \quad \text{si hoc fécisset, fortis fuisset, if he had done this, he would have been brave}
\end{align*}
\]

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 11, 12)

I. 1. If the Hæduans cannot defend themselves, they will send ambassadors to Cæsar. 2. If they had not been able to defend themselves, they would have sent ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the fields should be laid waste, we could not ward off from the towns the violence of the enemy. 4. If the Gauls have boats, they are able to cross the river. 5. If he had not set out in the third watch, they would have crossed the Rhone. 6. If he attacked them, they concealed themselves in the neighboring forests. 7. If they had concealed themselves in the forests, would he have been able to attack them? 8. If the Helvetians should set out in the third watch, would they be able to defend themselves?

II. The Helvetians led their forces into the territory of the Hæduans. The Hæduans, who had always deserved well of the Roman people, asked Cæsar to send aid. They said that their fields had been laid waste and that their towns had been taken by storm. Cæsar attacked the Tigurini, who had not crossed the river Arar, and slew a large part of them.

1 de. 2 Latin, into. 3 Not infinitive (see Lesson X).
LESSON XVI

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by quamquam, § 191.
35. Concessive Clauses introduced by cum, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flūmen est altum, tamen trānsire possimus, although (the fact is that) the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross
iter nōn āvertit, cum hostēs sequerentur, he did not turn aside, although the enemy were following
cum urgērentur, tamen nōn fūgērunt, although they were hard pressed, nevertheless they did not flee

Note. Observe that cum may mean when (temporal), since (causal), and although (concessive). When it is temporal, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is causal or concessive, cum is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of tamen, nevertheless, in the main clause.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 23-25)

I. 1. Although it is not necessary to distribute grain to the army, he hastens to go to Bibracte. 2. Although this thing was announced to the enemy, they did not engage in battle. 3. The Helvetians began to pursue our men¹ that they might shut them off from the grain supply. 4. They pursued the Roman soldiers because they thought they were terrified. 5. Although this (these things) is so, nevertheless he sends the cavalry to sustain³ the attack of the enemy. 6. He engaged in battle although⁴ he had not encouraged his men.¹ 7. Although the mountains were about a mile distant, they began to retreat thither.

II. On the next day Cæsar hastened to Bibracte, the richest town of the Hædui, which was not more than eighteen miles distant. The Helvetians, because they thought that the Romans were terrified, began to harass them from the rear. (Cæsar withdrew his forces to⁶ the nearest hill, and in the middle of the hill formed a line of battle.
The horses had been removed, that the danger of all might be made equal; the soldiers hurled their javelins and broke through the phalanx of the enemy.

1 Omit. 2 cum ea ita sint. 3 Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). 4 cum. 6 in, § 97.

LESSON XVII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.
37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.
   a. Simple Sentences, § 204.
   b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.
38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.
39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) Simple Sentences

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

DIRECT: Rōmānī fortiter pugnant, the Romans fight bravely

                      dicit          Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre, he says, said, will
INDIRECT:  dicēbat  say, etc., that the Romans fight (fought, if the
           dicet      verb of saying refers to past time) bravely
           dixit
           dixerat
           dixerit

(2) Complex Sentences

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse, treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the
verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162). It is the tense of the verb of *saying*, *dicit*, *dixit*, etc., which determines the sequence.

**Direct Discourse**

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*
dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who were in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

**Direct Discourse**

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*
dixit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who had been in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

**Direct Discourse**

cum bellum civitās īnfer, magistrātūs dēliguntur, *whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*

**Indirect Discourse**

dicit cum bellum civitās īnerat, magistrātūs dēligī, *he says that whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*
dixit cum bellum civitās īneret, magistrātūs dēligi, *he said that whenever a state made war, magistrates were chosen*
(3) Commands

**Direct Discourse**

| Hostes vince, conquer the enemy |

**Indirect Discourse**

| Dicit (dixit) hostes vincat (vinceret), he directs (directed) him to conquer the enemy |

(4) Questions

**Direct Discourse**

| Cur non exit? why does he not go forth? |

**Indirect Discourse**

| (Dicit, dixit) cur non exeat (exiret), (he says, said) why does (did) he not go forth? |

**EXERCISE**

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 26–29)

I. (1) The battle was fought sharply. 2. He said that the battle was fought so sharply that nobody could see an enemy in retreat. 3. He says that they are aiding the Helvetians with grain. 4. The Helvetians say that he will send ambassadors to ask for peace. 5. Send ambassadors to him to ask for peace. 6. He told them to send ambassadors to ask for peace. 7. Six thousand men hasten to the Rhine that they may not surrender their arms. 8. We said the hostages and arms were surrendered that we might not be regarded in the light of enemies. 9. Since they cannot march through the province, they will return to their own territory. 10. He said that since they could not march through the province, they would return to their own territory. 11. Before they set out, they burned their towns. Why did they do this? 12. He said that before they had set out, they had burned their towns. Why had they done this?

II. Cæsar says that the battle was fought long and sharply; that the Romans took possession of the enemy's camp; that the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix were captured; and that when the Helvetians had come to him to ask for peace, he told them to surrender the slaves who had deserted to them.

1 Latin, it was fought, § 66. 2 versus. 3 Not infinitive. 4 dicō. 5 Latin, thousands of men. 6 numerus.
LES SSOON XVIII

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XV)


b. Less Probable (Less Vivid) Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.
c. Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. a, b.

For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 50-54)

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after dicit, and then after dixit:

I. 1. If Cæsar should lead his forces out of camp, he would draw up a line of battle. 2. If he led his army back into camp, Ariovistus sent soldiers to storm the camp. 3. The Germans will not conquer if they fight (shall fight) before the new moon. 4. If he had wished to use the soldiers for show, he would have stationed them before the camp. 5. If he approaches (shall have approached) to the camp of the enemy, they will lead out their forces. 6. If he were (now) approaching to the camp of the enemy, their forces would be led out. 7. If the signal had been given, the enemy would have sent the third line. 8. If he had given the signal, the third line would have been sent by the enemy. 9. If he pursues (shall have pursued) the Ubii, he will slay a great number of them.

II. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to flee until they reached the river Rhine; among these was Ariovistus, who, having found a little boat, escaped by (means of) it. He had two daughters; of whom one was slain, the other was captured.

1 ex. 2 profugio. 3 Dative, § 88. 4 alter.
LESSON XIX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. a, b.

42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. a, b.

43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. c.

EXAMPLES

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT} & \\
\text{fas est, it is right} & \text{ire, to go, or eum} \\
\text{turpe est, it is disgraceful} & \text{ire, (for) him} \\
\text{necesse est, it is necessary} & \text{to go} \\
\text{opus est, it is necessary} & \\
\text{licet, it is permitted} & \text{agrōs vāstāri, that} \\
\text{apertum est, it is plain} & \text{the fields are} \\
\text{mirum est, it is wonderful} & \text{laid waste} \\
\text{verum est, it is true} & \\
\text{fāma est, it is rumored} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{INFINITIVE AS OBJECT} & \\
\text{vetō eum scribere, }I \text{ forbid him to write} \\
\text{iubeō sociōs venire, }I \text{ order the allies to come} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE} & \\
\text{dēbeō, }I \text{ ought} \\
\text{possum, }I \text{ can (am able)} & \text{ire, to go} \\
\text{soleō, }I \text{ am accustomed} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 1–4)

I. 1. It is not necessary for all the Belgians to conspire against the Roman people. 2. They were unwilling for the Germans to dwell longer in Gaul. 3. Cæsar is able to enlist two new legions. 4. Cæsar said that he was able to send Labienus to lead these legions into Gaul. 5. They said that the Remi were ready both to give hostages and to do (his) commands. 6. We cannot prevent the Suessiones from making common cause with them. 7. The Belgians were able to prevent the Germans from entering into their territory. 8. It is true that Galba is now king.
II. The Remi were able to send ambassadors to Cæsar to say\(^1\) that they had neither made common cause with the other Gauls nor conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to assist with grain and other supplies\(^7\); that all the other Gauls were in arms; and that not even the Suessiones could be prevented from making common cause with them.

1 Not infinitive. \(2\) dēterreō. \(3\) quīn. \(4\) cōnsentīō. \(5\) prohibeō. \(6\) Infinitive. \(7\) rēs.

LESSON XX

44. The Participle, § 219.

\(a.\) Tenses, § 167.

\(b.\) Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. \(a–e, 221.\)

\(c.\) The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. cōgēns</td>
<td>collecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past ——</td>
<td>having collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. coāctūrus</td>
<td>about to collect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hence, in such a sentence as they killed him (as he was) collecting the ships, the present participle, collecting, since it exists also in Latin, cōgēns, may be translated literally, (eum) cōgentem nāvēs occidērunt.

But, in the absence of the present passive participle, we cannot translate literally the ships (while) being collected were seized, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, while they were being collected, dum cōguntur.

Similarly, we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail; but must express the idea by a clause, cum nāvēs coēgissent, when they had collected their ships, or by an ablative absolute, nāvibus coāctīs, their ships having been collected, or by some other form of statement.
46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate Caesar, having captured the town, burned it by Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit, where id and oppidō refer to the same thing, but rather by Caesar oppidum captum incendit.

But in Caesar, having captured the town, burned the temple, the ablative absolute may be used; as, Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit.

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of time, cause, condition, concession, etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. a–e.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 5–8)

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. a–e. In translating use a participle wherever possible.

I. 1. Cæsar encourages the Remi, and orders that the children be brought to him as hostages. 2. 2 When he had given these commands, he dismissed them from him. 3. After he saw that the Belgians had been collected into one place and were coming against him, he hastened to pitch camp. 4. Having stationed a guard there, he left Sabinus with six legions. 5. When they have thrown a multitude of men about all the walls, they will approach the gates. 6. After burning all their villages, they hastened against Cæsar’s camp. 7. When they have laid waste the fields, they will pitch camp. 8. They left two legions in camp and drew up the other legions in line of battle.

II. 2 If the place in front of the camp is suitable for drawing up a line of battle, Cæsar will establish a fort on each side of the hill, so that the enemy may not surround his (men) by fighting on the flanks. If he should station the legions in line of battle in front of the camp, the enemy would lead their forces out of camp and draw (them) up.

1 Use a participle. 2 Not a clause. 3 Latin, collected. 4 totus.
LESSON XXI


49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224. a.

50. The Dative of the Apparent (Implied) Agent, § 87.


52. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what must be, or what ought to be, and is always passive. Therefore, if this construction is used, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate Cæsar must give the signal, we must recast the sentence to the signal must be given by Cæsar, Caesari signum dandum est.

53. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, they cannot be persuaded is rendered by eis persuādēri nōn potest (lit. it cannot be persuaded to them); they must be persuaded is rendered by eis persuādendum est (lit. it must be persuaded to them).

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. He persuades them to hasten to the river. 2. They could not be persuaded to hasten to the river. 3. We must take the fort by storm. 4. We must carry this war on sharply. 5. They understand that they must take the town by storm and cross the river. 6. They ought to be persuaded to gather from all sides. 7. If they had been persuaded to delay, they could have brought aid to their (men). 8. He ought to defend the camp and lead out his soldiers.

II. The enemy waited for a long time (to see) if Cæsar would cross the swamp; but after he led his (men) back into camp, they hastened to the river to destroy the bridge. Since they could neither
take the city by storm nor cross the river, they decided that it was best not to wait longer, and hastened to return home.  

When Cæsar had learned this (thing), he pursued them many miles and slew a great number \(^5\) of them \(^6\) in their flight.

1 Not infinitive (see Lesson X).  
2 Dative.  
3 Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII).  
4 Ablative absolute.  
5 multitūdō.  
6 Participle.

LESSON XXII

54. The Gerundive \((continued)\), § 224. \(b\).

55. The Gerund, § 223. \(a–d\) and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. \(a, b\).

Note. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, cupidus epistulam scribendi, desirous of writing a letter. In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, cupidus epistulae scribendae. The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 13–18)

I. 1. Cæsar came for the sake of receiving hostages. 2. They said that they had come for the sake of seeking peace. 3. They say they are prepared \(1\) to endure \(2\) all indignities and insults. 4. They did not send ambassadors to accept terms of peace. 5. You have come to us for the sake of plundering. 6. They were prepared to neglect this plan. 7. They did not think they were prepared to neglect these plans.

II. If Cæsar had marched across the river, he would have attacked all the Nervii and their neighbors, whom they had persuaded to await the coming of the Romans. The Belgæ thought that there would not be \(3\) any trouble \(4\) in attacking the Romans under their packs. "If you," they say, \(5\) "attack (shall attack) the first legion while the others are a great distance away, the other legions will not dare to make a stand."

1 parātus. 2 Gerundive. 3 quicquam negōtī, § 76. \(a\). 4 Infinitive. 5 inquiunt.
LESSON XXIII

56. Relative Pronouns, § 137.

57. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134 and a, 135.

a. Hie, iste, and ille point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

```
  Speaker   hie  iste  ille
    this (near)  that (remote) that (more remote)
```

The pronoun is is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (he, she, it).

58. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. a–d.

59. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.

a. The Intensive Pronoun ipse, § 136.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book III, chapters 13-16)

I. 1. He says that they made their own ships after this fashion. 2. The ships which they used were made to endure any violence whatsoever. 3. They cannot be harmed. 4. If he had waited for the fleet, they could have been harmed. 5. Brutus, who had been in command of the fleet, adopted this plan of battle. 6. Cæsar sent soldiers to take these ships by storm. 7. When this war is finished, the Veneti will surrender themselves and all their (possessions) to Cæsar. 8. If Cæsar had taken the town by storm, the Veneti would have surrendered themselves and all their (possessions).

II. When Cæsar had taken several towns by storm, and had not been able to harm the enemy, he determined to wait for the fleet that had been assigned to Brutus. When this assembled, at first it was not clear to Brutus what plan of battle he should adopt, for he knew that
the enemy's ships were furnished with every kind of arms, and that his own soldiers excelled in valor alone. But he did not doubt that the Romans would take the ships by storm.

1 quīvīs. 2 Impersonal passive (see Lesson XXI). 3 Relative clause of purpose. 4 Ablative absolute. 5 qui. 6 cōnſcīo. 7 unus. 8 quīn with the subjunctive, § 186.

LESSON XXIV

60. Expressions of Time.

a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.
b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.
c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the time before or time after an event the Latin uses the word ante or post, either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

decem ante diēbus (lit. before by ten days) or ante decem diēs, ten days before
decem post diēbus (lit. afterward by ten days) or post decem diēs, ten days after

Note. As prepositions, ante and post either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs, they either precede or follow the noun.

EXERCISE

(Caesar, Book IV, chapters 20-22)

I. 1. A few months after, 1 when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to set out for Britain. 2. A few days before, he had ordered the fleet to assemble. 3. This was the fleet which he had used in the preceding summer. 4. He waited ten days 2 for the fleet to assemble. 5. In a few days ambassadors will come to him to promise hostages. 6. On the tenth day messengers returned to Caesar 5 to report 4 the things they had observed. 7. Caesar will delay there a few days 2 until the ambassadors come to him. 8. After a few days the ships will come to the same port.
II. Before Caesar set out for Britain, he sent ahead Volusenius and Commius, whom he thought to be suitable for this business. Volusenius did not trust himself to the barbarians, and returned in five days. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, and whose influence in these regions was great, urged the states to submit to the protection of the Roman people, and said that Cæsar’s legions would quickly come there.

1 Ablative absolute. 2 dum with the subjunctive, § 198. III. 3 Relative clause of purpose. 4 quae. 5 fidem sequor (see Lesson X).

LESSON XXV

61. Expressions of Place.

a. Place from Which, § 101. a.
b. Place Whither, § 97.
c. Place toward Which, § 97. note.
d. Place at or in Which, § 120.
e. The Locative Case, § 120. a.

Note. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and domus omit the preposition.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 23-26)

I. 1. In the third watch the cavalry will advance to the farther port and embark. 2. When he had touched Britain and seen the forces of the enemy on all the hills, he thought that he ought to wait for the other ships. 3. He says that when the signal had been given, they moved forward from that place about seven miles. 4. The soldiers thought that they ought to leap down from the ship and fight with the enemy. 5. If they had advanced a little into the water, they could have thrown their javelins. 6. Cæsar says that at this place the men-of-war were of great service to the Romans. 7. He said that they should leap down out of the ships unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy.
II. When Cæsar had noticed that his (soldiers) could not follow the standards, and that the enemy on the exposed flank were hurling (their) weapons, he commanded that reënforcements be sent to those who were hard pressed. The Romans now put the enemy to flight; and if they had had cavalry, they could have pursued them farther.

1 Dative. 2 Gerundive. 3 Ablative absolute. 4 § 66 (Lesson XXI). 5 hoc locō, § 120. b. 6 § 89. 7 § 205 (Lesson XVII). 8 ab. 9 Present participle. 10 Dative, § 88.

LESSON XXVI


a. The Possessive Genitive, § 73.
b. The Genitive of Material, § 79.
c. The Genitive of Description, § 77.
d. The Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole), § 76 and a.
e. The Subjective Genitive, § 75. a.
f. The Objective Genitive, § 75. b.

Note. With cardinal numbers and quidam the ablative with ē or ex is used instead of the partitive genitive:

quattuor ex Helvētiīs, four of the Helvetii

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 27–32)

I. 1. A large part of the hostages whom Cæsar ordered they give immediately. 2. If this storm had arisen suddenly, 1 not one of the ships could have held the course. 3. He said that many ships had been driven out (of their course) to the lower part of the island. 4. Cæsar ordered the ships of the cavalry to set sail from the upper harbor. 5. The storm was so great that no opportunity of aiding was given to our (men). 6. The chiefs of Britain know that cavalry and ships are lacking to the Romans, and think they can cut them off from grain. 7. If the Romans should be conquered by them, nobody would afterwards cross to Britain for the sake of waging war. 8. A part of the soldiers were on guard before the gates of the camp.
II. After this battle had been fought, 4 ambassadors came to Cæsar to seek peace, and said that 5 he ought to pardon them because of (their) ignorance. Cæsar did not doubt that they had waged war without cause, but he pardoned them and ordered hostages, all of whom 6 they gave in a few days.

1 nūllus. 2 dēiciō. 3 Latin, out of. 4 faciō. 5 Latin, it ought to be pardoned to them (Lesson XXI). 6 Not a partitive genitive.

LESSON XXVII

63. The Dative.

a. The Dative as Indirect Object, § 82.
b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.
c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

Note 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of imperat militibus is he gives a command to the soldiers; of persuādet amīcis, he offers persuasion to his friends.

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, amīcis persuādet ut exeant, he persuades (to) his friends to go forth. Here the clause ut exeant is the direct object and amīcis the indirect object of persuādet.

Note 2. Likewise verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, etc. do not take the dative because of the preposition, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, Caesar Gallis bellum infert, Cæsar makes war on the Gauls.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 33–38)

I. 1. Cæsar will bring aid to our (men) 1 if they are alarmed by these things. 2. The barbarians had sent messengers into all parts to declare to their (men) the small number of the Roman soldiers. 3. He points out that the opportunity is given to them of freeing themselves.
4. You see how great an opportunity \(^2\) for taking booty is given to you. 5. He \(^3\) demands of the barbarians a large number of hostages.
6. They persuaded Cæsar to double \(^4\) the number of hostages that he had demanded of them. 7. They had been made subject to the power of the Roman people. 8. They think that he ought not to be made subject to the power of the Roman people.

II. The barbarians, having thought the opportunity was given to them for taking booty and for freeing themselves forever \(^5\) from the fear of the Roman people, sent messengers in all directions to collect infantry and cavalry. Although they came to Cæsar's camp with a great multitude of men, he stationed the legions in line in front of the camp; for he did not doubt that the enemy would not be able to endure the attack of the Roman soldiers.

1 Participle. 2 Latin, of making (gerundive). 3 Latin, orders to. 4 Not infinitive (Lesson X). 5 Ablative, § 101.

LESSON XXVIII

64. The Dative (continued).

\(a\). The Dative of Possession (Possessor), § 88.
\(b\). The Dative of Purpose or End ("Double Dative"), § 89.
\(c\). The Dative of Reference, § 85.
\(d\). The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 40-43)

I. 1. Cicero had in mind to send a letter to Cæsar. 2. The towers will be a great defense \(^2\) for the camp. 3. They thought that the camp would be a great defense for themselves. 4. The towers were next to the camp. 5. The Nervii \(^2\) had no ground for \(^3\) friendship with Cicero. 6. The Nervii say that they have ground for friendship with Cæsar. 7. He says that the Germans \(^4\) who are next to the Rhine have in mind to cross this river. 8. If they hope for \(^5\) any safety for themselves \(^2\) from the Nervii, they are mistaken. 9. These
days were the most severe for the Roman soldiers. 10. He does not doubt that these days were severe for all the soldiers.

II. If all Gaul had been in arms, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine to storm the winter quarters of Cæsar and the others. The Nervii, who said that they were well-disposed 6 to 7 Cicero and the Romans, 8 urged them to depart from winter quarters and set out into whatsoever parts they wished. But when Cicero had replied that he could not accept terms from an enemy 9 in arms, and had advised them to send ambassadors to Cæsar, they began to encircle the winter quarters with a rampart and a ditch.

1 Cf. mihi in animō est, I have in mind, § 88. 2 Dative. 8 Latin, of. 4 § 208. 5 quicquam praesidi. 6 bonō animō, § 116. 7 in. 8 See Lesson X. 9 Latin, armed.

LESSON XXIX

65. The Accusative.

a. The Accusative as Direct Object, § 91.

b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.

c. The Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive, §§ 92, 217. a, b.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 44, 48, 49, 52)

I. 1. When Cæsar had learned in how great danger Cicero was, he persuaded one 1 of the Gauls to carry a letter to him. 2. If this letter had been intercepted by the Gauls, they would have been able to learn Cæsar’s plans. 3. Did Cicero ask for a Gaul 2 to take a letter to Cæsar? 4. If Cæsar knows that Cicero has been freed 3 from the siege, he will send scouts to learn 4 by what route he can cross the river most advantageously. 5. Does he think that he 5 ought to relax 6 his speed? 6. 7 From all these things he is able to judge with what 8 valor Cicero defended himself from the enemy. 7. Will he praise Cicero and the legion or not? 8. Does he think that the legions of Cicero should be praised by him 5?

II. In this legion there were two soldiers 9 who were very brave, one of whom was called Pullo, the other Vorenus. While 10 a sharp
fight is going on at the fortifications, Pullo says, “Vorenus, what opportunity do you wait for to prove your valor?” and immediately advances outside the fortifications and with a javelin pierces one of the enemy who runs forward. When the enemy had hurled their weapons on him and given (him) no opportunity of advancing, Vorenus ran to aid him.

1 quidam. 2 Relative clause of purpose. 3 Ablative, § 101. 4 explôrō. 5 Dative (see Lesson XXI). 6 dē celeritāte. 7 ex. 8 quantus. 9 § 177. 10 acriter pugnātur, § 66. 11 locus. 12 Latin, of proving. 13 Participle. 14 in. 15 neque. 16 illī succurrō.

LESSON XXX

66. The Ablative.

d. The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

Note. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. Caesār ought to cross the Rhine for two reasons. 2. If reënforcements had been sent out of the state, the Ubii would not have sent ambassadors to him for the sake of clearing themselves. 3. He urged them to collect all their (possessions) from the fields into the towns, that the innocent might not pay the penalty for the guilty. 4. We do not doubt that this forest protects them from the wrongdoings and incursions of the enemy. 5. If they had not been driven (to it) by necessity, they would not have gone to Rome for the sake of seeking aid. 6. By the coming of Cæsar a change (in the state) of affairs was made, and the hostages were given back to the Hæduans. 7. Did the Sequani lose the leadership by the coming of the Romans? 8. Did the Remi do this for the sake of obtaining the second place of dignity?
II. In Gaul there were two factions, the chiefs of which had the highest authority. When Cæsar came into Gaul, he learned that the Hædui were the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. The latter had attached the Germans and Ariovistus to themselves, and having killed all the nobility of the Hædui, had compelled them to swear publicly that they would enter into no plan against the Sequani. But Cæsar compelled the Sequani to give back the hostages to the Hædui, and made other great changes of affairs.

1 Dative, § 87. 2 de. 3 § 224. c. 4 See Lesson X. 5 poenās pendō. 6 rēs. 7 Ablative absolute. 8 nihil consili, § 76.

LESSON XXXI

67. The Ablative (continued).

a. The Ablative of Manner, § 110.
b. The Ablative of Agent, § 104.
c. The Ablative of Means, § 106.
d. The Ablative with útor, fruor, etc., § 107. a.
e. The Ablative with opus est, § 107. c.

Note 1. The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires ā or ab:

Galli virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans
Galli ā Rōmānis superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the Romans

Note 2. The ablative of manner is rare without cum or an attributive adjective.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 13-17)

I. 1. There are those 1 who are oppressed by debt, tributes, (and) the wrongdoing of the more powerful. 2. Some went to the Druids of their own accord; others were sent by their parents and relatives. 3. If they had thought it was right to intrust these things to letters, they would not have wished to use Greek letters. 4. They think that those 2 who trust in letters 3 pay less attention to memory. 5. The
life of man must be paid ⁴ for the life of man. ⁶ They sacrifice men ⁵ because (they say) they think that for the life of man the life of man must be paid. ⁷ Images of a huge size are filled with living men and set on fire. ⁸ We do not doubt that these images were filled with living men and set on fire.

II. In all Gaul the Druids were the most powerful. They were accustomed to attend ⁶ to ⁷ matters of religion, and ⁸ were exempt from war. Cæsar says that they ⁹ decided all controversies, and that if anybody ¹⁰ did not abide by their decree, they ¹¹ prohibited (him) from (taking part in) the sacrifices. Over all these Druids one presided, who had the greatest authority among them.

LESSON XXXII

68. The Ablative (continued).

b. The Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference, § 114.
c. The Ablative of Respect (Specification), § 115.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 18–23)

I. ¹. These states differ ¹ from one another in language, customs, (and) laws. ². In this (respect) the Gauls differ from ² the others. ³. They will establish ³ peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. ⁴. If anybody has heard anything from the neighbors, he informs ⁴ the magistrates. ⁵. After a year the magistrates compel the Germans to go ⁵ elsewhere. ⁶. If a state should carry on war with (its) neighbors, magistrates would be chosen to ⁶ take charge of this war. ⁷. After a few years they will build (houses) ⁷ to avoid the cold ⁸ and heat. ⁸. Their neighbors had been driven out of the fields many years before.

II. Cæsar said that the Germans differed much from the Gauls; that they neither had Druids to take charge of ⁹ matters of religion,
nor did they pay heed to sacrifices; that their gods were the Sun and Vulcan and the Moon, by whose resources they were visibly aided; and that their whole life consisted in hunting and the pursuits of warfare.

1 inter se. 2 ab. 3 confirmō. 4 Latin, shares (it) with. 5 transeō. 6 Not infinitive. 7 Gerundive. 8 Plural. 9 rēs divīnae. 10 studeō.

LESSON XXXIII

69. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. a–i, 228.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 1–5)

I. 1. He said that they would set out for Gaul on the third of October. 2. When they had prepared everything, they appointed a day on which to assemble at Cenabum. This day was the twenty-eighth of March. 3. If this report had been carried to all the states of Gaul, great forces would have been collected on the tenth of August. 4. They say that he demanded hostages of all these states on the thirteenth of April. 5. Having collected a large army, he will set out for the Hædui on the seventeenth of April. 6. On the sixteenth of March envoys had been sent to ask for a reënforcement. 7. Even if they set out on the fourteenth of July, they will cross the river many days later. 8. After Cæsar’s death Augustus became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

II. The Gauls did not doubt that Cæsar would be detained in Italy and not be able to return to the army; and so they entered into plans for war. They thought that it would be easy to cut Cæsar off from the army, because (they said) the legions were in winter quarters and could not go out without a commander. Vercingetorix, a young man of the greatest power, tried to persuade all the Gauls to take up arms for the sake of general freedom.

1 Ablative absolute (cf. p. 15, ll. 10–12). 2 § 175. 3 Dative. 4 mors. 5 princeps fiō. 6 § 228. 7 dé. 8 Not infinitive.
70. EXERCISE
(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 6–10, 63, 64)

I. 1. Caesar did not summon the legions into the province because (he said) they could engage in battle on the march. 2. While these things were being prepared, Cæsar’s forces gathered together in (into) the territory of the Helvetians. 3. Cæsar waited in these places a few days until the forces which he had ordered to assemble should come to him. 4. Brutus, whom he had put in command of these soldiers, he urged not to be away long from camp. 5. When he had come into the territory of the Lingones, he wished to collect the other legions into one place before the Arverni should be informed of his coming. 6. If he had not set out for the Boii, he would have sent envoys to them to inform (them) of his coming, and to urge (them) to sustain with great courage the attack of the enemy. 7. When Vercingetorix had ordered hostages of the other states, the cavalry urged him not to tempt fortune, and persuaded him to try to cut off the Romans from foragings.

II. The Arverni thought that they were protected by the mountain, because at this time of year the paths had never lain open. But Cæsar crossed the mountain so quickly that he arrived at their territory before they knew he had set out for Gaul. In their alarm they quickly gathered about Vercingetorix and begged him not to permit them to be plundered by the Romans.

1 § 198. I. 2 Not infinitive. 3 Dative. 4 pābulātiō. 5 Participle.

71. EXERCISE
(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 65–71)

I. 1. The enemy were superior in infantry of light armor and in cavalry, and Cæsar knew that they were guarding their territory with great care. 2. When the forces of the enemy were gathering together,
Caesar marched into the territory of the Sequani, 1 that he might the more easily bring aid to the province. 3. You yourselves ought 2 not to doubt that nobody will dare to advance. 4. Caesar knew that the knights of the enemy could not be prevented 8 from advancing, and he ordered his own cavalry to go against them. 5. If he should have these soldiers in front of the camp, they would be a terror 4 to the enemy. 6. 5 When these things had been reported, Caesar ordered the army 6 to halt, that the baggage might be taken back inside the legions. 7. Meanwhile pickets ought to be placed by Caesar 7 in these redoubts, that no sally may suddenly be made.

II. Unless Vercingetorix had wished to march immediately to Alesia, he would not have withdrawn the forces which were stationed before the camp. Caesar, having left two legions as a guard to the baggage, followed the enemy so quickly that on the second day he pitched 8 camp at Alesia. He set about investing 9 the town because he thought that it could not be reduced 10 except 11 by siege. The circuit of the Roman fortification measured 12 eleven miles. Vercingetorix, having received into the town all the forces which he had stationed before the town, prepared to await reënforcements.

1 § 176.  2 débeō.  3 § 185.  4 § 89.  5 Ablative absolute.  6 agmen.  7 Dative.  8 faciō.  9 circumvallare.  10 expugnō.  11 nisi.  12 teneō.

LESSON XXXVI

72.  MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1–7)

Caesar says that the Belgians inhabited one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another, (and) the Gauls the third; that of all these the Belgians, who were farthest away from the Roman province and carried on war with the Germans, were the bravest; (and) that the Helvetians surpassed the other Gauls in valor because they either repelled the Germans from their own territory or carried on war in the territory of the Germans. 1

The Helvetians, 2 who were fond of making war, were persuaded to go out of their territory. But since they wished to march through
the province, Cæsar, ³ having collected a large army in Italy, hastened
to set out for Gaul.

Ambassadors were sent to Cæsar by the Helvetians to ask him to
permit ⁴ them to march through the province. But Cæsar, who was
waiting until his soldiers should assemble, replied to them thus: "I
shall take time ⁵ ⁶ to think about (it); if you wish anything, return on ⁷
the thirteenth of April." ⁸

1 Use a pronoun, and cf. note on p. lxiv, l. 11.  ² Dative.  ³ See Lesson XX.
⁴ See Lesson X.  ⁵ diem.  ⁶ ad dēliberandum.  ⁷ ad.  ⁸ § 227.
The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years in Latin are given below

**FIRST AND SECOND YEARS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ab, ā</td>
<td>27. aequus</td>
<td>51. angustus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. abdō</td>
<td>28. aes</td>
<td>52. animadvertō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. accēdō</td>
<td>29. aestās</td>
<td>53. animus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. accidō</td>
<td>30. aestus</td>
<td>54. annus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. accipō</td>
<td>31. aetās</td>
<td>55. ante</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ācer</td>
<td>32. ager</td>
<td>56. anteā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. acies</td>
<td>33. agger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. acūtus</td>
<td>34. agmen</td>
<td>57. antīquus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. ad</td>
<td>35. agō</td>
<td>58. aperiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. adeō (adv.)</td>
<td>36. alacer</td>
<td>59. appellō, -āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. adficiō</td>
<td>37. aliēnus</td>
<td>60. appropinquō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. adgreō</td>
<td></td>
<td>61. apud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. adhibēō</td>
<td>38. aliquis</td>
<td>62. aqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. adigo</td>
<td>39. aliter</td>
<td>63. aquila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. aditus</td>
<td>40. alius</td>
<td>64. arbitror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. administrō</td>
<td>41. alō</td>
<td>65. arbor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. admissō</td>
<td>42. alter</td>
<td>66. accessō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. admodum</td>
<td></td>
<td>67. arma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. adorior</td>
<td>43. altus</td>
<td>68. at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. adsum</td>
<td>44. amīcus</td>
<td>69. atque, ac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. adulēscēns</td>
<td>45. āmissō</td>
<td>70. attingō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. adversus (adj.)</td>
<td>46. amplius</td>
<td>71. auctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. aedificium</td>
<td>47. amplus</td>
<td>72. auctōritās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. aeger</td>
<td>48. an</td>
<td>73. audāx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. aegrē</td>
<td>49. ancora</td>
<td>74. audēō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. aequō</td>
<td>50. angustiae</td>
<td>75. audiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>76. augeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>77. aut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(See page 448)
**ENGLISH WORD LIST**

*(See page 447)*

The words prescribed by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years in Latin are given below

**FIRST AND SECOND YEARS**

1. away from, by  
2. put away, hide  
3. go to, approach, be added  
4. befall, happen  
5. take to, receive, accept  
6. sharp, keen, eager  
7. edge, line of battle  
8. sharp  
9. to, toward, near  
10. up to this, so  
11. do to, affect  
12. step up, approach, attack  
13. have on hand, supply  
14. drive to, haul, move  
15. approach  
16. govern, manage  
17. let go, admit  
18. very, very much  
19. rise against, attack  
20. be near, be present  
21. youth, young man  
22. (turned toward) facing, opposite  
23. building  
24. sick  
25. with difficulty  
26. make equal

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 | 64 | 65 | 66 | 67 | 68 | 69 | 70 | 71 | 72 | 73 | 74 | 75 | 76 | 77 |
78. autem
79. auxilium
80. barbarus
81. bellum
82. bene
83. beneficium
84. biduum
85. bini
86. bis
87. bonus
88. brevis
89. cadet
90. caedem
91. caedo
92. calamitatis
93. campus
94. capio
95. captivus
96. caput
97. castellum
98. castra
99. casus
100. causae
101. cedo
102. celer
103. censeo
104. centum
105. centuriote
106. cerno
107. certus
108. ceteri
109. cibus
110. circiter
111. circum
112. circumdole
113. circumsistode
114. ceterior
115. civis
116. civitas
117. clam
118. clamore
119. classis
120. claudo
121. cliens
122. coepi
123. cogito
124. cognoscere
125. cogere
126. cohors
127. colligere
128. collis
129. commeatus
130. commemorare
131. committere
132. commodus
133. communio
134. communis
135. comperiere
136. complures
137. concede
138. concile
139. condicio
140. confertus
141. confestim
142. conficiere
143. confidere
144. confirmo
145. confidere
146. confurio
147. conlocare
148. colloquium
149. conor
150. conquerere
151. conscribere
152. consentiere
153. consequor
154. conside
155. consilium
156. consistere
157. conspiciere
158. conspicare
159. constare
160. constituto
161. consuecre
162. consuetudine
163. consule
164. consulo
165. consuevere
166. conteminer
167. contendere
168. continere
169. continuus
170. contrare
171. contraversia
172. contumelia
173. copia
174. cornu
175. corpus
176. cotidie
177. creber
78. moreover, but
79. aid, assistance
80. foreign, rude
81. war
82. well
83. kind deed, service
84. two days
85. two each
86. twice
87. good
88. short, brief
89. fall
90. slaughter
91. fell, cut, kill
92. disaster
93. plain, field
94. take, seize
95. captive, prisoner
96. head
97. fort, redoubt
98. camp
99. fall, chance, accident
100. by reason of, for the sake of
101. move, go away, yield
102. swift
103. assess, propose, estimate, vote
104. hundred
105. centurion
106. distinguish
107. sure, certain
108. the others, the rest
109. food
110. about
111. around
112. put around, surround
113. hem in, surround
114. this side of, hither
115. citizen
116. citizenship, community, state
117. secretly
118. shout, cry
119. fleet
120. close, shut
121. dependent, retainer, vassal
122. have begun
123. think, reflect
124. learn; perf. know
125. drive together, gather, compel
126. cohort, troop
127. gather, collect
128. hill
129. supplies
130. mention
131. send together, intrust, join
132. suitable, convenient
133. share, communicate
134. common, general
135. find out, ascertain
136. several, very many
137. go with, withdraw, yield
138. calling together, meeting
139. agreement, terms, condition
140. crowded together, dense
141. promptly
142. accomplish, complete
143. trust
144. strengthen, assert
145. strike together, fight
146. conspire, plot
147. place together, establish
148. conference
149. try, attempt
150. seek together, collect
151. write together, enroll
152. think together, agree
153. follow up, overtake, attain
154. settle, take position
155. plan, counsel
156. take position, halt, stop
157. behold
158. behold
159. it is agreed, is evident
160. put together, establish, decide
161. become accustomed
162. custom, habit
163. consul
164. plan, consult, deliberate
165. use up
166. despise
167. struggle, hasten
168. hold together, bound
169. unbroken
170. against, opposite
171. dispute, quarrel
172. insult
173. supply, abundance; plur. forces
174. horn, wing (of an army)
175. body
176. every day, daily
177. thick, close, frequent
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>crēdō</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>dexter</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>equitātus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179</td>
<td>cruciātus</td>
<td>215</td>
<td>dicō, -ere</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>equus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>cum (prep.)</td>
<td>216</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>252</td>
<td>et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181</td>
<td>cum (conj.)</td>
<td>217</td>
<td>differō</td>
<td>253</td>
<td>etiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182</td>
<td>cupidus</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>difficilis</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>etsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183</td>
<td>cupiō</td>
<td>219</td>
<td>dīgnus</td>
<td>255</td>
<td>ex, ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184</td>
<td>cūr</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>dīligēns</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>examīnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185</td>
<td>cūra</td>
<td>221</td>
<td>dīmicō</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>excipiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186</td>
<td>cūrō</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>dīrigō (dērigō)</td>
<td>258</td>
<td>exercēō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187</td>
<td>currō</td>
<td>223</td>
<td>dīripō</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>exercitātiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188</td>
<td>cursus</td>
<td>224</td>
<td>disciplīna</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189</td>
<td>cūstōs</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>dispersūs</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>exigius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dē</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>diū</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>existinō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>dēbeō</td>
<td>227</td>
<td>diversus</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>exitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191</td>
<td>dēbeō</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>dīvidō</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>expediō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>229</td>
<td>dō (and compounds in -dēre)</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>experior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193</td>
<td>dēcernō</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>doceō</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>explōrātor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194</td>
<td>dēcertō</td>
<td>231</td>
<td>doleō</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>explōrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>expōnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196</td>
<td>dēclīvis</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>dubitō</td>
<td>269</td>
<td>expugnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197</td>
<td>dēdō</td>
<td>234</td>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>exspectō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198</td>
<td>dēfendō</td>
<td>235</td>
<td>dum</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>extruō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199</td>
<td>dēferō</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>272</td>
<td>extrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>dēfessus</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>dūrus</td>
<td>273</td>
<td>extrēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>dēficiō</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>274</td>
<td>facilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>deinde</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>ēditus</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>faciō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203</td>
<td>dēleō</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>efferō</td>
<td>276</td>
<td>factiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204</td>
<td>dēligō, -ere</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>efficiō</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>facultās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205</td>
<td>dēmōnstrō</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>ego</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>fallō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>dēserō</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>ēgregius</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>fāma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207</td>
<td>dēsiderō</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>emō</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>famēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>dēsistō</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>enim</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>familia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209</td>
<td>dēspērō</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>eō, īre</td>
<td>282</td>
<td>familiāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>dēspiciō</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>eō (adv.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>dēsum</td>
<td>248</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td>dētrimentum</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>eques</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213</td>
<td>deus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178.</td>
<td>give trust, believe, trust</td>
<td>214.</td>
<td>right (of direction)</td>
<td>250.</td>
<td>body of horsemen, cavalry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>179.</td>
<td>torture</td>
<td>215.</td>
<td>say, speak</td>
<td>251.</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180.</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>216.</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>252.</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>181.</td>
<td>when, since, although</td>
<td>217.</td>
<td>be different, differ, postpone</td>
<td>253.</td>
<td>also, even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>182.</td>
<td>desirous</td>
<td>218.</td>
<td>difficult</td>
<td>254.</td>
<td>and if, although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>183.</td>
<td>desire, wish</td>
<td>219.</td>
<td>worthy, deserving</td>
<td>255.</td>
<td>out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>184.</td>
<td>why</td>
<td>220.</td>
<td>careful</td>
<td>256.</td>
<td>kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185.</td>
<td>care, anxiety</td>
<td>221.</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>257.</td>
<td>take out, succeed to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186.</td>
<td>care for, provide</td>
<td>222.</td>
<td>direct, guide</td>
<td>258.</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>187.</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>223.</td>
<td>tear apart</td>
<td>259.</td>
<td>training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>188.</td>
<td>running, course</td>
<td>224.</td>
<td>training, discipline</td>
<td>260.</td>
<td>trained body, army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>189.</td>
<td>guardian, watchman</td>
<td>225.</td>
<td>scatter</td>
<td>261.</td>
<td>limited, little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190.</td>
<td>down from, concerning</td>
<td>226.</td>
<td>a long time</td>
<td>262.</td>
<td>think, believe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>191.</td>
<td>owe, ought</td>
<td>227.</td>
<td>turned away, different</td>
<td>263.</td>
<td>outcome, end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192.</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>228.</td>
<td>separate, divide</td>
<td>264.</td>
<td>extricate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>193.</td>
<td>decide, decree</td>
<td>229.</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>265.</td>
<td>try out, test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>194.</td>
<td>fight a decisive battle</td>
<td>230.</td>
<td>teach, inform</td>
<td>266.</td>
<td>scout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195.</td>
<td>tenth</td>
<td>231.</td>
<td>grieve</td>
<td>267.</td>
<td>reconnoiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>196.</td>
<td>sloping down</td>
<td>232.</td>
<td>home, house</td>
<td>268.</td>
<td>put forth, set forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>197.</td>
<td>give over, devote, surrender</td>
<td>233.</td>
<td>hesitate, doubt</td>
<td>269.</td>
<td>take by storm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>198.</td>
<td>ward off, defend</td>
<td>234.</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>270.</td>
<td>look out for, wait for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>199.</td>
<td>carry away, report</td>
<td>235.</td>
<td>while, as long as, provided, until</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200.</td>
<td>tired out</td>
<td>236.</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>271.</td>
<td>pile up, build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td>fail, revolt from</td>
<td>237.</td>
<td>hard, harsh</td>
<td>272.</td>
<td>outside of, beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202.</td>
<td>thereupon, next</td>
<td>238.</td>
<td>leader</td>
<td>273.</td>
<td>outermost, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>203.</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>239.</td>
<td>elevated, high</td>
<td>274.</td>
<td>easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>204.</td>
<td>pick, choose, love</td>
<td>240.</td>
<td>bear out, lift up</td>
<td>275.</td>
<td>do, make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205.</td>
<td>point out</td>
<td>241.</td>
<td>work out, accomplish, bring about</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206.</td>
<td>give up, abandon</td>
<td>242.</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>276.</td>
<td>party, faction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td>desire, long for</td>
<td>243.</td>
<td>outstanding, distinguished</td>
<td>277.</td>
<td>power of doing, ability, chance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208.</td>
<td>desist</td>
<td>244.</td>
<td>buy, take</td>
<td>278.</td>
<td>deceive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>209.</td>
<td>give up hope</td>
<td>245.</td>
<td>for, indeed</td>
<td>279.</td>
<td>reputation, rumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210.</td>
<td>look down upon, despise</td>
<td>246.</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>280.</td>
<td>hunger, starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211.</td>
<td>be lacking</td>
<td>247.</td>
<td>thither, to that place</td>
<td>281.</td>
<td>household</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212.</td>
<td>loss</td>
<td>248.</td>
<td>to the same place</td>
<td>282.</td>
<td>belonging to the household, intimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213.</td>
<td>god</td>
<td>249.</td>
<td>horsemn, knight; plur. cavalry</td>
<td>283.</td>
<td>almost, about, generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>284.</td>
<td>bring, bear, carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>285.</td>
<td>iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>286.</td>
<td>wild, fierce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
287. fides
288. fiducia
289. figō
290. filius
291. finō
292. finis
293. finitus
294. fiō
295. firmus
296. fleō
297. flūmen
298. fluō
299. fōrma
300. fors
301. fortis
302. fortūna
303. fossa
304. frangō
305. frāter
306. frōns, frontis
307. frūmentum
308. frūstrā
309. fuga
310. fugiō
311. fundō, -ere
312. gēns
313. genus
314. gerō
315. gladius
316. glōria
317. grātia
318. grātus
319. gravis
320. -grediōr
321. habeō
322. hibērna
323. hic (pron.)
324. hiemō
325. hiems
326. homō
327. honor
328. hōra
329. hortor
330. hostis
331. hūc
332. humilis
333. iaciō
334. iam
335. ibi
336. Idem
337. idōneus
338. ignis
339. ignōrō
340. ille
341. impedīmentum
342. impediō
343. imperium
344. imperō
345. impetrō
346. impetus
347. in
348. incendō
349. incidō
350. incipiō
351. incitō
352. incolō
353. incolumis
354. inde
355. indicō, -ere
356. ineō
357. inermis
358. Inferior, İnīmūs, İmus
359. inimīcus
360. inīquus
361. initium
362. iniūria
363. inopia
364. inquam
365. İnsideiae
366. İnsideiae
367. İnstituō
368. Instō
369. İnstruō
370. Insula
371. Integer
372. Intellegō
373. Inter
374. Interclūdō
375. Interēa
376. Interēō
377. Interest
378. Interficiō
379. Interim
380. Interior
381. Intermittō
382. Intervallum
383. Instrā
384. Inveniō
385. Invītus
386. Ipse
387. Is
388. Istē
389. Itā
390. Item
391. Iter
392. Iubeō
393. Iūdicō
394. Iugum
395. Iungō
396. Iūrō
397. Iūs
398. Iūs İurandum
399. Iūstus
400. Iuvō
401. Labor, -ōris
402. Labōrō
403. Lacessō
404. Lapis
405. Latus, -a, -um
406. Latus, -eris
287. trust, pledge, reliability
288. confidence
289. fasten
290. son
291. limit, bound, end
292. end, boundary; plur. territory
293. neighboring
294. be made, happen, become
295. strong
296. weep
297. river
298. flow
299. shape, beauty
300. chance
301. brave
302. chance, fortune
303. ditch
304. break
305. brother
306. forehead, front
307. grain
308. in vain
309. flight
310. flee
311. pour out
312. family, clan, tribe
313. origin, kind, race
314. carry on
315. sword
316. renown, glory
317. favor, influence, gratitude
318. pleasing, grateful
319. heavy, serious
320. step, go
321. have, hold
322. winter quarters
323. this
324. spend the winter
325. winter
326. man, human being
327. honor, glory, office
328. hour
329. urge, advise
330. enemy
331. hither
332. low, lowly
333. hurl, throw
334. now, already
335. there
336. the same
337. suitable
338. fire
339. be unacquainted with
340. that
341. hindrance; plur. baggage
342. hinder
343. command, power
344. command, impose
345. obtain (a request)
346. attack, charge, rush
347. in, into
348. set on fire
349. befall, happen
350. begin
351. urge on, arouse
352. dwell in
353. unharmed
354. thence
355. proclaim, appoint
356. go into, undertake
357. unarmed
358. lower; lowest, last
359. unfriendly
360. uneven, unfair
361. beginning
362. wrong
363. want, lack
364. quoth, say
365. ambush, treachery
366. badge, device
367. set up, establish
368. stand on, press on, be at hand
369. arrange, marshal
370. island
371. whole
372. understand
373. between, among
374. shut off, cut off
375. meanwhile
376. perish
377. it concerns
378. kill
379. meanwhile
380. inner
381. interrupt, stop
382. space between walls, interval
383. inside, within
384. come upon, find
385. against one's will
386. self, very
387. this, that, he
388. that one (of yours)
389. thus, so
390. likewise
391. road, march
392. order, command
393. judge, decide
394. yoke, ridge
395. join
396. make oath, swear
397. right, law
398. oath
399. just, fair
400. aid, please
401. toil
402. toil, suffer
403. challenge, harass
404. stone
405. wide
406. side
| 407. laudō | 447. miles | 485. nēmō |
| 408. laus | 448. mīlle | 486. neque, nec |
| 409. légātiō | 449. minuō | 487. neuter |
| 410. légātus | 450. mīror | 488. nēve, neu |
| 411. legiō | 451. mīrus | 489. nihil |
| 412. lēnis | 452. miser | 490. nisi |
| 413. levis | 453. mittō | 491. nōbilis |
| 414. lēx | 454. modo | 492. noceō |
| 415. liber, -a, -um | 455. modus | 493. noctū |
| 416. liberī | 456. moneō | 494. nōlō |
| 417. liberō | 457. mōns | 495. nōmen |
| 418. licet | 458. mora | 496. nōn |
| 419. littera | 459. moror | 497. nōndum |
| 420. litus | 460. mors | 498. nōnus |
| 421. locus | 461. mōs | 499. nōscō |
| 422. longus | 462. mōtus | 500. noster |
| 423. loquor | 463. moveō | 501. novem |
| 424. lūx | 464. mulier | 502. novus |
| 425. magis | 465. multus | 503.nox |
| 426. magistrātus | 466. mūniō | 504. nūdō |
| 427. magnus | | 505. nūllus |
| 428. mālō | | 506. num |
| 429. malus, -a, -um | | 507. numerus |
| 430. mandō | | 508. numquam |
| 431. maneō | | 509. nunc |
| 432. manus | | 510. nūntiō |
| 433. mare | | 511. nūntius |
| 434. māter | | 512. ob |
| 435. māteria | | 513. obiciō |
| 436. mātūrus | | 514. obses |
| 437. mediocris | | 515. obsideō |
| 438. medius | | 516. obtineō |
| 439. memoria | | 517. occāsiō |
| 440. mēns | | 518. occāsus |
| 441. mēnsis | | 519. occidō |
| 442. mercātor | | 520. occultō |
| 443. mereō, mercor | | 521. occultus |
| 444. merīdiēs | | |
| 445. metus | | |
| 446. meus | | |

| 447. mīles | | 485. nēmō |
| 448. mīlle | | 486. neque, nec |
| 449. minuō | | 487. neuter |
| 450. mīror | | 488. nēve, neu |
| 451. mīrus | | 489. nihil |
| 452. miser | | 490. nisi |
| 453. mittō | | 491. nōbilis |
| 454. modo | | 492. noceō |
| 455. modus | | 493. noctū |
| 456. moneō | | 494. nōlō |
| 457. mōns | | 495. nōmen |
| 458. mora | | 496. nōn |
| 459. moror | | 497. nōndum |
| 460. mors | | 498. nōnus |
| 461. mōs | | 499. nōscō |
| 462. mōtus | | 500. noster |
| 463. moveō | | 501. novem |
| 464. mulier | | 502. novus |
| 465. multus | | 503. nox |
| 466. mūniō | | 504. nūdō |
| 467. mūnus | | 505. nūllus |
| 468. mūrus | | 506. num |
| 469. mūtō | | 507. numerus |
| 470. nam | | 508. numquam |
| 471. namque | | 509. nunc |
| 472. nanciscor | | 510. nūntiō |
| 473. nāscor | | 511. nūntius |
| 474. nātiō | | 512. ob |
| 475. nātūra | | 513. obiciō |
| 476. nāvigō | | 514. obses |
| 477. nāvis | | 515. obsideō |
| 478. -ne | | 516. obtineō |
| 479. nē (conj.) | | 517. occāsiō |
| 480. necesse | | 518. occāsus |
| 481. necō | | 519. occidō |
| 482. neglegō | | 520. occultō |
| 483. negō | | 521. occultus |
| 484. negotium | | |
407. praise 447. soldier 485. nobody
408. praise, glory 448. thousand 486. and not, nor, neither
409. mission, embassy 449. lessen 487. neither (of two)
410. envoy, deputy 450. marvel at 488. and that not
411. legion 451. marvelous, astonishing 489. nothing
412. gentle, kind 452. wretched 490. if not, unless, except
413. light, fickle 453. send 491. well-known
414. law 454. only, just now 492. harm
415. free 455. measure, manner 493. at night
416. (freeborn) children 456. warn, advise 494. be unwilling
417. set free 457. mountain 495. name
418. it is permitted 458. delay 496. not
419. letter (of the alphabet); plur. a letter, letters 459. delay, tarry 497. not yet
420. coast, shore, beach 460. death 498. ninth
421. place 461. manner, habit 499. learn, recognize
422. long 462. commotion, turmoil, uprising 500. our, ours
423. talk 463. move 501. nine
424. light 464. woman 502. new
425. more greatly, more 465. much; plur. many 503. night
426. office, official 466. do a task, build, fortify 504. make bare, empty
427. great 467. task, duty, service, offering 505. none, no
428. prefer 468. (town) wall 506. (a question particle)
429. bad 469. change 507. number
430. hand over, commission 470. for 508. never
431. stay, remain 471. for indeed, for 509. now
432. hand, band, troop 472. obtain 510. give news, announce
433. sea 473. be born 511. news, message, messenger
434. mother 474. race, people 512. against, on account of
435. timber 475. nature, character 513. throw against
436. ripe, early 476. sail 514. hostage
437. middle, average 477. ship 515. set against, besiege
438. middle 478. (interrogative particle) 516. hold fast, obtain
439. memory 479. lest, that not 517. opportunity
440. mind 480. necessary 518. falling, setting
441. month 481. kill 519. fall, set
442. trader 482. overlook, neglect 520. hide
443. earn, deserve 483. deny, refuse 521. hidden, secret
444. midday 484. business, task
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>occupo</td>
<td>patior</td>
<td>porta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occurro</td>
<td>pauci</td>
<td>porto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octavus</td>
<td>paulátim</td>
<td>portus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>octó</td>
<td>paulisper</td>
<td>poscó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>paulum</td>
<td>possum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offeró</td>
<td>pàx</td>
<td>post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officium</td>
<td>pecúnia</td>
<td>posteā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnīnō</td>
<td>pecus, -oris</td>
<td>posteāquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>pedes</td>
<td>posterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onerārius</td>
<td>pellō</td>
<td>postquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onus</td>
<td>per</td>
<td>postrīdiē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opera</td>
<td>perēō</td>
<td>postulō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opiniō</td>
<td>perficiō</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportet</td>
<td>perfidia</td>
<td>potestās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum</td>
<td>periculum</td>
<td>potior, -īri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnus</td>
<td>peritus</td>
<td>praebēō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opprimō</td>
<td>permittō</td>
<td>praecipiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppugnō</td>
<td>perpetuus</td>
<td>praedica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ops</td>
<td>perspiciō</td>
<td>praedicō, -āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus</td>
<td>persuādeō</td>
<td>praedictus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrātiō</td>
<td>pertineō</td>
<td>praedictus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrdō</td>
<td>perturbō</td>
<td>praefectus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orior</td>
<td>pēs</td>
<td>praeficiō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōrō</td>
<td>petō</td>
<td>praecipitō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostendō</td>
<td>pilum</td>
<td>praedium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pābulor</td>
<td>placeō</td>
<td>praemium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pābulum</td>
<td>plānitiēs</td>
<td>praesēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pācō</td>
<td>plēbs</td>
<td>praesertim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paene</td>
<td>-pleō</td>
<td>praesidium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palūs</td>
<td>plēriquē</td>
<td>praestō, -āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pār</td>
<td>poena</td>
<td>praestō, -āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parcō</td>
<td>plērumque</td>
<td>praesum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō</td>
<td>poenae</td>
<td>praeter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parō</td>
<td>poena</td>
<td>praeterēā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars</td>
<td>pollicēor</td>
<td>prehendō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>pōnō</td>
<td>premō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus</td>
<td>pōns</td>
<td>prex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pateō</td>
<td>populor</td>
<td>prīdiē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>522.</td>
<td>seize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>523.</td>
<td>run against, meet</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>524.</td>
<td>eighth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>525.</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>526.</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>527.</td>
<td>bring against, offer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>528.</td>
<td>duty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>529.</td>
<td>altogether, at all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530.</td>
<td>all, whole; sing. every</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>531.</td>
<td>suitable for burden, transport (ship)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>532.</td>
<td>burden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>533.</td>
<td>work, effort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>534.</td>
<td>belief, view</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>535.</td>
<td>it behooves, ought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>536.</td>
<td>town</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>537.</td>
<td>at the right time, suitable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>538.</td>
<td>crush, overwhelm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>539.</td>
<td>attack, assault</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>540.</td>
<td>aid, resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>541.</td>
<td>work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>542.</td>
<td>speech</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>543.</td>
<td>order, rank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>544.</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>545.</td>
<td>pray, plead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>546.</td>
<td>hold out, show</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>547.</td>
<td>forage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>548.</td>
<td>fodder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>549.</td>
<td>make peace, subdue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550.</td>
<td>almost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>551.</td>
<td>swamp, marsh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>552.</td>
<td>equal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>553.</td>
<td>spare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>554.</td>
<td>obey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>555.</td>
<td>make ready, prepare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>556.</td>
<td>part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>557.</td>
<td>small</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>558.</td>
<td>pace, step</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>559.</td>
<td>lie open, extend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>560.</td>
<td>father</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>561.</td>
<td>suffer, allow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>562.</td>
<td>a few, few</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>563.</td>
<td>little by little</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>564.</td>
<td>for a little while</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>565.</td>
<td>(for) a little</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>566.</td>
<td>peace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>567.</td>
<td>money</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>568.</td>
<td>cattle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>569.</td>
<td>foot soldier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>570.</td>
<td>strike, beat, drive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>571.</td>
<td>hang, suspend, pay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>572.</td>
<td>through</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>573.</td>
<td>go through, perish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>574.</td>
<td>accomplish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>575.</td>
<td>treachery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576.</td>
<td>trial, danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>577.</td>
<td>experienced, skilled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>578.</td>
<td>allow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>579.</td>
<td>unbroken, lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>580.</td>
<td>look through, understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>581.</td>
<td>persuade, convince</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>582.</td>
<td>extend, belong to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>583.</td>
<td>throw into confusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>584.</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>585.</td>
<td>seek, attack, ask</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>586.</td>
<td>spear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>587.</td>
<td>please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>588.</td>
<td>plain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>589.</td>
<td>common people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>590.</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>591.</td>
<td>the greater part, majority</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>592.</td>
<td>for the greater part, generally</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>593.</td>
<td>penalty, punishment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>594.</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>595.</td>
<td>put, place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>596.</td>
<td>bridge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>597.</td>
<td>lay waste, ravage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>598.</td>
<td>people, nation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>599.</td>
<td>gate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600.</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601.</td>
<td>harbor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>602.</td>
<td>demand, claim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>603.</td>
<td>be able, can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>604.</td>
<td>after, behind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>605.</td>
<td>after that, afterwards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>606.</td>
<td>after</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>607.</td>
<td>next, later</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>608.</td>
<td>(later than) after</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>609.</td>
<td>next, later</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>610.</td>
<td>demand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611.</td>
<td>able, powerful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>612.</td>
<td>power</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>613.</td>
<td>get power over, gain possession of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>614.</td>
<td>hold in front, afford, furnish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>615.</td>
<td>advise, give directions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>616.</td>
<td>prey, booty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>617.</td>
<td>assert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>618.</td>
<td>captain, commander</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>619.</td>
<td>put at the head of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>620.</td>
<td>send ahead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>621.</td>
<td>reward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>622.</td>
<td>present, in person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>623.</td>
<td>particularly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>624.</td>
<td>garrison, protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>625.</td>
<td>stand before, excel, guarantee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>626.</td>
<td>be ahead, be in charge of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>627.</td>
<td>along past, beside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>628.</td>
<td>besides this, moreover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>629.</td>
<td>seize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>630.</td>
<td>press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>631.</td>
<td>prayer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>632.</td>
<td>on the day before</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
633. primus
634. princeps
635. principatus
636. prior
637. pristinus
638. priusquam
639. privatus
640. pro
641. probō
642. procul
643. prōdō
644. proelium
645. profectiō
646. prōficiō
647. proficiscor
648. prohibēō
649. prōiciō
650. prōnūntiō
651. prope
652. propinquus
653. propter
654. proptereā
655. prōtinus
656. prōvincia
657. prūdēns
658. publicus
659. puer
660. pugna
661. putō
662. quā
663. quae
664. quae
665. quām
666. quantus
667. quiētus
668. quiūn
669. -que
670. queror
671. qui
672. quiēcumque
673. quīdam
674. quidem
675. quiēs
676. quiētus
677. quiān
678. quīnque
679. quīntus
680. quis (interrog. and indef.)
681. quisquam
682. quīisque
683. quō
684. quod
685. quoniam
686. quoque
687. rapiō
688. ratiō
689. recēns
690. recuperō
691. recēsō
692. reddō
693. redeō
694. redigō
695. reficiō
696. regiō
697. rēgnum
698. regō
699. religiō
700. relinquō
701. reliquis
702. remittō
703. rēmus
704. repente
705. repentīnus
706. reperiō
707. rēs
708. respondeō
709. restitūō
710. revertor
711. rēx
712. ripa
713. rogō
714. rūmor
715. rumpō
716. rūrsus
717. saepe
718. sagitta
719. salūs
720. satis
721. saxum
722. -scendō
723. sciō
724. scribō
725. scūtum
726. secundus
727. sed
728. semper
729. senātus
730. sententia
731. sentiō
732. septem
733. septimus
734. sequor
735. servitūs
736. servī
737. servus
738. sex
739. sextus
740. sī
741. sīc
742. sīcut
633. first
634. leading man, chief
635. leadership
636. preceding, former
637. former, of old
638. (sooner than) before, until
639. apart, private
640. in front of, in behalf of
641. prove, approve
642. afar
643. put forth, betray
644. battle
645. departure
646. accomplish, gain
647. set forth, start
648. keep away
649. hurl (forward)
650. declare
651. near, near by
652. near by, kinsman
653. near, on account of
654. on account of this, therefore
655. at once
656. province
657. foreseeing, discreet, wise
658. belonging to the people, public
659. boy
660. fight
661. think
662. by what way, where
663. seek, ask
664. quaestor
665. how, as, than
666. how great, as great
667. fourth
668. four
669. and
670. complain
671. who, which, that
672. whoever
673. a certain one, someone
674. certainly, at least
675. rest, quiet
676. at rest, peaceful
677. indeed, (but) that (with negative expressions of doubt)
678. five
679. fifth
680. who, any
681. any one at all
682. each one
683. whither
684. because
685. inasmuch as, since
686. also, too
687. seize
688. reckoning, plan, reason
689. fresh, new
690. regain, get back
691. object, refuse
692. give back, return
693. go back, return
694. drive back, reduce
695. make over, repair
696. boundary line, district
697. kingdom, royal power
698. direct, rule
699. scruple, religion
700. leave behind
701. left behind, remaining, rest of
702. send back, let go, relax
703. oar
704. suddenly
705. sudden
706. gain back, discover, find
707. thing
708. answer
709. place back, restore
710. turn back, return
711. king
712. bank, shore
713. ask, ask for
714. talk, gossip
715. break
716. (turned back) again
717. often
718. arrow
719. health, safety
720. enough
721. rock
722. climb
723. know
724. write
725. shield
726. following, second, favorable
727. but
728. always
729. body of elders, senate
730. feeling, opinion
731. feel, think, judge
732. seven
733. seventh
734. follow
735. slavery
736. keep, save
737. slave
738. six
739. sixth
740. if
741. thus, so
742. just as
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LATIN WORD LIST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>743. significō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>744. signum</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>745. silentium</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>746. silva</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>747. similis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>748. simul</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>749. simulō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>750. sine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>751. singuli</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>752. sinister</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>753. sīve, seu</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>754. socius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>755. sōl</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>756. sollicitō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>757. sōlum (adv.)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>758. sōlus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>759. spatium</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>760. speciēs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>761. spectō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>762. spērō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>763. spēs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>764. -spiciō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>765. sponte</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>766. statim</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>767. statió</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>768. statuō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>769. stipendium</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>770. stō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>771. studeō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>772. sub</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>773. subitō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>774. sublevō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>775. subsequor</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>776. subsidium</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>777. succédō</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>813. tot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815. tōtus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>817. trādō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
743. announce
744. sign, signal, standard
745. silence
746. forest
747. like, resembling
748. together, at the same time
749. pretend
750. without
751. one at a time
752. left (of direction)
753. or if, whether
754. ally
755. sun
756. stir up, tempt
757. only
758. alone, only
759. space
760. appearance
761. look at
762. hope
763. hope
764. look
765. free will
766. at once, immediately
767. outpost, picket
768. set up, fix, determine
769. payment, tax, campaign
770. stand
771. be eager, desire
772. under, close to
773. suddenly
774. assist
775. follow closely
776. reserve, reinforce- ment, assistance
777. approach, come next

778. (of) himself, herself, itself, them- selves
779. be
780. highest sum, total
781. take
782. higher, highest
783. overcome, surpass, defeat
784. be over, remain, survive
785. punishment
786. above, beyond
787. take up, undertake
788. suspect
789. uphold, resist
790. his, her, its, their (own)
791. thus, so
792. however, nevertheless
793. touch
794. so great
795. make slow, check
796. slow
797. cover, conceal
798. missile, weapon
799. rashly
800. period of time, weather, storm
801. try, attempt
802. time
803. stretch
804. hold
805. back, rear
806. earth, land
807. frighten
808. third
809. witness
810. be afraid, fear
811. lift, remove
812. military engine
813. so many
814. just as many
815. whole
816. beam
817. hand over, intrust, surrender
818. drag, draw
819. across
820. three
821. tribune
822. assign, grant
823. three days
824. thou, you
825. gaze at, protect
826. at that time
827. uproar, rebellion
828. small hill, mound
829. base, disgraceful
830. tower
831. protected, safe
832. thy, thine, your, yours
833. where, when
834. any
835. farther, farthest
836. beyond, unasked, voluntarily
837. ever
838. together
839. whence
840. from (on) all sides
841. all together
842. one
843. city
844. up to
845. use, advantage, experience
846. in order that, so that
847. which of two
848. each of two, both
849. useful
850. use, employ
851. wife
The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list, are given below.

### FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

| 1. absum       | 20. circumveniō          | 34. coniungō            |
| 2. adduco      | 21. clamor               | 35. conspectus          |
| 3. adeō (v.)   | 22. colloquor            | 36. constō              |
| 4. adicio       | 23. commendō             | 37. conveniō            |
| 5. admiror     | 24. commoror             | 38. convertō            |
| 6. adventus    | 25. commoveō             | 39. cotidiānus          |
| 7. advertō     | 26. comparō              | 40. cum... tum          |
| 8. afferō      | 27. compellō, -ere       | 41. cupiditās           |
| 9. agriculta   | 28. compleō              | 42. deditiō             |
| 10. altitudō    | 29. comprehendō          | 43. dēducō              |
| 11. amicitia    | 30. concidō              | 44. dēfensor            |
| 12. amor       | 31. conferō              | 45. dēnō                |
| 13. antecedō    | 32. congrédior           | 46. dépōnō              |
| 14. aperture    | 33. coniciō              | 47. difficultās         |
| 15. armō        | 34. coniungō             | 48. digitus             |
| 16. audacter    | 35. conspectus           | 49. dignitās            |
| 17. aut... aut  | 36. constō               | 50. dimittō             |
| 18. carrus     | 37. conveniō             | 51. discēdō             |
| 19. celeritas   | 38. convertō             |                      |
| 20. circumveniō | 39. cotidiānus           |                      |
| 21. clamor     | 40. cum... tum           |                      |
| 22. colloquor  | 41. cupiditās            |                      |
| 23. commendō   | 42. deditiō              |                      |
| 24. commoror   | 43. dēducō               |                      |
| 25. commoveō   | 44. dēfensor             |                      |
| 26. comparō    | 45. dēnō                 |                      |
| 27. compellō, -ere | 46. dépōnō              |                      |
| 28. compleō    | 47. difficultās          |                      |
| 29. comprehendō| 48. digitus              |                      |
| 30. concidō    | 49. dignitās             |                      |
| 31. conferō    | 50. dimittō              |                      |
| 32. congrédior | 51. discēdō              |                      |
| 33. coniciō    |                      |                      |
ENGLISH WORD LIST

852. empty
853. shoal, ford
854. roam
855. be strong
856. valley
857. rampart
858. lay waste
859. violent
860. carry
861. or
862. come
863. wind
864. fear, respect
865. turn about, dwell
866. turn
867. true
868. evening
869. your, yours
870. cloth, garment
871. old, long-standing
872. way, road
873. village
874. see
875. night watch, guard
876. twenty
877. conquer
878. man
879. manliness, bravery
880. violence, force
881. life
882. avoid
883. be alive
884. alive
885. barely, scarcely
886. call
887. be willing, wish
888. willingness, good will
889. voice, word
890. common crowd
891. wound

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years, and not found in the College Entrance Examination Board list are given below

FIRST AND SECOND YEARS

1. be away, be absent
2. lead to, influence
3. go to, visit
4. add to
5. wonder at
6. approach, arrival
7. turn to, proceed against
8. bring to
9. farmer
10. height
11. friendship
12. love
13. go before, surpass
14. open
15. arm, equip
16. boldly
17. either...or
18. wagon, cart
19. swiftness, speed
20. come around, surround, cut off
21. outcry, shout
22. talk together, confer
23. intrust
24. remain
25. move thoroughly, alarm
26. make ready, buy, compare
27. drive together, collect, force
28. fill up
29. seize, grasp, understand
30. kill
31. bring together, collect, transport
32. step together, meet
33. hurl, throw
34. join together, unite
35. view, sight
36. stand with, agree
37. come together, assemble
38. turn around, change
39. daily
40. both...and, not only...but also
41. desire, longing
42. surrender
43. lead away, launch
44. defender
45. tooth
46. put down, put aside
47. difficulty
48. finger, toe
49. worth, rank
50. send away, dispatch
51. go away
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>Latin Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>distribuō</td>
<td>lūdō</td>
<td>permaneō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominus</td>
<td>lūna</td>
<td>permoveō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēdō</td>
<td>magister</td>
<td>persequor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effugiō</td>
<td>magnitūdō</td>
<td>perterreō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēnūntiō</td>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>perveniō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equester</td>
<td>maiōrēs</td>
<td>prōcēdō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēripiō</td>
<td>maleficium</td>
<td>prōdūcō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēruptiō</td>
<td>mandātum</td>
<td>prōGRESiOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>et . . . et</td>
<td>maritimus</td>
<td>prōGREDiOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēventus</td>
<td>mēnsa</td>
<td>prōPĕnō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excēdō</td>
<td>mētior</td>
<td>próSEQuor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factum</td>
<td>militāris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēmina</td>
<td>multitūdō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fidēlis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filia</td>
<td>mūnītiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frūmentārius</td>
<td>nauta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funditor</td>
<td>necessārius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātis</td>
<td>neque . . . neque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grātulātiō</td>
<td>nē . . . quidem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hīc</td>
<td>nōbilitās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hūmānitās</td>
<td>nocturnus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iam prīdem</td>
<td>nōn modo . . . sed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignōtus</td>
<td>etiam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impellō</td>
<td>nōnnullus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperātum</td>
<td>nōtus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impōnō</td>
<td>obsidiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indūcō</td>
<td>oppidānus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īnferō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infīră</td>
<td>oppugnātiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>īnsequor</td>
<td>pāgus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>institūtum</td>
<td>partim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intercēdō</td>
<td>patria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogo</td>
<td>paulō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itaque</td>
<td>pedester</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lātitūdō</td>
<td>perdūcō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber</td>
<td>perferō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libertās</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingua</td>
<td>perfugiō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
52. distribute
53. master
54. put out, put forth
55. escape
56. disclose, announce
57. of a horseman, equestrian
58. snatch out, free
59. breaking out, sally
60. both . . . and
61. outcome, result
62. go out, withdraw
63. easily
64. deed
65. woman
66. faithful
67. daughter
68. belonging to grain
69. slinger
70. for nothing
71. congratulation
72. here, at this point
73. kindliness, culture
74. long ago
75. unknown
76. drive on, urge on
77. command
78. put on
79. lead on, influence
80. bring in, bring against
81. below
82. follow on, pursue
83. custom
84. go between, forbid, veto
85. ask (a question)
86. and thus, therefore
87. width
88. pick, choose, read
89. book
90. freedom
91. tongue, language
92. play
93. moon
94. master, teacher, helmsman
95. greatness, size
96. greatly
97. ancestors
98. evil deed
99. commission
100. of the sea, maritime
101. table, dish
102. measure out, distribute
103. of a soldier
104. large number, crowd
105. fortification
106. sailor
107. necessary
108. neither . . . nor
109. not even
110. rank, nobility
111. nightly
112. not only . . . but also
113. some
114. known
115. siege
116. of the town, townsman
117. assault
118. district, clan
119. partly
120. (too) little
121. one's country
122. (by) a little
123. of a foot soldier, on foot
124. lead through, construct
125. bear through, endure, announce
126. flee to, desert
127. stay through, abide
128. move strongly, excite
129. follow through, pursue
130. frighten thoroughly
131. come through, arrive
132. poet
133. possess, acquire
134. rather, preferably
135. at first
136. first
137. go forward, advance
138. lead forward, protract
139. step forward, proceed
140. set forth, propose
141. follow on, pursue, escort
142. girl
143. fight
144. dust
145. but if, and if
146. (that less,) lest
147. take back, receive
148. bring back, report
149. queen
150. move back, withdraw
151. announce, proclaim
152. grain supply
153. warfare
154. commonwealth
155. take a stand, resist
156. answer
157. turn back, return
158. archer
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>159. satisfaciō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160. sī quis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161. singulāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162. solvō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>163. soror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>164. studium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>165. subdūcō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
159. do enough, do one's duty, apologize
160. if any, whoever
161. one by one, extraordinary
162. untie, release, perform, pay
163. sister
164. eagerness
165. lead under, lead up to, draw up, beach
166. send under, send to assist, yield
167. upper
168. carry up
169. suspicion
170. fright, panic
171. fearful, cowardly
172. fear
173. toga
174. go across, cross
175. trumpet
176. beyond
177. strongly
178. word
179. in truth
180. old, ancient
181. neighboring
182. conqueror
183. victory
184. farmhouse
185. bond, fetter
186. wound
Note. Pages 469-472 contain the requirements and suggestions of the re-vised (1928) New York State Syllabus in Ancient Languages for the first two years.

Attention should be called to the many phonetic changes in both con-sonants and vowels that appear in Latin compounds. For example, accipio = ad + capio, afficio = ad + facio, occidō = ob + caedō (or cadō if the vowel i is short), prōfectus = prō + factus, cōgō = co(n) + agō, surgō = sub + regō, sustineō = sub + teneō, libellus = liber + lus, scriptor = scrib + tor, actiō = ag + tiō, collocō = con + locō, etc.

The unassimilated forms of some of these words are often found; for example, conlocō, adficiō. Careful study of such changes should be made, that the pupil may detect easily words which otherwise would seem unfamiliar.

FIRST HALF YEAR

a. Prefixes: ā (ab, abs), ad, con (= cum) (prepositional and adverbial force), dē, ex (ē), in (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be studied for two purposes: first, to show how the meaning of the simple Latin verb is modified by the addition of the prefix; secondly, to define more exactly the meaning of English deriv-atives. For example, in the first half year:

dućō, lead + ab = abdućō, lead away
+ ad = addućō, lead to
+ con = condućō, lead together
+ dē = dēdućō, lead down
+ ē = ēdućō, lead out
+ in = indećō, lead into

English Derivatives: adduce, conduce, deduce, educe, induce, con-
duct, deduct, induct, conducive, deduction, etc. The pupil should be warned that some of these prefixes have merely an intensive force.
b. **Suffixes.** The meaning of the following suffixes, and their effect on the stems with which they are combined, should be carefully studied:

1. **Nouns from adjectives:**
   - **-TAS, -(T)IA, -TÜDO** (forming abstract nouns denoting condition or quality). The most common equivalent English suffixes include -ship, -(t)y, -ness, -tude.

2. **Adjectives from nouns:**
   - **-ANUS, -ICUS, -IUS** (forming adjectives denoting pertaining to). The most common equivalent English suffixes include -an, -ic, -y.

c. **English derivatives.** Since a very large number of English words have come directly or indirectly from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. The following list, from which the teacher may make her selection, will be suggestive as a basis for this study. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. The pupil may find a notebook helpful.

   servō, locō, vocō, pugnō, videō, moveō, dūcō, mittō, teneō, portō, cēdō, putō, parō, nūntiō, spectō, habeō, moneō, agō, scribō, cognōscō.

   Many of these words have interesting histories. These may well be entered in the pupil's notebook.

### SECOND HALF YEAR

**Note.** In the second half year both prefixes and simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed, the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

a. **Prefixes:** circum, in (negative use), inter, per, prae, prō, sub.

   For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see the outline of work for the first half year.

b. **Suffixes.** The meaning of the following suffixes, and their effect on the stems with which they are combined, should be carefully studied:

   Nouns from verbs:

   - **-OR, -TÜD, -TÜS (-SUS)** (fourth declension). These form nouns denoting action or the result of an action. The most common equivalent English suffixes include -or, -(t)ion, -ing, -cy.
c. English derivatives. The same procedure should be followed as suggested under this heading in the first half year’s work, with the following verbs as a basis:

(1) pōnō, veniō, pellō, mūniō, trahō, dīcō, sūmō, faciō, capiō, audiō, dō, doceō, premō, legō, claudō, vincō, nāvigō, sentiō, audeō, laudō.

(2) With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and the meaning of words like the following, and compare with the Latin originals: fraternity, capital, regalia, infinitive, gentle, fort, omnibus, ambition, faction, science, insulation, temperance, governor, integer, sinecure, jovial, profound, doubt, manual, gladiolus.

These may well be entered in the pupil’s notebook.

THIRD HALF YEAR

Note. For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of these lists, see the outlines for the first and second half years.

a. Prefixes: ante, dis, ob, re (red), trāns, sē (sēd).

Review the prefixes and simple verbs already studied in the first and second half years.

b. Suffixes.

Nouns from verbs:

(1) -TOR (-SOR), denoting agent or doer.
(2) -IUM, denoting action or the result of an action.

Adjectives from nouns:

-ĀLIS, -ĪLIS, -ĀRIS, -ĀRIUS, denoting pertaining to. The most common equivalent English suffixes include -al, -il(e), -ar(y).

c. English derivatives. For suggestions regarding this work, see the outlines for the first and second half years. Use the following words as a basis:

(1) ōrō, valeō, nāscor, tangō, quaerō, regō, currō, solvō, vereor, utor, mandō, arbitror, loquor, accēdō, potior, tribuō, (ad)iungō, sequor, dēspiciō, vertō.

(2) alibi, alias, item, ensign, conjugal, responsible, patient, accident, nihilist, libretto, faculty, bounty, volume, lapidary, oriole, rapture, cordial, agent.
Note. The same procedure should be followed here as in the preceding half year, including a thorough review of all the work previously prescribed.

a. Suffixes.

(1) Nouns from verbs:
-īō, -Tūra, denoting action in progress or the result of an action. Common equivalent English suffixes include -ion, -ture.
-Men, -mentum, denoting the means of an action or the act itself. Common equivalent English suffixes include -ing, -ment.

(2) Nouns from adjectives or nouns:
-IA, denoting condition or quality. Common equivalent English suffixes include -y.

(3) Adjectives from verbs:
-ILIS, -BILIS, denoting capability, usually passive.
-ĀX, denoting tendency, usually faulty.
-IDUS, denoting quality.

Common equivalent English suffixes include -ile, -ble, -acious, -id, respectively.

b. English derivatives. With the aid of an unabridged English dictionary, study carefully the form and meaning of words like the following, and compare them with the Latin originals: prohibition, confectionery, ditto, congress, orient, tent, album, mayor, minister, adieu, exit, superior, speculator, minimum, circumvent, salary, index, abductor, graduation.
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>å as in fâte</td>
<td>é as in mète</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ä as in senâte</td>
<td>é as in évênt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å as in fât</td>
<td>é as in mêt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ä as in ârm</td>
<td>é as in hêr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å as in âll</td>
<td>i as in ic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ä as in âsk</td>
<td>i as in ût</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å as in wât</td>
<td>i as in it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>as in fate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>as in senate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å</td>
<td>as in fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ä</td>
<td>as in arm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>as in all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å</td>
<td>as in ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>as in what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å</td>
<td>as in ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>æ</td>
<td>as in age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>å</td>
<td>as in ask</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

Au'lus
Au re'li ûs
Au rûn'cû lê'iûs
Au'sci
A vâr'î cûm
Áx'ô ná

Bâç'te nîs
Bâc'tû lûs
Baë'bi ûs
Bâl vênt'ti ûs
Bâs'tî lûs
Bât'â vi
Bêl'gàê
Bêl'gî um
Bêl lôv'tâ çî
Bî brâc'te
Bî'bràx
Bîb'rô çî
Bîb'tû lûs
Bî gêr'rî o'nêç
Bî-thî'nî
Bî-thî'nî a
Bit'û rîgêgê
Bit'hô
Bôd'û òg nàt'tûs
Bô'îá
Bô'îî
Brât'û spânt'ti um
Brî tân'ni
Brî tân'nî a
Brûn dis'î um
Brû'tûs
Câ'b'û rûs
Câ dûrt'çî
Çâ c'mâ'ni
Çâ rô'sî
Çâ'sgar

Câ'îûs
Câ'îa ûs
Câlt'î ti
Câm'û log'tê nûs
Cân'naë
Cân'tâ brî
Cân'tî um
Câp'û â
Câr'nû tëg
Câr vîl'lî ûs
Câs'sî
Câs'sî ûs
Câs'sî vêl lòu'nûs
Câs'tî cûs
Câs'tôr
Cât'â mân'tà loê'dêg
Cât'û rîgêgê
Cât'û völ'cûs
Cêl'taë
Cêl tîl'lûs
Cên'â bê'n'sêg
Cên'tà bûm
Cên'nî mûg'nî
Cên tê'nî ûs
Cê thê'gûs
Cêû'trô nêg
Cê vên'nâ
Cévennes (sà vên')
Cêhê rûst'cî
Cîg'te rô
Cî lîc'tî a
Cîm bê'rî ûs
Cîm'brî
Cîm gê'tô rîx
Cîs âl'pîne
Cît'tâ
Clâs tîd'tî um
Clau'dî ûs
Clê'tô pàtrâ

Clô'dî ûs
Côc'ô sà'têg
Côl'êhi
Côl'êhîs
Côm'mî ûs
Côn côn'nê tò dûm'nûs
Côn drû'sî
Côn sîd'rî ûs
Côn vic'tô lît'a vîs
Côr'inth
Cô'rî o sôl'lî tëg
Côr nê'lî ûs
Cô'rûs
Côt'tâ
Côt'û a'tûs
Côt'tûs
Crâs'sûs
Crâs'tî nûs
Crë'tôn
Crête
Çî'prûs
Çûz'tî cûs

Dâ'çî
Dâ nûv'î ûs
Dêl'phi
Dî'â blûnt'têg
Dî â'ná
Dî'ôs côr're dêg
Dîv'tî cî â'cûs
Dîv'tî cô
Dô mú'tî ûs
Dôn'nô tau'rûs
Dû'ûs
Dûm'nô rîx
Dû'rûs
Dûr râ'ehî um

Êb'û rôn'êg
Êb'û rô vî'çêg
Pronunciation of Proper Names

E'lis
El'u sa'te's
Eph'e sús
Ep'o rëd'o rix
E rëd'a nús
E sü/vi i
E tru'ti á
Eù/më nës

Fá/bi ús
Flác'cús
Flâm'i ní'nús
Flá mën'i ús
Fré gëll'laë
Froyde
Füf'ti ús
Fü'rí ús

Gáb'a li
Gá bën'i ús
Gá'iûs
(y)
Gál'ba
Gál'i
Gál'i á
Gál'üs
Gá rüm'ná
Gá rüm'ní
Gätës
Gaul
Ge'i düm'ní
Gëm'i nús
Gë ná/vá
Gër gë'vi á
Gër më'ní á
Glau'cë
Gnæf'ús
Gó/bán nìt'i ò
(sh)
Gór gõ'vi ná
Gór týn'i i
Grä'chüs

Grä 'lo'c'té li
(y)
Häd'rú më'tùm
Haë'd'ù i
Hän'nì bál
Hâ rù'dëg
Hâ's'drú bál
Hëllë
Hël vë'ti i
(sh)
Hëll'vi i
Hër'cù lëg
Hi bë'r'ní á
Hir'rûs
Hîr'tî ús
(ø) (sh)
Hîs pà'ní á
Hûl'âs

Lëc'tí ús
(sh)
Lù lër'tí cüm
În dû'ti ô mà'rûs
(sh)
Î tâ'li á
Îlû ús
(sh)
Îlù'ní ús
(ø)
Îup'pî tér
(ø)
Îu'râ
(ø)

Jâ'sön

Lâ'bë ô
Là bë'rî ús
Là'bi e'nûs
Là rî'sà
Là'tî üm
(sh)
Là tô'b'rî ã
Là tô'b'rî ã
Lë mà'n'nûs

Lëm'dò vi'çëg
Lën'tû lûs
Lë òn'ti dàs
Lë pôn'ti i
(sh)
Lënl'i
Lex ò'vi i
Lî'ër
Lîg'tà règ
Lîn'gö nëg
Lîs'ëns
Lît'â vic'cûs
Loire (lwär)
Lû c'à'ní
Lû c'à'ní ús
Lû c'à'ní ús
(sh)
Lûc tê'rî ús
Lû gòt'ò rix
Lû tê'ti á
(sh)

Mâç'ë dò'ní á
Mâg'ë tôb'rî gå
Mâ'gö
Mân dû'bi i
Mân'dù brâ'cî ús
(sh)
Mân'lí ús
Mär c’àl'ûs
Mâ'r'cô mân'nî
Mâ'r'cûs
Mâ'r'i ús
Mârs
Mâ'r'ò nà
Mâx't'mûs
Mè dë'â
Mè'dì ô mât'rî çî
Mèldî
Mè nàl'pî i
Mër cù'rî ús
Mës sàl'â
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

Më'tu ó së'dùm
   (sh)
Më'tu ús
   (sh)
Mi nër'vâ
Mi núči ús
   (sh)
Mö'nâ
Mön'i
Mö'sâ
Më'så'â
   (sh)
Mët'I lë'nê
Nën'më'tiùs
  (y)
Näm'në té's
Nën'tù à'të's
När'bô
Nâst'ù á
   (sh)
Nëmt'é té's
Nër'vîi
Në'tô ó'b'rô gàë
   (sh)
Në'rë'íâ
   (y)
Nô'rë ú dû'n'im
Öç'të lüm
Öç'tô dû'rûs
Ör gëu'tô rîx
Ör'i cûm
Ör'pheùs
Ö sî's'mî
Pà rîst'i
   (sh)
Pär'thî
Pâul'ùs
Pë'tëdî ús
Pë'li às
Pë lu'si úm
   (sh)
Për'gâ mûm
Pë't'rô sid'I ús
Phâ'rûs
Phâ'sìs
Phî'nèus
Phrôx'ùs
Pôc'tô nèg
Pô'lô
Pô lë'blî ús
Pôl'y phë'mûs
Pôm pë'tûs
   (y)
Pôm'pe'y
Praëc'o nî'nûs
Prô çîl'ûs
Pru'sî ãs
   (sh)
Ptî å'nî i
Ptôl'ë mà'lûs
Ptôl'ë mà'ï's
Pûblî ús
Pûl'ë'hër
Pûl'yô
Quînt'ûs
Râu'râ çî
Rê'dô nèg
Rê'mî
Rê'mûs
Rhëmûs
Rhôd'â nûs
Rhôdës
Rhôdôs
Rûfûs
Rû tê'nî
Sà bî'nûs
Sà'bîs
Sà gûn'tûm
Sàl'my dë's'sûs
Säm'à rô brîvô
Sántô nèg
Sàn'tô nî
Scîp'tô
Scri bôt'nì ús
Së dû'nî
Së dû'sí i
   (sh)
Sëg'mî
Sëg'tô nàx
Së gû'nî à'çî
   (sh)
Së gû'sî à'vî
   (sh)
Sëm prû'nî ús
Sëntô nèg
Sëp tîmî ús
Sèq'ûà nà
Sèq'ûà nî
Sè rà'pî ôn
Sèr tö'ri ús
Sèr vîlî ús
Sèx'tî ús
Sîb'û sà'të's
Sî lë'nûs
Sûl'ûs
Söst'î lûs
Söst'î à'të's
   (sh)
Spînt'hêr
Sûë'bî
   (w)
Sûë'sî ò'nûs
   (w)
Sà gâm'bri
Sû'kà
Sûl pîc'i ûs
   (sh)
Sûm'plëg'tà dëg
Sûr'î à
Täm'tè sîs
Tâm'phî lûs
Târ bêl'hî
Tà rë'nîm
Tär'û sà'tëg
Tûs gët'tî ús
   (sh)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Pronunciations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tāx'ī mag'u lūs</td>
<td>Ṭrī ā'ri ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēc tōs'ā ĝēš</td>
<td>Ṭrib'ō čēš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēnc'ē rī</td>
<td>Trīn'ō vān'tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tēr'ō sād'ī ūs</td>
<td>Tū līn'īg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teū'tō nēg</td>
<td>Tūl'ū ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thames (tēmz)</td>
<td>Tūl'ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thēr mūplū laē</td>
<td>Tū'rō ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thē'sēēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thēs sā'li ā</td>
<td>Ḫū bī ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thēs'ā lūy</td>
<td>Ḫū sīp'ē tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrāx</td>
<td>Ĭx ēl'ō dū'nūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti bē'řī ās</td>
<td>Vāc'ā lūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tīg'ū rūnī</td>
<td>Vā lē'řī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ti tū'ri ūs</td>
<td>Vān ĝī'ō nēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trītūs</td>
<td>Vā tīn'ī ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tō lō'sā</td>
<td>Vē lā'ni ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tōl'ō sāt'tēg</td>
<td>Vē'li ā ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trāl'ēg</td>
<td>Vē'li ā ās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trāns'rhē nā'ni</td>
<td>Vēl lau'nō dū'nūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trās'tē mē'nūs</td>
<td>Vē nē'll'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trē'bī ā</td>
<td>Vēn'ē tī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trē'bī ūs</td>
<td>Vē nē'tī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trē bō'nī ūs</td>
<td>Vē nū'sī ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trēv'ē rī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr bīg'tē nūs</td>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'ān ĝēt'ō rīx</td>
<td>Vēr'ā gri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vēr'tī cō</td>
<td>Vēr'ā clo'ē'tī ūs (sh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vē sōn'tī ū (sh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vī ēn'nā</td>
<td>Vingeanne (vān zhan')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vīrī dō mā'rūs</td>
<td>Vīrī dō mā'rūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vī rūd'ō vīx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vīr'ō mān'dū ī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō cāt'tēg</td>
<td>Vō cāt'tēg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōc'ciō (sh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vō cōn'tī (sh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'çaē</td>
<td>Vōl'çaē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl cātnūs</td>
<td>Vōl'sō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'sō</td>
<td>Vōl'sō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōl'ā sē'nūs</td>
<td>Vō rē'nūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vōstē gūs</td>
<td>Vōstē gūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zētēg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abbr.</td>
<td>abbreviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs.</td>
<td>absolute or absolutely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act.</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb or adverbial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>common, i.e. either masc. or fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>confer, i.e. compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decl.</td>
<td>declined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dem.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distrib.</td>
<td>distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emph.</td>
<td>emphatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. or fem.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig.</td>
<td>figurative or figuratively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens.</td>
<td>intensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrans.</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literal or literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. or masc.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>neuter or noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neut.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative or negatively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opp.</td>
<td>opposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orig.</td>
<td>originally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plur.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. p.</td>
<td>perfect participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex.</td>
<td>reflexive or reflexively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc.</td>
<td>scilicet, namely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superl.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.
1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.
Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.
Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs.

**abide** — assign

abide by, stō, 1 (with the abl.)

able (be), possum, irr.

about, adv., circiter

about, prep., de, with the abl.

accomplish, perficiō, 3 (iv); conficiō, 3 (v)

accord (of their own), suā sponte

accustomed (be), consueō, 3, in perf. tenses

added (it is), accēdit, 3 (x); additur, 3

adopt, insistō, 3 (XXIII)

advance, prōcēdō, 3 (XXIX); pro-gredior, 3 (XXV, XXXV)

advantageously, commodē

advise, moneō, 2

afflict, premō, 3

after, adv., post

after, conj., postquam

after, prep., post, with the acc.

afterwards, adv., postea

against, ad (xx), contrā, with the acc.

aid, v., iuvō, 1; auxiliar, 1 (XXVI)

aid, n., auxilium, auxili, n.; subsidium, subsidī, n. (XXXV)

alarm, perturbō, 1 (XXVII); perter-reō, 2 (XXXIV)

all, omnis, omne

almost, ferē

alone, sōlus, -a, -um

although, cum, quamquam

always, omnī tempore

am, sum, irr.

ambassador, lēgātus, -i, m.

among, inter, with the acc.; in (XVIII)

and, ac, atque, et, -que; and not, neque

announce, nuntio, 1

anybody, quis

anything, quid

applause, plausus, -ūs, m.

appoint, consitūō, 3; dicō, 3 (XXXIII)

approach, v., adpropinquo ad, 1 (vi);

accēdō (XXVIII); succēdō, 3 (XX)

Aquitanians, Aquītānī, -ōrum, m. plur.

Argonauts, Argonautae, -ārum, m.

arise, coōrīor, 4

armor, armātūra, -ac, f.

arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.

army, exercitus, -ūs, m.

arrive, perveniō, 4

ask (for), petō, 3 (x); rogō, 1 (XIII);

quaerō, 3 (XIV); repetō, 3 (XXIX)

assemble, conveniō, 4

assign, attribuō, 3
at, ad, with the acc.
attach, adiungō, 3
attack, n., adgredior, 3; adorior, 4
attack, n., impetus, -ūs, m.
attempt, cōnor, 1
authority, auctoritas, -ātis, f.
avoid, vītō, 1
await, exspecto, 1
away (be), absum, irr.
back, tergum, -ī, n.
back, tergum, -ī, a., in
back, tergum, -ī, 11.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, m.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, m.
battle, proelium, proeli, n.; pugna, -ae, f.; in line of battle, in aciē; plan of battle, ratiō pugnae
beast of burden, iūmentum, -ī, n.
beauty, quod, propterquod; because of, propter, with the acc.
before, adv., ante
before, prep., prō, with the abl.
beg, obsecro, 1; beg for, petō, 3
began, coepī, defective
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m. plur.
best, optimus, -a, -um
betake one’s self, sē cōnferō, irr.
betray, prōdō, 3
bird, volucer, -cris, f.
boat, līnter, -tris, f.; little boat, nāvicula, -ae, f.
booty, praedā, -ae, f.
born (be), nāscor, 3; orior, 4
both . . . and, et . . . et
boundary, finis, -is, m.
boy, puer, -ī, m.
brave, fortis, forte
break through, perrumpō, 3 (xiv); perfringo, 3 (xvi)
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, addūcō, 3 (xx); ferō, irr. (xxi); bring about, efficiō, 3
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
build, múniō, 4 (viii); aedificō, 1
bull, taurus, -ī, m.
burn, incendō, 3 (xiii)
business, negotiōnum, negotī, n.
but, at, sed
by, (agent) ā, ab
call, vocō, 1; call back, revocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
can, possum, irr.
captive, captīvus, -ī, m.
capture, cāpiō, 3
care, cūra, -ae, f.
carry, ferō, irr.; déferō, irr. (xxix); perferō, irr. (xxxiii); carry on, gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, m.
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, f.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, n., equitēs, -um, m. plur.; equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, dēsistō, 3
certain, certain one, pron., quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, f.
charge of (take), praesum, irr.
chief, princēps, -cipis, m.
children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.
choose, dēligō, 3
circuit, circuitūs, -ūs, m.
citizen, cīvis, -is, c.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

city — dragon

city, urbs, -is, f.
decision ( excuse), pūrgō, 1; it is clear, cōnstat, 1
Colchians, Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur.
cold, frīgus, -oris, n.
collect, cōgō, 3; cōnferō, irr. (xxx); comparō, i (viii)
come, venīō, 4
coming, adventus, -ūs, m.
command, imperātum, -ī, n.; be in command, praesum, irr.; put in command, v., praeficio, 3
commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.
companion, socius, -i, m.
compel, cōgō, 3
conceal, abdō, 3
conduct, dūcō, 3
conquer, superō, 1
consist, cōnśistō, 3
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.
conspire, coniūro, 1
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
consult, cōnsulō, 3
controversy, contrōversia, -ae, f.
country, native land, patria, -ae, f.
courage, animus, -i, m. (xvi); virtūs, -ūtis, f.
course, cursus, -ūs, m.
cross (over), trānseō, irr.
custom, institutum, -ī, n.
cut off, prohibeō, 2 (xxvi, xxxiv); interclūdō, 3 (xxxiii)
daily, adj., cotīdiānus, -a, -um; adv., cotīdiē
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
dare, audeō, 2
dark, obscūrus, -a, -um
daughter, filiā, -ae, f.
day, diēs, -ēī, m.
debt, aes alienum, aërīs aliēnī, n.
decide, cōnstituō, 3
decide, praedīcō, 1
decree, dēcrētum, -ī, n.
defend, dēfendo, 3
defense, praesidium, -ī, n.
delay, moror, 1
demand, postulō, 1 (iv); imperō, 1
deport, discēdō, 3
desert, perfugiō, 3
deserve well, bene mereor, 2
desire, cupiō, 3
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
despair of, dēspērō dē, 1
destroy, interscindo, 3 (xxi)
detain, retineō, 2
determine, statuō, 3
devote, tribuo, 3
die, morior, 3
differ, differō, 3
difficult, difficilis, difficile
difficulty, difficīltās, -ātis, f.
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, f.
direction, pars, partis, f. (xxvii)
disease, morbus, -ī, m.
dismiss, dīmittō, 3
distance, spatium, -ī, n.
distant (be), absūm, irr.
distribute, metior, 4
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
do, facio, 3
double, v., duplicō, 1
doubt, dubitō, 1; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium
dove, columba, -ae, f.
dragon, dracō, -ōnis, m.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

draw — forsake

draw up, instruō, 3
drive back, déiciō, 3 (III); repellō (xiv); drive out, expellō, 3; drive to, addūcō, 3
Dwell, Druidēs, -um, m. plur.

each, uterque, utraque, utrumque (XX)
eagle, aquila, -ae, f.
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
either . . . or, vel . . . vel
even, undecim
elsewhere (to another place), aliō
embark, nāvem (nāvēs) cōnscedō, 3
encircle, cingo, 3
encourage, cohortor, 1
endure, perferō, irr. (XXII); ferō, irr.
enemy, hostis, -is, c.
engage in, committō, 3; engage in battle, proelium committō, 3; proelīō dīmiō, 1 (XXXIV)
enlist, cōnscribō, 3
enter, ingredior, 3 (with intrā, XIX); enter into, inēō, irr.
envoy, lēgātus, -i, m.
envy, invidia, -ae, f.
equal (make), æquō, 1
escape, évādō, 3
establish, cōnstituō, 3; instituō, 3
even if, etsi
excel, praeestō, 1; superō, 1 (XXIII)
exhaust, exhauriō, 4
exposed, apertus, -a, -um
eye, oculus, -i, m.

faction, factiō, -ōnis, f.
faithful, fidēlis, -e

famous, praeclārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farther, adj., ulterior, ulterior
fashion, modus, -i, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
favorable, opportūnus, -a, -um
fear, n., timor, -ōris, m.
few, paucī, -ōrum, m. plur.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fiercely, ācriter
fifteenth, quintus decimus, quīnti decimi
fifth, quintus, -a, -um
fight, v., pugnō, 1 (IX, XX); proelīō contendō, 3 (XII, XVIII)
fill, compleō, 2
find, inveniō, 4; nancīscor, 3 (XVIII)
first (at), primō
flank, latus, -eris, n.; on the flank, ab latere
flee, fugiō, 3
fleece, vellus, -eris, n.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flight, fuga, -ae, f.; be in flight, fugiō, 3; put to flight, in fugam dō, irr.
flow (into), influō, 3
follow, sequor, 3; subsequor, 3 (XXV)
fond, cupidus, -a, -um
for, conj., enim, nam
for, prep., ad, in, with the acc.; prō, with the abl.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f. plur.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forever, in perpetuum
form, draw up, instruō, 3
forsake, désērō, 3
fort, castellum, -i, n.
fortification, munition, -onis, f.
forgiveness, fortuna, -ae, f.
fourth, quartus, -ae, -um
free, liberō, i
freedom, libertas, -atis, f.
friend, amicus, -i, m.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, f.
from, ā, ab, dē, (out of) ē, ex, with the abl.; after verbs of hindering etc., quō minus, or, if the verb is negated, quīn
front of (in), prō, with the abl.
furnish, ornō, i
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, gather together, convenio, 4; gather about, circumstō, 3
Gaul (the country), Gallia, -ae, f.; a Gaul, Gallus, -i, m.
general, communis, -e
Geneva, Genava, -ae, f.
Germans, Germānī, -orum, m. plur.
get together, comparō, i
give, dō, irr.; give back, reddō, 3
go, cō, irr.; go (out), āgredior, 3 (ix, xxxiii); āgredio, irr.
god, deus, -i, m.
golden, aureus, -a, -um
grain, frumentum, -ī, n.; grain supply, rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um; greater, maior, maius; greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (v); how great, quantus, -a, -um; so great, tantus, -a, -um
greatly, magnopere
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.

Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
grieve, be grieved, dolore adscior, 3
ground (cause), causa, -ae, f.
guard, v., custodiō, 4; tueor, 2 (xxxv)
guard, n., praesidium, praesidi, n.; on guard, in statione
guilty, nocēns, -entis

Hāeduans, Haeduī, -orum, m. plur.
half, dimidium, dimidi, n.
halt, consistō, 3
halt, in statione
hand (be at), adsum, irr.
happen, accidō, 3
harass, laccosō, 3
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard pressed (be), labōrō, 1
harm, nocēo, 2 (with the dat.)
Harpies, Harpyiae, -arum, f.
hasten, contendo, 3; matūrō, 1 (xx)
have; habeō, 2
he, is, eīus
hear, accipio, 3 (xxxii)
heat, aestus, -ūs, m.
Helvetians, Helvētī, -orum, m. plur.
hem in, contineō, 2
her, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; (not reflexive) eīus
high, altus, -a, -um; very high, altissimus, -a, -um (i); higher, superior, superius; highest, summus, -a, -um (xxx)
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, (intensive) ipse, ipsius; (reflexive) sē
hinder, impedīō, 4
his, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; (not reflexive) eīus
hold — leap

hold, obtineō, 2; teneō, 2 (XXVI)
home, domus, -ūs, f.
hope, v., spērō, 1; hope for, spērō, 1
hope, n., spēs, speī, f.
horse, equus, equī, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, c.
house, domus, -us, f.

how great, how large, quantus, -a, -um
huge, ingēns, -entis; immānis, -e (XXXI)

hunting, vēnātiō, -onis, f.

hurl, conicio, 3 (XXV, XXIX); mittō, 3 (XVI)
hurry, contendo, 3

I, ego, meī
if, sī; if not, sī nōn, nisi
ignorance, imprūdentia, -ae, f.
image, simulācrum, -ī, n.

immediately, statim; prōtinus (XXV)
in, in, with the abl.
inclose, inclūdō, 3
incursion, incursiō, -onis, f.
indignity, indignitās, -ātis, f.
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, m.

infirmity, valētūdō, -inis, f.
influence, v., permoveō, 2
influence, n., auctoritās, -ātis, f.
inform, nūntiō, 1, with the dat.; certiōrem faciō, 3, with the acc.
inhabit, incolō, 3
innocent, innocēns, -entis
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, contumēlia, -ae, f.
intercept, intercipiō, 3
intercessor, dēprecātor, -ōris, m.

into, in, intrā (XIX), with the acc.
intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1 (XXXI)

island, īnsula, -ae, f.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

Jason, īāsōn, -onis, m.

javelin, pilum, -i, n.
joy, gaudium, gaudī, n.
judge, iūdicō, 1
Jupiter, Luppiter, IOvis, m.

keep, teneō, 2; cōnservō, 1 (VIII);
keep away, prohibeo, 2
kill, necō, 1 (VII); interficiō, 3 (XXX)
kind, genus, -eris, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.

knight, eques, -itis, m.
know, intellegō, 3; scio, 4 (XXVIII)
lack, be lacking, dēsum, irr.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m.
language, lingua, -ae, f.

large, magnus, -a, -um; how large, quantus, -a, -um
last, suprēmus, -a, -um
later, adv., post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (XXX)
law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lay waste, vāstō, 1

lead, dūcō, 3; lead across, trādūcō,
3; lead back, redūcō, 3; lead out, ēdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leadership, principātus, -ūs, m.

leap down, dēsiliō, 4
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

learn — nobody

learn, intelligo, 3 (vii); exploro (viii); cognoscō, 3 (in perf. tenses, know)
leave, relinquō, 3
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
letter, (of alphabet) littera, -ae, f.; (epistle) litterae, -ārum, f. plur.; epistula, -ae, f.
lie open, pateo, 2
lieutenant, pateo, 2
life, vita, -ae, f.
light, adj., levis, -e
light, n., lumen, -inis, n.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.
literature, litterae, -ārum, f. plur.
little, adv., paulum
living, vivus, -a, -um
long, adj., longus, -a, -um; adv., diū
lose, dimitto, 3
lower, inferior, īnferius

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, m.
make, facio, 3 (passive fio; see G. § 45)
man, homō, -inis, c.; man-of-war, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, f.
many, multi, -ae, -a

march, v., iter facio, 3
march, n., iter, itineris, n.; on the march, in itinere
meanwhile, intereā
memory, memoria, -ae, f.
messenger, nūntius, nūntiī, m.
middle (of), medius, -a, -um
midnight, media nox
mile, mille passus; miles, mīlia passuum

mistaken (be), erro, 1
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.; Moon, Lūna, -ae (XXXII)
more, amplius (§ 105)
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, 2; move forward, prōgredior, 3
much, adv., multum
multitude, multītūdō, -inis, f.
must, express by the passive peri-

phrase (G. §§ 38. II, 222. II)

name, v., appelō, 1
name, n., nōmen, -inis, n.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nearest, proximus, -a, -um
necessary (it is), oportet, 2 (xvi); necesse est (xix)
necessity, necessitās, -ātis, f.
neglect, ōmittō, 3
neighbor, finītimus, -ī, m.
nighboring, proximus, -a, um
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next, posterus (II); proximus, -a, -um; next day, postrīdiē eius diē

night, nox, noctis, f.; by night, adv., noctū

ninth, nōnus, -a, -um
no (not any), nūllus, -a, -um
nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, f.
noble, nōbilis, nōbile
nobody, nēmō, dat. nēmini; nūllus, nūllius
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>not, nōn; not even, nē . . . quidem</td>
<td>pro vincia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noted, nōtus, -a, -um</td>
<td>not, patior, 3; it is permitted, licet, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notice, animadvertō, 3</td>
<td>not, non; not, ne.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now, iam</td>
<td>noster, -tra, -trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number, numerus, -i; m.</td>
<td>nostro, -tra, -trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nymph, nympha, -ae, f.</td>
<td>numerus, -I, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, n.</td>
<td>nympha, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>observe, perspicio, 3</td>
<td>obtineō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtain, obtineō, 2</td>
<td>obtain, obtineō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of, genitive case</td>
<td>old man, senex, senis, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old man, senex, senis, m.</td>
<td>one, unus, -a, -um; one . . . the other, alter . . . alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on, in, with the acc. or abl.</td>
<td>Alter . . . the other, alter . . . alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once on a time, once, adv., ōlim</td>
<td>ancilla, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one, unus, -a, -um; one . . . the other, alter . . . alter</td>
<td>or, aut, (in questions) an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportunity, facultās, -ātis, f. (XXVI); occāsiō, -onis, f. (VII)</td>
<td>or, aut, (in questions) an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppose, resistō, 3</td>
<td>or, aut, (in questions) an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppress, premō, 3</td>
<td>our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or, aut, (in questions) an</td>
<td>out of, ex(e), with the abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oracle, ārāculum, -i, n.</td>
<td>outside, prep., extrā, with the acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order, v., imperō, 1; iubeō, 2</td>
<td>overcome, opprimō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order, v., imperō, 1; iubeō, 2</td>
<td>pack, sarcina, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other, alius, alia, aliud; the other (the rest), reliquis, -a, -um; other (of two), alter, -era, -erum; the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter</td>
<td>palace, rēgia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum</td>
<td>pardon, ignōscō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside, prep., extrā, with the acc.</td>
<td>parent, parēns, -entis, c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overcome, opprimō, 3</td>
<td>part, pars, partis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pack, sarcina, -ae, f.</td>
<td>path, sēmita, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace, pāx, pācis, f.</td>
<td>pedes, pēdī, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish, pereō, irr.</td>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, populus, -i, m.</td>
<td>persuade, persuādeō, 2 (with the dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>persuade, persuādeō, 2 (with the dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish, pereō, irr.</td>
<td>phalanx, phalanx, -angis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, populus, -i, m.</td>
<td>picket, statiō, -onis, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>pierce, trācō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, populus, -i, m.</td>
<td>pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>place, v., pōnō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>place, v., pōnō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>place, v., pōnō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>place, v., pōnō, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>plan, cōnsilium, cōnsili, n.; plan of battle, ratiō pugnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>plunder, praedor, 1 (XXII); dīripō, 3 (XXXIV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>point out, dēmōnstrō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>poison, venēnum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>port, portus, -ūs, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>possession (gain), get (take) possession of, potior, 4 (with the abl. or gen.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>power, potestās, -ātis, f.; imperium, imperī, n. (XXVII); potentiā, -ae, f. (XXXIII); royal power, rēgnum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>powerful, potēns, -entis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>praise, conlaudo, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>preceding, superior, superius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit, patiō, 2</td>
<td>prepare, comparō, 1 (XXXIV); parō, 1 (XXXV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>preside over, praesum, irr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>promise, prōmittō, 3; polliceor, 2 (XXIV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>propose, prōpōno, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>protect, prohibēō, 2 (XXX); mūnīō, 4 (XXXIV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>prove, probō, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permission, permittō, 3 (with the dat.)</td>
<td>province, prōvincia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
publicly, publicē
purchase, coëmō, 3
pursue, Insequor, 3 (VI, XVI, XVIII); prósequor, 3
pursuit, studium, studī, n.
put back, repōnō, 3; put in charge of, praeficio, 3; put to death, interficio; put to flight, in fugam dō, irr.
quickly, celeriter
rampart, vāllum, -ī, n.
reach, perveniō ad, 4
ready, parātus, -a, -um
rear, novissimum agmen, -inis, n.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
receive, accipio, 3; excipio, 3 (VI); recipió, 3
redoubt, castellum, -ī, n.
reënforcement, subsidium, subsidi, n.; reënforcements, subsidia, -orum, n. plur. (XXV); auxilia, -orum, n. plur. (XXX, XXXV)
regard (hold), habeō, 2
region, regiō, -onis, f.
rejoice, gaudeō, semi-dep., 2
relatives, propinquī, -orum, m. plur. (XXXV); auxilia, -orum, n. plur. (XXX, XXXV)
remain, manēō, 2; remaneō, 2
remove, removeō, 2
repel, prohibeō, 2
reply, respondeō, 2
report, v., renūntiō, 1; nūntiō, 1 (XXXV)
report, n., fāma, -ae, f.
resources, facultātēs, -um, f. (IX); opēs, f. plur. (XXXII)
rest, rest of, reliquī, -orum, m. plur.
retreat, mē reciproō, 3
return, v., intrans., redeō, irr. (II): revertor, 3 (VI, XXI, XXIV, XXXVI); trans., reddō, 3
return, n., reditus, -ūs, m.
reward, praemium, praemī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
Rhine, Rhōdanus, -ī, m.
rich, (abundant) cōpiōsus, -a, -um; (wealthy) dives, -itis; richer, dītor, dītius; richest, dītissimus, -a, -um
right (on the right hand), adj., dexter, -tra, -trum
right, n., iūs, iūris, n.; fās, n. (XXXI)
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, iter, itineris, n.
rock, rūpēs, -is, f.
Roman, adj., Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
route, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
run forward, prōcurrō, 3
sacrifice, v., immolō, 1
sacrifice, n., sacrificium, sacrīci, n.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, set sail, solvō, 3, with or without navem
sake (for the), causā
sally, ēruptiō, -onis, f. (XXXV)
same, īdem, eadem, idem
say, dicō, 3
scout, speculātor, -ōris, m.
second, secundus, -a, -um; (of two), alter, -era, -erum (XXXV)
sedan, lectīca, -ae, f.
see, videō, 2; conspiciō, 3 (VI, XXV)
seek, petō, 3
seize; comprehendō, 3 (XI); occupō, 1 (XII)
send, mittō, 3; submittō, 3 (XXV);
send away, dīmittō, 3; send back, remittō, 3; send forth, ēmittō, 3;
send out, dīmittō, 3
separate, dividō, 3
Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, m.
service, ēsus, -ūs, m.
set about (begin), instituō, 3; set forth, trans., prōpōnō, 3; set on fire, succendō, 3 (XXXI); set out, proficīscor, 3; set sail, solvō, 3,
with or without nāvem
settle, compōnō, 3
seven, septem
seventeenth, septimus decimus, septima decima, septimum decimum
several, complūrés, -īum
severe, gravis, grave
share, communícō, 1
sharply, acrīter
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
show (for a), ad speciem
shut off, intercludō, 3
side, latus, -eris, n.; pars, partis, f.; on all sides, from all sides, undique
siege, obsidiō, -onis, f.
signal, signum, -ī, n.
since, cum
six, sex
size, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
slave, servus, -ī, m.
slay, concīdō, 3; occīdō, 3 (XVIII)
sleep, somnus, -ī, m.
small number, pauctās, -ātis, f.
snatch, ēripio, 3
so, sic, ita (generally with verbs), tam (with adjectives); and so, itaque; so great, tantus, -a, -um; so that, ut
soldier, miles, -itis, m.
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nūllī, -ae, -a; some . . . others, alii . . . alii
something, aliquid, alieius
son, filius, filī, m.
soon, mox
sovereignty, rēgnum, -ī, n.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.
stable, stabulum, -ī, n.
stand, make a stand, cōnsistō, 3
standard, signum, -ī, n.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.
station, cōnstituō, 3; pōnō, 3 (XX); conlocō, 1 (XXXV)
storm, v., oppugnō, 1
storm, n., tempestās, -ātis, f.
subdue, superō, 1
subject, make subject, subiciō, 3
suddenly, subitō
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um
summer, aestas, -ātis, f.
summon, arcessō, 3
sun, sōl, sōlis, m. (XXXII)
superior, superior, superius
supply, grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f.
surpass, praecedō, 3 (with the acc.)
surrender, dēdō, 3 (XI, XXIII); trādō, 3 (XVII)
surround, circundō, irr.; circumveniō,
sustain, sustineō, 2
swamp — village

swamp, palūs, -ūdis, f.
swear, iūrō, I

take (employ), sūmō, 3 (XIII); take
back, recipiō, 3; take by storm,
expugnō, I; take up, capiō, 3
(XXIII)
task, negotiōnum, negotiī, n.; labor,
-ōris, m.
temple, templum, -ī, n.
tempt, temptō, I
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um

terms, condiciōnum, -ōnis, f.
terrify, perterreo, 2
territory, territoriōnum, -iōnis, •,
-ium, m. plur.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam
thank, gratiās agō, 3
that, conj., ut, (with comparatives)
quō; that not, (purpose) nē,
(result) ut non; quīn (§§ 185, 186;
IX, XI)
that, pron., ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
their, (reflexive) suīs, -a, -um; (not
reflexive) eōrum, ipsōrum
themselves, (intensive) ipsī, ipsae,
ipsa; (reflexive) suī, sībi
there, ibi, (thither) eō
Thessaly, Thessalia, -ae, f.
thing, reōs, reī, f.
think, arbitror, I; putō, I (XIII);
existimō, I (XXII, XXXI)
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
thither, eō
thousand, mille; plur., milia

through, per, with the acc.
throw, coniciō, 3; throw about, cir-
cumiciō, 3 (with the dat.)
thus, sic, ita
time, tempus, -oris, n.
to, ad, in, with the acc.
touch, attingō, 3
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
treasury, aerarium, aerāri, n.
tree, aerōr, -oris, f.
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, f.
tribute, tribūtum, -ī, n.
trust (intrust), committō, 3; cōnfidō,
3 (with the abl., XXXI)
try, cōnor, I, with infinitive, or
pronoun representing infinitive;
expertor, 4, with noun, or pro-
noun representing noun
turn, vertō, 3
two, duo, -ae, -o

under, sub, with the acc. (motion
toward) or abl. (place where)
undergo, subeō, irr.
understand, intellegō, 3
undertake, suscipiō, 3
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um
unless, nisi
until, dum; prior quam (XVIII)
unwilling (be), nōlō, irr.
upper, superior, superius
urge, hortor, I
use, utōr, 3

vainly, in vain, frustrā
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
village, vicus, -ī, m.
violence — yourselves

violence, vīs, vīs, f.
visibly, apertē
Vulcan, Volcānus, -ī, m.

wage war, bellum gerō, 3
wait, exspectō, 1 (vi, xii, xxii); moror, 1 (xxi, xxiv, xxxiv); wait for, exspectō, 1
walls, moenia, -iūm, n. plur.
war, bellum, -ī, n.; carry on war, bellum gerō, 3; make war, bellō, 1; make war on, bellum inīferō, irr. (with the dat.)
ward off, prohibeō, 2; (avoid) vītō, 1 (xxxii)
warfare, rēs militāris, reī militāris, f.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way, iter, itineris, n.
weaken, debilitō, 1
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
what, interrog., quīd
when, cum, ubi
where, ubi
whether, num, -ne; whether ... or, -ne ... an, utrum ... an
while, dum

who, rel., qui, quae, quod; interrog., quis, quid
whoever, whosoever, quīcumque, cuīscumque
whole, as a whole, omnis, omne
whose, cuius, quōrum
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, coniūnx, -ugis, f.
winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur.
wish, volō, irr.; not wish, nōlō, irr.
with, cum, with the abl.
withdraw, subdūcō, 3 (xvi); redūcō, 3 (xxxv)
without, sine, with the abl.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.
write, scribō, 3
wrong, wrongdoing, iniūria, -ae, f.

year, annus, -ī, m.
yet (nevertheless), tamen
you, tū, tuī
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m.
your, tuus, -a, -um
yourselves, (intensive) vōs ipsī; (reflexive) vōs
\[\text{LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY}\]

\[\text{A. — ac}\]

\text{A., abbr. for Aulus (which see)}
\text{a., abbr. for ante}
\text{ā, see ab}
\text{ab (ā, abs), prep. with abl., away from, from. — With expressions of measure, off, away: a milibus passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in English: ortum est ab, sprang from, began with; vacuum ab, destitute of; caput initium a, begins at; ab tanto spatio, so far off. — Esp. with passives, by. — Esp. also, a fronte, in front; a tergo, from or on the rear; ab infimo, at the foot; a dextro cornu, on the right wing; a re frumentaria, in respect to the grain supply. — In composition, off, away, apart, without, not}

\text{abditus, p.p. of abdo}
\text{abdo, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ab-do (put)], trans., hide. — With in and acc., withdraw to (take refuge among). — abditus, -a, -um, p.p., hidden, remote, removed}
\text{abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead away, take away}
\text{abiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ab-iaicio], trans., throw away, throw down, throw, hurl}
\text{abietus, p.p. of abicio}
\text{abiēs, -ietis, f., fir or spruce (tree or wood)}
\text{abripiō, -ripere, -riput, -reptus [ab-ratio], trans., snatch away, carry away}
\text{abs, see ab}
\text{abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [abs-caedo], trans., cut off, tear off, tear away}
\text{abscisus, p.p. of abscīdo}
\text{absēns, -entis, see absum}
\text{absimilis, -e, adj., unlike}
\text{absistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p.p., intrans., stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof}
\text{abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [abs-teneo], intrans., refrain: proelio (refrain from giving)}
\text{abstrāctus, p.p. of abstraho}
\text{abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [abs-traho], trans., drag away}
\text{abstuli, see auferō}
\text{absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, irr., intrans., be away, be absent: suspicio (be wanting). — absēns, pres. p. as adj., absent, in one's absence}
\text{Absyrtus, -i, m., brother of Medea}
\text{abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be strong in}
\text{ac, see atque}
**VOCABULARY**

**Acostus — ademptus**

-Acastus, -i, m., son of Pelias
-accdо, -cedere, -cessi, -cessitus [ad-cedo], intrans., move toward, draw near, approach; be added: huc accedebat ut, there was also this (disadvantage) that
-acceptus, p.p. of accipio
-accessus, p.p. of accedo
-accidо, -ciderе, -cidii, no p.p. [ad-cado], intrans., fall to, fall on;
-happen, occur
-accurr5, -currere, -curri, no p.p. [ad-curro], intrans., run to, ride up
-accurсе, -are, -avi, -atus, trans., accuse, blame, find fault with
-acer, acris, acre, adj., sharp; capable, energetic

-acerb, adv., bitterly: ferre inopiam
(suffer severely from etc.)
-acerbitas, -atis [acerbus], f., suffering
-acerbus, -a, -um [acer, sharp], adj.,
bitter, hard to bear
-acerimē, superl. of acriter
-acervus, -i [acer, pointed], m., heap,
pile
-aciēs, -ēī, f., point, sharp edge, edge:
oculorum (keen glance, glare). —
Esp., line, line of battle, array, army
-äcriter, adv., sharply; fiercely, violently, hotly: acriter pugnatum
est, a fierce battle was fought, the fighting was sharp
-actus, p.p. of ago
-acum, -inis [acuo], n., acuteness
-acūo, -ure, -uī, -ūtus [acer], trans.,
sharpen. — acūtus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., sharpened, sharp
-ad, prep. with acc. With idea of
motion toward, to, toward, against.
- -Of time, till, at, on: ad diem, on
the day. — With numerals, about
-adactus, p.p. of adigo
-adaequо, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
make equal to: moles moenibus
(make as high as); altitudinem
muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with)
-adamо, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
covet, become attached to
-addо, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ad-do (put)],
trans., add
-adducо, -ducere, -duōxi, -ductus, trans.,
lead to, draw to; induce, drive
-ademptus, p.p. of adimo
**Latin-English Vocabulary**

**adeō** — admiror

**adeō**, -īre, -ī, -itus, *irr.*, **trans.**
and **intrans.**, go to, visit; attack, approach
**adeō**, **adv.**, to that point, thus far, so much
**adequītō**, -āre, -āvī, *no p.p.* [*cf. eques*], **intrans.**, ride up
**adfectus**, *p.p.* of **adficio**
**adferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, ***trans.**, bring to, bring; cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce
**adficio**, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [*ad-facio*], **trans.**, do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict on, impose. — In passive, suffer, receive: magnō dolore **adāci**, be greatly distressed
**adfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, **trans.**, fasten to
**adflingo**, -fingere, -finxi, -fectus, **trans.**, make up in addition
**adfinitās**, -ātis [*adfinis*, related], *f.*
relationship: **adfinitatibus conjuncti** (marriages)
**adfixus**, *p.p.* of **adfigo**
**adflctō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, **trans.**, dash against, shatter
**adflīgō**, -fligere, -flixī, -flactus, **trans.**, dash at; overthrow, damage: naves (shatter, damage)
**adfore**, *see adsum*

**adgregōrior**, -gregi, -gressus [*ad-gradior*, step, go], **dep.**, **trans.**, go toward, march against, attack
**adgregōri**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, **trans.**, gather: se (gather round, flock to); se ad **amicitiam** (attach one’s self to)

**adhaereō**, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesūrus, *intrans.*, stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in)
**adhībēō**, -ēre, -ūi, -itus [*ad-habeo*], **trans.**, call in, admit; employ, use
**adhōrto**, -āri, -ātus, *dep.**, **trans.**, encourage, urge
**adhūc**, **adv.**, up to this time

**Adiatunnus**, -ī, *m.*, chief of the Sotiates

**adicio**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ad-iacio*], **trans.**, throw to, hurl: aggerem (throw up); join to, add: **adiecta planitie** (with the addition of)
**adfectus**, *p.p.* of **adicio**
**adigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*ad-ago*], **trans.**, drive to, drive up (of cattle etc.); drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons); force, bind (by oath)
**adimō**, -imere, -ēmi, -emptus [*ad-emo*, take], **trans.**, take away
**aditus**, -ūs [*adeo*], *m.*, approach, access; means of approach
**adiungō**, -iungere, -iünxi, -iunctus, **trans.**, join to, attach, add
**adītōri**, -ōris [*adīuvo*], *m.*, helper, assistant
**adiuvō**, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus, **trans.**, assist, help, be of advantage
**adlātus**, *p.p.* of **adfero**

**administer**, -trī, *m.*, servant: ad **sacrificia** (priest, celebrant)
**administōri**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, **trans.**, carry into execution, perform, manage, conduct
**admīrō**, -āri, -ātus, *dep.**, **trans.**, be surprised at, wonder at
admittō — adveniō

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, trans., let go: admissō equo, at full speed; allow: in se facinus (commit a crime); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur)
admodum, adv., to a degree; very, very much.—With numerals, fully, at least, not less than
admoneō, -ere, -mittere, -missus, trans., warn, urge
adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, intrans., grow up
adorior, -orlrl, -ortus, dep., trans., attack, assail
adparēō, -pārēre, -pārui, -pāritūrūs, intrans., come in sight, appear, be evident
adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., prepare, get ready, make preparations
adpellō,-pellere,-pulī,-pulsus,trans. and intrans., land (ships), bring to land
adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitus, trans. and intrans., seek to gain, desire; approach
adpticō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itus), trans., lean against
adpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put near, set before, serve
adprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., approve of
adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, no p.p., intrans., approach, come near
adpulsus, p.p. of adpello
adquiēscō, -ere, -ēvi [quies], intrans., become quiet, rest; die
adripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ad-rapiō], trans., snatch up, seize
adroganter, adv., with presumption, with insolence
adrogantia, -ae, f., insolence, presumption
adsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, trans., attach (by formal decree)
adsiduus, -a, -um, adj., constant, continued
adsistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p.p., intrans., stand by: in conspectu patris (appear)
adspectus, -ūs [adspicio], m., appearance
adspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look at, look on, behold
adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, trans., accustom, train
adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, trans. and intrans., accustom; become accustomed
adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be near, be present, be at hand, appear
Aduatuci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae, living on the west bank of the Meuse
adulēscēns, -entis, adj., young.—As noun, a youth, young man.—With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish a son from his father)
adulēscēntia, -ae, f., youth
adulēscēntulus, -ī, m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young
advēniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, intrans., come to, arrive at, reach
adventus, -ūs [advenio], m., arrival, approach
adversārius, -a, -um, adj., opposed.
— As noun, opponent, enemy
adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto
advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice). — adversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: hostibus adversus occurrebant (right against, in their front); in adversum os, right in the face; flumine (up, cf. secundum); res adversae, adversity, want of success.— adversus, prep. with acc., against
advolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., fly to, fly at
aedificium, -ī [aedifico], n., building
aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aedes, house, facio], trans., build
Aeētes, -ae (acc. -ēn), m., Åēetes, king of Colchis
aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., sick, disabled
aegerrimē, superl. of aeger
aegrē [aeger], adv., ill, feebly; with difficulty
Aemilius, -ī, m. 1. L. Åemilius Paulus, consul, killed at the battle of Cannae, 216 B. C. 2. L., a Gaul, a subaltern in Caesar’s Gallic cavalry
aēneus, -a, -um [aes], adj., of copper, bronze
aequālīter, adv., evenly, uniformly
aequē [aequus], adv., equally
aequinoctium, -ī [aequus-nox], n., the time of the equinox, the equinox
aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi, contentment
aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., make equal, equalize
aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — Esp., aequus animus, equanimity, contentment; aequo Marte, on equal terms
āēr, āeris (acc. āera), m., air
aerāria, -ae [aes], f., mine
aerarium, -ī [aes], n., treasury
aes, aeris, n., copper (as metal for ships or as money). Hence, money.— Esp., alium, debt (another man’s money)
Aeson, -onis, m., Åeson, father of Jason
aestas, -ātis, f., summer
aestimātiō, -ōnis [aestimo], f., valuation
aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., value, estimate; regard
aestuārium, -ī [aestus, tide], n., estuary, marsh
aestus, -ūs, m., heat; tide
aetās, -ātis, f., age, time
Åfrica, -ae, f., Africa (more usually of that part of the continent near Carthage)
Åfricus, -a, -um, adj., of Africa.— Esp., sc. ventus, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy)
āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum
Agēdincum — alius

Agēdincum, -ī, n., the chief town of the Senones, now Sens
ager, agrī, m., land, field, country, territory
agger, -eris [ad-gero], m. (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), mound of earth, wall, rampart
agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., propose, discuss
agmen, -inis [ago], n., a body in motion, army, line (of troops on the march): primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear)
agnósco, -gnoscere, -gnovi, -gnitus [ad-(g)nosco, become acquainted with], trans., recognize
agō, agere, ēgi, āctus, trans., drive: subicas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express); quid agit? what is one about? quid agitur? what is going on?
agricultūra, see cultura
āla, -ae, f., wing
alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., active, eager, spirited
alacritās, -ātis [alacer], f., eagerness, readiness
ālārius, -a, -um [ala], adj. (belonging to the wings). — Masc. plur. as noun, allies, auxiliaries
albus, -a, -um, adj., white: plumbum album, tin
alces, -is, f., elk
Alesia, -ae, f., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon, now Alise-Ste.-Reine
aliās, adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time, on other occasions: alias . . . alias, now . . . now
aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus. [alienus], trans., make another's, alienate, estrange
aliēnus, -a, -um [cf. alius], adj., another's, of others, other people's: fines (others'). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — Superl., m. plur. as noun, perfect strangers
aliō, adv., elsewhere
aliquamdiū, adv., for some time
aliquandō, adv., at some time
aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., considerable. — Neut. as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), considerably, a good deal
aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. adj. or pron., some, any; some one, any one, something, anything
aliquot, indecl. adj., several, some
aliter, adv., otherwise, differently.
— aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than
alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other. — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in the same clause), one . . . another (plur., some . . . others); one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa inlata,
one giving one reason, another another, or alleging different reasons

Allobroges, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people, living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps

alō, alere, alui, altus, trans., feed, support

Alpēs, -ium, f. plur., the Alps

Alpici, -orum [Alpēs], m., inhabitants of the Alps

alter, -era, -erum, adj., one (of two), the other (of two). — In plur., the other party. — Repeated, one . . . the other; in plur., one party . . . the other. — Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second)

alternus, -a, -um [alter], adj., alternate, alternating

altitūdō, -inis [altus], f., height, depth, thickness (of a timber)

altus, -a, -um, adj., high. — From opposite point of view, deep. — Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep

alūta, -ae, f., leather

ambactus, -ī, m., vassal

Ambarrī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hāedui, and are called Hāedui Ambarri

Ambiānī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobrīva, is now called, from their name, Amiens

Ambiliātī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme

Ambiorīx, -īgis, m., an able prince of the Eburones

Ambivārītī, -orum, m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse

ambo, -ae, -o, num. adj., both

āmentia, -ae [a-mens], f., madness, frenzy, insanity

āmentum, -ī, n., strap, thong (attached to a spear to help in hurling it)

amicē [amicus], adv., in a friendly manner

amicitia, -ae [amicus], f., friendship

amicus, -a, -um [amo, love], adj., friendly, well-disposed. — Masc. as noun, friend, ally

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., send away, let go, let pass; lose, dismiss

amor, -ōris [amo, love], m., love, affection

amphora, -ae, f., two-handled jar

amplē, adv., widely, largely. — amplius, comp., farther, more, longer

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [amplus-facio], trans., increase, enlarge, extend

amplītūdō, -inis [amplus], f., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread)

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, wide, great: dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidium
an, conj., introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather.—Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venirent, an speculandi causa ((or) was it)

Anartés, -ium, m. plur., a people in Dacia

Ancalités, -um, m. plur., a nation of Britain

anceps,-cipitis, adj., double-headed; double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)

ancora, -ae, f., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor

Andebrogius, -i, m., a chief of the Remi

Andés, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire

Andí, -orum, the same as the Andes

angulus, -i, m., corner

angustē, adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters

angustiae, -ärum [angustus], f. plur., narrowness, defile, defiles: propter angustias (narrowness of the passage)

angustus,-a,-um, adj., narrow, confined: in angusto res est, the position is critical

anima, -ae, f., breath, life.— Plur., soul

animal, -ālis [anima], n., animal

animus, -i, m., soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit.—Esp., constancy, courage, resolution; disposition: bono animo esse, be well-disposed; animi causa, for pleasure

annālis, -is [annus], m., record of events, chronicle

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj., last year’s

annuús, -a, -um, adj., yearly: magnistratus creatur (annually)

ānser, -eris, m., goose

ante, adv., before (of place or time), in front: paucis ante diebus, a few days before.— Prep. with acc., before (of place or time).— In dates, ante diem (a. d.) quintum, on the fifth day before

anteā, adv., before, previously, once

antecédō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, trans. and intrans., go forward, advance, surpass (in size etc.)

antecellō, -cellere, trans. and intrans., excel, surpass

antecensor, -ōris, m., courier

antecēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., place in advance, prefer

antemna, -ae, f., yard (for sails), spar

antepōn̄ō, -ponere, -posuit, -positus, trans., think of more importance

antequam, conj., before

antevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, trans., put before, prefer

Antiochus, -i, m., king of Syria, 224–187 B.C.

antiquitus, adv., from ancient times, from early times, long ago

antiquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient
**Latin-English Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anxius</td>
<td>-a, -um, adj., troubled, anxious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apenninus</td>
<td>-i, m., Apennines, a mountain range in Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aperiō, -perīre, -periū, -pertūs, trans.</td>
<td>uncover, open. — apertūs, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., open, exposed, unprotected: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); impetūs maris (unbroken)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apertē, adv., openly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apollo, -inis, m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appareō, see adpareō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apparō, see adparo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appellō, see adpello</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call, name, address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appetō, see adpetō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appōnō, see adpono</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apr., abbr. for Aprilis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aprilīs, -e, adj., of April</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aptus, -a, -um, adj., suited, adapted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud, prep. with acc., at, among, with, before; in one's house (company, possession)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Āpūlia, -ae, f., a country of southeastern Italy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aqua, -ae, f., water</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquātiō, -onis [aqua], f., getting water</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquīla, -ae, f., eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aquilīfer, -erī [aquīla-fero], m., standard bearer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquītānia, -ae, f., Gascony, the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania. — Masc. plur. as noun, the people of Aquitania, the Aquitani or Gascons</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āra, -ae, f., altar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arar, -aris, m., the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitēr, -trī, m., witness, arbitrator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitriūm, -ī [arbiter, judge], n., judgment, will, opinion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbitror, -āri, -ātus [arbiter, judge], dep., trans., think, suppose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arbōr, -oris, f., tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, trans., summon, invite, send for</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ärēdŏ, ärēdere, ārsī, ārsūrus, intrans., be hot, be on fire; be excited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arduus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep, difficult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arecomīci, -ōrum, m. plur., a branch of the Volcæ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argentum, -i, n., silver; silverware</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argilla, -ae, f., clay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argō, Argūs (acc. Argo; no dat. or abl.), f., Argo, Jason's ship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argonautaē, -ārum, m. plur., Argonauts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argus, -i, m., builder of the Argo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ariës, -ietis, m., ram; battering-ram (a long timber, armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls); buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge)

Ariovistus, -i, m., a chief of the Germans

arma, -ōrum, n. plur., arms, equipment: armis ius exsequi, to maintain authority by force of arms

armāmenta, -ōrum [armo], n. plur., implements. — Esp., tackle, rigging

armātūra, -ae [armo], f., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light-armed)

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., equip, arm; rouse, incite. — Pass., arm (one's self). — armātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped. — Masc. plur. as noun, armed men

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., plow

Arpinēius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

ars, artis, f., skill, art. — Plur., the useful arts

artē, adv., closely, tightly

articulus, -i [artus, joint], m., joint

artificium, -i [artifex, artist], n., a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art)

artus, -a, -um, adj., close: silva (thick)

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul). — Masc. plur., the Arverni

ariës — auctus

arx, arcis [arceo, shut in], f., stronghold, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [ad-scando, climb], trans. and intrans., climb up, climb, ascend: navem (embark)

ascensus, -ūs, m., ascent, going up; means of ascent

Asia, -ae, f., Asia, Asia Minor

aspiciō, see adspicio

at, conj., but, but yet, at least

Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., Athens, a city in Greece

atque (ac), conj., and, and especially: simul atque, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul). — Plur., the Atrebates

Ātrius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

attexō, -texere, -textū, -textus, trans., weave on, make on (by weaving)

Atticus, -i, m., T. Pomponius Atticus, a great friend of Cicero's; he resided chiefly at Athens

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [ad-tāngo], trans., touch at, touch upon, touch, border on

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, trans., allot to, assign

attuli, see adfero

auctor, -ōris [aügeo], m., voucher, authority: auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy

auctōritās, -ātis [auctor], f., influence, prestige

auctus, -a, -um, p.p. of aügeo. — Comp., auctior, richer, greater
Latin-English Vocabulary

audācia -ae [audax, bold], f., daring, boldness

audācter [audax, bold], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly; audacissime, with the greatest daring

audeō, audēre, ausus, semi-dep., trans., dare, venture. — ausus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, daring

audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, trans., hear, hear of. — audiēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., obedient (with dicto)

auditio, -onis [audio], f., hearing, hearsay, report

auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablatus [ab-fero], trans., take away, remove

aufugiō, -fugere, -fugi [ab-fugio], intrans., flee away, run away

augeō, augère, auxī, auctus, trans., increase, magnify, add to (a thing). — Pass., increase

Aulercus,-a,-um, adj., of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Masc. plur., the Aulerci

Aulus, -i, m., a Roman praenomen

Aurelius, -i, m., C. Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], adj., golden

aurīga, -ae, m., charioteer, driver

auris, -is, f., ear

aurum, -i, n., gold

Aurunculēius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Auscī, -ōrum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania

ausus,-a,-um, p.p. of audeo

aut, conj., or. — Repeated, either . . . or

autem, conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand, now, moreover, furthermore

auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], adj., auxiliary. — Masc. plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops

auxiliōr, -ārī, -ātus [auxilium], dep., intrans., give assistance

auxilium, -i, n., assistance, aid, relief. — Plur., auxiliaries; reënforcements

Avaricum, -i, n., a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul

avāritia, -ae [avarus, greedy], f., covetousness, greed, avarice

ävehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, carry off, take away

ävertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn aside, turn away. — āversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., turned away; in the rear

avis, -is, f., bird

avus, -i, m., grandfather

Axona, -ae, f., a river of Belgic Gaul, now the Aisne

Bäcenis, -is, f., with silva, a forest in Germany

Baculus, -i, m., P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army

Baebius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Baleāris, -e, adj., Balearic (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean)

balteus, -i, m., belt

Balventius, -i, m., T. Balventius, a centurion in Cæsar’s army
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (not Greek or Roman), uncivilized. — Masc. plur., barbarians, savages
Batavi, -orum, m. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine
Belgae, -arum, m. plur., the Belgæ or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul
Belgium, -i, n., the country of the Belgæ
bellicösus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., warlike
bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., of war, in war
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bellum], intrans., fight, make war
Bellovacī, -orum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise
bellum, -i, n., war: bellum gerere, wage war
bene [bonus], adv., well
beneficium, -i [bene-facio], n., well-doing, service, favor, often rendered by English plur.
benevolentia, -ae [bene-volo], f., good will, kindness
Bibracte, -is, n., the chief town of the Hædui
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi
Bibroci, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of southeastern Britain
biduum, -i [bis-dies], n., two days' time, two days
biennium, -i [bis-annus], n., two years' time
Bigerriōnēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrænes
bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets), two at a time
bipartitō, adv., in two divisions
bipedālis, -e [bis-pes], adj., two-foot (two feet long, wide, etc.)
bis, num. adv., twice
Bithynia, -ae, a country in northwestern Asia Minor
Bithynus, -a, -um, adj., Bithynian. — Masc. as noun, Bithynian
Biturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul
Blithō, -onis, m., Sulpicius Blitho, a writer of Roman history
Boduognātus, -i, m., a leader of the Nervii
Bōia, -ae, f., a town of the Boii
Bōii, -orum, m. plur., a Celtic tribe
bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., goodness: agrorum (fertility)
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well-disposed. — Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property
bōs, bovis, c., bull, cow, ox. — Plur., cattle
brachium, -i, n., arm
Bratuspantium, -i, n., a fortified town of the Bellovaci
brevis, -e, adj., short (of space or time): brevi, in a short space
brevitās, -ātis [brevis], f., shortness, short stature: brevitas temporis, want of time
Britanni, -orum, m. plur., the Britons
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
brūna, -ae, f., the winter solstice
Brūtus, -ī, m., a family name at Rome. — Esp., D. Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins

C, for centum, hundred
C., abbr. for Gaius, Caius
Caburus, -ī, m., C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

cadāver, -eris [cf. cado], n., corpse
cadō, cadere, cecīdī, cāsūrus, intrans., fall, be killed
cāduceus, -ī, m., a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy
Cadūrus, -a, -um, adj., of the Cadurci.— Masc. plur., the Cadurci
caeceus, -a, -um, adj., blind
caedēs, -is [caedo], f., murder, massacre, slaughter
caedō, caedere, cecīdi, caesus, trans., cut, slay, kill
caelestis, -e, adj., heavenly.— Masc. plur., the gods
Caemāni, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul
cærimōnia, -ae, f., sacred rite

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul
cæruleus, -a, -um [caelum, sky], adj., dark blue
Cæsar, -aris, m., a family name in the gens Iulia.— Esp.: 1. C. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and author of the "Commentaries."— 2. L. Julius Cæsar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul
cæspes, -itis, m., sod
cæsus, -a, -um, p.p. of caedo
Calaīs (nom. only), m., one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind
calamitās, -ātis, f., disaster, defeat, misfortune
calceus, -ī, m., shoe
Caletī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of northern Gaul
callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd, cunning, skillful
cālō, -ōnis, m., servant, camp follower
campester, -tris, -tre [campus], adj., of the plain: loca (level plains)
campus, -ī, m., plain, open field
Cannēnsis, -e, adj., of Canne, a town in Apulia, where the Romans suffered their worst defeat, in 216 B.C.
Cantaber, -bra, -brum, adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain).— Masc. plur., the Cantabri or Cantabrians
Cantium, -ī, n., Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., sing
capillus, -ī, m., the hair
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

capiō — caurus

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, trans.,
take, capture, take possession of,
get, acquire, seize: locum (select);
portum (arrive at, make); fugam
(take to flight)
capra, -ae, f., goat
captīvus, -a, -um [capio], adj., cap-
tive. — Masc. as noun, captive, prisoner
captus, -a, -um, p.p. of capio
captus, -ūs [capio], m., capacity, nature, idea
Capua, -ae, f., the chief city of Campania
caput, -itis, n., head; person; mouth
(of a river); life: poenam capitis
(of death); capitis periculo (of life)
careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, intrans., be without, go without
carina, -ae, f., keel
carmen, -inis, n., song, incantation
Carnutēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic people
carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat
carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus, trans.,
pluck; find fault with
carrus, -i, m., cart
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious, valuable
Carvilius, -i, m., a king of part of Kent
casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut
cāseus, -i, m., cheese
Cassi, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe
Cassiānūs, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius:
bellum (the war in 107 B.C., in
which L. Cassius Longinus was
defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)
Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., L. Cassius Longi-
num, consul 107 B.C. (see Cassianus)
Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., a British chief
castellum, -ī [castrum], n., fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt
Casticus, -ī, m., a chief of the Sequani
Castor, -ōris, m., twin brother of Pollux
castrum, -ī, n., fortress. — Plur., camp: castra ponere, pitch camp;
castra movere, break camp, move
cāsus, -ūs [cado], m., accident, chance (good or bad): casu, by accident, by chance
Catamantāloëdēs, -is, m., a chief of the Sequani
catēna, -ae, f., chain (for prisoners),
cable: in catenas coniecit (into prison)
Caturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a people in Roman Gaul
Catuvolcus, -ī, m., a chief of the Eburones
cauda, -ae, f., tail
causa, -ae, f., reason, excuse, grounds, motive (for an act): satis causae,
sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the pur-
pose of. Also, case (in law): causam dicere, plead one's cause, stand trial, be tried
cautē [cautos], adv., cautiously
cautus, p.p. of caveo
Cavarillus, -i, m., a prince of the Haedu

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, trans. and intrans., be on one's guard: obsidibus cavere, give hostages as security
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, intrans., give way, retreat, retire
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick, fast
celeritās, -ātis [celer], f., swiftness, activity, speed
celeriter, adv., quickly, speedily
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, trans., conceal, hide.—Pass., pass unnoticed

Celtae, -arum, m. plur., a race in Gaul and Britain.—More particularly, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul

Celtillus, -i, m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix

cēna, -ae, f., dinner

Cēnābum, -i, n., the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul

Cēnāculum, -i [cenō], n., dining-room

Cēnimagni, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe

cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -āitus, intrans., dine
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnсуī, cēnсus, trans., reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (of the senate), determine
cēnсus, -ās [censeo], m., numbering, count, census
centaurus, -i, m., centaur, a fabulous creature, half man, half horse

Centenius, -i, m., C. Centenius, a Roman commander defeated by Hannibal

centum (C), indecl. num. adj., hundred

centuriō, -onis, m., centurion (an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men)
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, trans., distinguish, see
certāmen, -inis [certo, contend], n., struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv., certainly, surely, at least
certus, -a, -um (for crētus), p.p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain: certiorem facere, inform, order; dies certa, appointed day
cervus, -i, m., stag

cētus, -a, -um, adj. the rest of.

Cētēgus, -i, m., P. Cornelius Cethēgus, consul in 181 B.C.

Cētronēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in the Alps

Cēvenna, -ae, f., a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley, now the Cévennes

Chērusci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Germans

cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., pertaining to food.—Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molita (ground corn)
cibus, -i, m., food

Cicerō, -onis, m., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum.—Esp., Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, in Cæsar’s service in Gaul as legatus
Cimberius, -ī, m., a prince of the Suebi
Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.
Cingetorix, -īgis, m., a British prince in Kent
cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cīnectus, trans., surround, encircle; man (occupy in a circuit, of walls)
circinus, -ī [cf. circum], m., a pair of compasses
circiter, adv. and prep. with acc., about, near, not far from
circitus, -ūs [circumeo], m., circuit, circuitous route, circumference: in circuitu, all around
cicum, adv. and prep. with acc., about, around
circumcidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [circum-caedo], cut around, cut
circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum-claudo], trans., inclose, encircle
circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datus, irr., trans., put around: murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle
circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc- tus, trans., lead around; draw around
circumeō, -ēre, -ēi, -ētus, irr., intrans., go around. — As trans., visit, make a tour of

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, trans., pour around. — Pass. or reflex., crowd around, surround
circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], trans., throw around
circumitus, p.p. of circumcito
circummittō, -mittere, -misī, -mis-sus, trans., send around
circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., throw fortifications around (said of defenders), fortify
circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stīti), no p.p., trans., stand around, surround, hem in, beset
circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look about for, examine
circumvālō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., draw an intrenchment around (said of besiegers)
circumveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventus, trans., surround; impose upon, defraud
cis, prep. with acc., on this side, this side of
Cita, -ae, m., C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight
citātus, -a, -um, p.p. of cito
citer, -tra, -trum, adj. Usually citerior (comp.), nearer, hither (as adj.): provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps)
citharoedus, -ī, m., harpist, minstrel
citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., urge on, hurry. — citātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly
citō, adv., quickly: citissimē, very rapidly
citra, adv., and prep. with acc., this side, within

citrō, adv., to this side: ultro citro-que, back and forth
cīvis, -is, c., citizen
civītās, -ātis [cīvis], f., citizenship, the citizens (as a body), a state (body of citizens; res publica, state as a thing in itself); in Cæsar tribe, conventionally translated state (cf. tribus, part of a state)
clam, adv., and prep. with abl., secretly; unknown to
clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [clamo, cry out], trans., keep crying out
clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, outcry
claudestinus, -a, -um, adj., secret
clārus, -a, -um, adj., famous; loud, distinct
classiārius, -a, -um [classis], adj., of the navy.—Masc. plur. as noun, marines, naval forces
classis, -is, f., fleet
Clastidium, -ī, n., a town of Cisalpine Gaul
Claudius, -ī, M. Claudius Marcellus, consul in 196 B.C.
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, trans., close, shut, hem in, fasten: claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear
clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike
clēmentia, -ae [clemens, kind], f., kindness, gentleness, mercy
cliēns, -entis, c., dependent, vassal, retainer
clientēla, -ae [cliens], f., vassalage:
magnae clientelae, many vassals;

Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to etc.)

Clōdius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., P. Clodius Pulcher, tribune, bitter enemy of Cicero the orator. He was killed in a fray by Milo (January, 52 B.C.)

Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus

coaercēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-acervus], trans., heap together, heap on top (of others)
coactus, -a, -um, p.p. of cogo
coarīō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., press together
Cocosātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmpitus [com-emō], trans., buy up
cōēō, -īre, -īi, no p.p., irr., intrans., come together, unite, meet
coepī, -isse, coeptus, defective, trans., began, undertook, started.—coeptus, -a, -um, p.p. used (in same sense as the active) with pass. infinitives
cōerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [com-arceo, shut up], trans., confine, keep in check
cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [com-agito], trans., consider, think over
cognātiō, -onis, f., connection by birth, family, clan
cognitus, -a, -um, p.p. of cognosco
cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvi, -gnitus [com-(g)nosco, learn], trans., learn, find out, investigate, inquire into.

—In perf. tenses, know
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [com-agō],
trans., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion
cohors, -hortis, f., body of troops, cohort (the tenth part of a legion)
cohortātiō, -onis [cohortor], f., an encouraging, encouragement
cohortor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, cheer up
Colchī, -ōrum, m. plur., inhabitants of Colchis
Colchis, -idis (acc. -ida), f., a country east of the Black Sea
collis, -is, m., hill
colō, colere, colui, cultus, trans.,
cultivate; inhabit; worship (deities): collendi causa, for purposes of cultivation
color, -ōris, m., color
columba, -ae, f., pigeon, dove
com- (con-, co-), adv. in composition,
with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation
combūrō, -ūere, -ussi, -ūstus [com-urō, burn], trans., burn up, consume
comes, -itis, c., companion
comitium, -ī, n., a part of the Roman Forum.—Plur., assembly of the Roman people, election: proximis comitiiis, at the last election
commeātus, -ūs [commeo], m., trip;
supplies (of an army), provisions
commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative)
commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commando, commit], trans., intrust, commend, surrender
commēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans.,
go back and forth.—With ad, visit, resort to
commīlitō, -onis [commiles], m., fellow soldier
comminus [com-manus], adv., hand to hand, in close combat
committō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., join: proelium (engage in, begin the engagement).—Also, trust, intrust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of etc.).—Also, commit, commit the fault of letting, admit, allow (to happen)
Commius, -ī, m., a leader of the Atrebates
commodē, adv., conveniently, fitly, readily: satis commode, to much advantage; non satis commode, not very easily
commodus, -a, -um, adj., suitable, fitting, convenient, advantageous. —Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interest
commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -facitus [com-moneo-facio], trans., remind
commoror, -āri, -ātus, dep., intrans., delay
commovere, -movère, -mōvī, -mōtus,
trans., move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm
commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [communīs'], trans., share, allow to participate in, put into a common stock, communicate: consilium communicat cum A., he acquaints A. with his plan
commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., strongly fortify
commūnis, -e, adj., common, general, in common: res (the common interest)
commūtātiō, -onis, f., change
commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., change, exchange: studium belli agri culturā (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)
1. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together
2. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., compare
compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive together, drive in, force, drive
comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, trans., find out, ascertain, discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., certain
complector, -plectī, -plexus, dep., trans., embrace, include, inclose
complēō, -plēere, -plēvī, -plētus, trans., fill up, fill; cover, man (of walls)
complūrēs, -plūra, adj., plur., very many, a great many
compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put together, settle: bellum (bring to an end)
comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together, collect
comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēn-sus, trans., seize, catch, arrest, capture
comprobō, -probāre, -probāvī, -probātus, trans., assent to, ratify, sanction
compulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of compello
con-, see com-
cōnatum, -i [conor], n., attempt, undertaking
cōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conor
cōnātus, -ūs [conor], m., attempt, effort
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans. and intrans., yield, allow, grant, permit, give permission for, make a concession
concidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p.p. [com-cado], intrans., fall down, fall
concidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [com-caedo], trans., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries)
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together; win over, gain, obtain
concilium, -ī, n., meeting; assembly, council, conference
concīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of concido
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., arouse, stir up: risum (provoke)
conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., cry out, shout: ad arma (call)
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**concludō** — congressus

concludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus

[com-claudo], **trans.**, shut up, in-
close: mare conclusum (inclosed, inland)

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, **m.**, a leader
of the Carnutes

concurrō, -currere, -curri, -currūs,
intrans., run together, rush up,
unite: concursum est, there was
a rushing together

concursum, -us, **m.**

a running
together, a dashing
together (collision); onset, conflict

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus

[com-
damno], **trans.**, condemn, find
guilty

condiciō, -onis, **f.**
terms, condition,
terms of agreement

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, **trans.**
give up, pardon

Condūsī, -ōrum, **m. plur.**, a Belgic
tribe on the Meuse

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus,
**trans.**, bring together, bring up
(soldiers), hire

conficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus

[com-
facio], **trans.**, accomplish, com-
plete, finish, end, perform, dis-
patch; dress (of skins); exhaust,
wear out

confidō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, semi-
dep., intrans., trust, trust to, have
confidence in, rely on. — cōnphisus,
-a, -um, **p. p. in act. sense**, trust-
ing in

configō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, **trans.**

fasten together, fasten

confirmātiō, -onis [confirmo], **f.**
as-
surance, affirmation

confirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, **trans.**
strengthen, establish (pacem), as-
sure, confirm, reassure, encourage

cōnphisus, -a, -um, **p. p. of confido**

confiteor, -fītēri, -fessus

[com-fateor, confess], **dep.**, **trans.**, confess, ac-
knowledge, admit

cōnfixus, -a, -um, **p. p. of configo**

conflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, **intrans.**

be on fire, burn

configō, -figere, -fixī, -flictus, **trans.**

and intrans., dash together, dash
against, contend, fight

confluēns, -entis, **m.**

meeting of two
rivers, confluence

congregō, -gregi, -gressus

[com-
gradior, step], **dep.**, **intrans.**, come
together. — In peace, unite with.

— Esp. in war, engage, fight

congressus, -a, -um, **p. p. of con-
gredior

congressus, -ūs [congregō], **m.**

eng-
gagement, encounter
conicio — consequor

conicio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [coniacio], trans., throw together, hurl, cast: se concere, throw one's self, rush. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into etc.), force. — Fig., put together (of ideas)

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio

coniunctim [coniungo], adv., in common

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo

coniungō, -iungere, -iunxi, -iectus, trans., unite, connect, fasten together

coniunx,-iugis [coniungo], c., husband, wife

coniuratio, -onis, conspiracy, confederacy

conior, -ari, -atus, dtp., trans., and intrans., attempt, try, endeavor

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quīsitus [com-quaero], trans., search for, seek for, hunt up

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [com-sanguis], adj., akin (by blood). — As noun, kinsman

coniungō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [com-scando, climb], trans., climb, climb upon: navem (naves, in naves) (go on board)

coniungō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, [com-scisco, decree], trans., resolve: ipse sibi mortem (commit suicide)

consensus, -a, -um [com-scio], adj., aware: sibi conscius, conscious

coniungō, -scribere, -scrips!, -scripitus, trans., enroll, levy, enlist: epistulam (compose, write): patres conscripti, senators

consensus, -a, -um, p. p. of conligo

conligō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bind together, fasten together

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [com-lego, gather], trans., gather together, collect, acquire. — With reflexive, collect one's self, recover

conlocō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, trans., place, set, station. — Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage

conloquium, -i [conloquor], n., conference, interview

conloquor, -loqui, -locútus, dep., intrans., confer, hold an interview

conscendo, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [com-scando, climb], trans., climb, climb upon: navem (naves, in naves) (go on board)

consecuto, -sensus, m., agreement, consent

conscio, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, intrans., agree, conspire, make common cause

consequor, -sequī, -secútus, dep., trans., overtake; obtain, secure, attain, succeed in
cōnserō — cōnsuētūdō

cōnserō, -serere, -serui, -seritus, _trans._ connect, join: manum (join battle)
cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, _trans._ save, preserve, spare, guard: odium (cherish)
cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, _trans._ reflect on, consider
Cōnсидiōs, -ī, _m._, a Roman name
cōnsīdō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, _intrans._, sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle
cōnsilium, -ī, _n._, deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — _Esp._, wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, design, purpose. — _Phrases_: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); consilium capere, resolve; quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation; commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action
cōn similis, -e, _adj._, very like, just like
cōnsistō, -sistere, -stīti, _no p.p._, _intrans._, take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — _In perf. tenses_, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — _With in_, occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of
cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, _dep._, _trans._, console, cheer. — cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, _p.p._ as _pres._, consoling
cōnspectus, -ūs, _m._, sight. — _In conspectu_, in one's presence
cōspicātus, -a, -um, _p.p._ of conspicor
cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [com-specio, look at], _trans._, catch sight of, see
cōspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, _intrans._, conspire, league together
cōnstanter, _adv._, steadily, firmly, consistently
cōnstantia, -ae [constans, firm], _f._, firmness, constancy, courage
cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, _trans._, strew over
cōnstitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, _trans._, press together, crowd
cōnstiti, _see consisto
cōnstituō, -stituere, -stītui, -stītūtus [com-statuo], _trans. and intrans._, set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up; determine, appoint, agree upon
cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, _intrans._, agree; be established, appear, be evident (_esp._, constat, it appears); cost
cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, _intrans._, become accustomed. — _In perf. tenses_. be accustomed, be wont. — cōnsuētus, -a, -um, _p.p._, accustomed, wont, used
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, _f._, habit, custom, manners, practice: itineris (usual order of march)
cōnsul — contrahō

cōnsul, -ulis, m., consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome): M. Messala et M. Pison consulibus, in the consulship of etc. (the usual Roman method of giving a date)

cōnsulāris, -e [consul], adj., consular.
— Masc. as noun, ex-consul

cōnsulātus, -ūs [consul], m., consulship

cōnsulō,-sulere,-sului,-sultus, trans. and intrans., deliberate, consult.
— With dat., take counsel for, look out for. — sortibus consultum (est), lots were drawn to decide

cōnsultō, adv., purposely, designedly

cōnsultum, -i [consulto], n., decision, decree. — Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, trans., waste, destroy, spend, exhaust

cōnsurgō,-surgere,-surrēxi,-surrēctorūs, intrans., rise, rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up

cōntabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., board up, plank (floor with planks)

cōntāgiō,-ōnis [com-tango], f., contact

cōntemptiō,-ōnis [contemno], despise], f., contempt, scorn

cōntemptus, -ūs [contemno], despise], m., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule

cōntendō,-tendere,-tendi,-tentūrus, intrans., strive, try, endeavor; press on, hasten; fight, contend, wage war

cōntentiō,-ōnis [contendo], f., struggle, efforts. — Esp., contest, fighting, dispute

cōntentus, -a, -um, p. p. of contendo and contineo

cōntexō,-texere,-textuī,-textus, trans., interweave, weave together

cōntigisse, see contingo

cōntinēns, -entis, see contineo

cōntinenter, adv., continually, incessantly

cōntineō,-tinēre,-tinui,-tentus [conteneo], trans., hold together; restrain, hold in check, hem in. — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain. — continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., continual, continuous.
— As noun, the continent.
— cōntentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied

cōntingō,-tingere,-tīgī,-tāctus [com-tango], trans. and intraus., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen

cōntinuātiō,-ōnis [continuo], unite], f., continuation: continuatio imbrium, incessant rains

cōntinuus, -a, -um [contineo], adj., continuous, successive: dies (successive)

cōntiō,-ōnis, f., assembly, meeting; address, harangue

cōntrā, adv., and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against: contra atque, contrary to what etc.

cōntrahō,-trahere,-trāxī,-trāctus, trans., draw together, gather together, contract, make smaller
contrarius, -a, -um [contra], adj., opposite, contrary: ex contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam partem, in the opposite direction controversia, -ae, f., dispute, quarrel. —Plur., grounds of quarrel contuli, see confero contumelia, -ae, f., outrage, insult, reproach, affront.—Fig., violence (of waves) convallis, -is, f., valley (inclosed on all sides) conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, trans. and intrans., come together, meet, assemble; agree upon.—With acc., meet, come to.—Also, of things, be agreed on, be fitting, be necessary: convenit, impers., it is agreed conventus, -ūs [convenio], m., assembly convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn about, turn, change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa bipartito intulerunt, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge the enemy Convictolitavis, -is, m., a young Haeduan nobleman convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, trans., prove, make good (a charge etc.): avaritia ei convicta est, he has been found guilty of avarice convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call together, summon, call coōrīor, -orīri, -ortus, dep., intrans., arise, spring up, break out (of a war) cópia, -ae, f., abundance, plenty; supply.—Plur., resources, supplies, forces cópiōsus, -a, -um [cópia], adj., well supplied, wealthy cópula, -ae, f., grappling hook cor, cordis, n., heart: cordi esse, be dear cōram, adv., and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person, in the presence of Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth, a city in Greece Coriosolītēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul corium, -ī, n., hide, skin Cornēlius, -ī, m., L. Cornelius, consul in 193 B.C. cornū, -ūs, n., horn.—Fig., wing (of an army) corōna, -ae, f., garland, wreath, crown: sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction) corpus, -oris, n., the body, the person.—Also, a body (dead) corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans., destroy, ruin, corrupt, bribe cortex, -icis, m. (also f.), bark Cōrus, -ī, m., northwest wind côtēs, -is, f., rock, reef cotidiānus, -a, -um [cotidiē], adj., daily cotidiē, adv., daily, every day
Cotta, -ae, m., a Roman family name. — *Esp.* L. Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar, slain by the Gauls.

Cotuatus, -i, m., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, m., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitúdo, -inis [crassus, thick], f., thickness.

Crassus, -i, m., a Roman family name. — *Esp.* 1. M. Licinius Crassus, consul with Pompey, 55 B.c.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. P. Crassus (called adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. M. Crassus, another son of the triumvir, questor, 54 B.c., in Cæsar’s army.

crátēs, -is, f., wickerwork, fascine (a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification).

créber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent.


crēmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned to death.

crēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, create. — *Esp.*, elect, choose, appoint.

Creōn, -ontis, m., a king of Corinth.
cunctor — decem

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., hesitate: non cunctari quin, have no hesitation in etc.
cūncus, -a, -um [conunctus], adj., all, all together

cuneātim [cuneus, wedge], adv., in the shape of a wedge

cuniculus, -ī, m., burrow; mine

cupidī [cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly

cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., desire, eagerness, greed

cupidus, -a, -um [cupio], adj., eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, trans. and intrans., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo).
— With dat., wish well to, be zealous for

cūr, adv., why (interrog. and rel.)
cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety, attention

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., take care, provide for.
— With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done)
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus, intrans., run

currus, -ūs, m., chariot (cf. essedum)
cursus, -ūs [curro], m., running, speed, a run, a course (space or direction run): cursum adaequare, keep up with; cursu incitato or magno, at full speed

custōdia, -ae [custos], f., custody, guard (state of being guarded).
— Plur. (concretely), guards, keepers

custōdiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [custos], trans., guard

custōs, -ōdis, c., guard, watchman, keeper, spy

Cyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., Cyrenaean.
— Masc. as noun, Cyrenaean

Cyzicus, -ī, f., a city in Asia Minor

D [half of CIÒ, thousand], Roman numeral for five hundred

D., abbr. for Decimus

D. abbr. for diem

Dācus, -a, -um, adj., Dacian.—Masc. plur., the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., find guilty, condemn

Dānuvius, -ī, m., the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea

datus, -a, -um, p.p. of do

dē, prep. with abl., from, down from, off from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason.—Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris. — Also, about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for.—In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—In composition, away, off, down, through

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus [de-habeo], trans., owe, be bound, ought, must.—Pass., be due, be owing

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., weaken, cripple

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, intrans., retire, withdraw, withdraw from.—Esp. (from life), die

decem, indecl. num. adj., ten


**latin-english vocabulary**

**déceptus — défetiscor**

déceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of decipio
décernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, trans. and intrans., decide, determine, decree, order; decide by battle, fight out, fight
décertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., contend (so as to close the contest), decide the issue, carry on war, fight (a general engagement)
décessus, -ūs, m., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall)
déciō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [decado], intrans., fall (from a horse)
decimus, -a, -um [decem], adj., tenth
decimūs, -ī [decimus], m., a Roman prænomen
décipō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [decipio], trans., beguile, deceive
déclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make plain, declare, show
déclīvis, -e [declīvis, slope], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes
décrētum, -ī, n., decree, decision
décrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno
decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted)
decurīō, -onis, m., commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron)
décurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run down, run away, hurry off
dédecus, -oris, n., disgrace, dishonor
déditīcius, -a, -um [dedo], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender)
déditiō, -ōnis [dedo], f., surrender
déditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo
dédō, -dere, -dī, -ditus, trans., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one’s self, submit
dédūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead down, lead off, lead away, take away (of men); conduct: re in controversiam deducta (coming to etc.). — Esp., launch (of ships); marry (of women)
dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis [defatigo], f., exhaustion
dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., wear out, exhaust
dēfectiō, -ōnis [deficio], f., falling away, revolt
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensus, trans., ward off, defend one’s self against; defend, protect
dēfensiō, -ōnis [defendo], f., defense
dēfensor, -ōris [defendo], m., defender; means of defense, defense
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr., trans., carry down, carry away, carry, take, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside. — Fig., report, lay before; offer, confer
dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of défetscor
dēfetscor, -fetisci, -fessus, dep., intrans., crack open. — défessus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted
deficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [de-facio], trans. and intrans., fail, revolt, abandon (with ab): animo (despond)
defigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans., drive down, plant, set, fasten
defixus, -a, -um, p.p. of defigo
defluō, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxurus, intrans., flow apart, divide (of a river)
deforme, see desum
deformis, -e [de-forma], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly
defugīō, -fugere, -fugi, no p.p., trans. and intrans., fly from, avoid, run away
deficiō, -iere, -iecī, -iectus [de-iacio], trans., cast down, cast, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), deprive:

delabor, -labi, -lapsus, intrans., slip down, descend, fall
delātus, -a, -um, p.p. of deicio
delictus, -a, -um, p.p. of deicio
delictus, -ūs [deicio], m., declivity, slope
deinceps, adv., in succession
deinde, adv., then, next
delābor, -lābi, -lapsus, intrans., slip down, descend, fall
delātus, -a, -um, p.p. of deferō
delectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., delight.
delectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., delight.
delectus, -a, -um, p.p. of deligo (-ligere)
delectus, -ūs [deligo, pick out], m., levy, conscription
deleō, -ère, -ēvi, -ētus, trans., blot out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy
delētus, -a, -um, p.p. of deleo
deliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, consult, deliberate
delictum, -i [delinquo, fail], n., offense
delīgātus, -a, -um, p.p. of deligo (-āre)
delīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-līgo, bind], trans., tie down, moor, tie
delīgō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [de-lego, choose], trans., choose out, select.
delīctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., chosen, picked
delītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītui, no p.p., intrans., hide away, hide
Delethe, -ōrum, m. plur., a town in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo
dementia, -ae [demens, crazy], f., madness, folly
demessus, -a, -um, p.p. of demeto
demetō, -metere, -messui, -messus, trans., reap, cut down
demigrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, intrans., move away, emigrate
deminuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus, trans., diminish, lessen, detract
demittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., send down, let down, let fall.

Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged: animos (lose courage).
demissus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., bowed, low
dēmō, démere, démpsī, démpus [de-emo, take], trans., take down, take off, remove
dēmōnstrō — dēsiliō

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
point out, show, state, speak of,
make known

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.,
delay, retard

dēmum, adv., at last, at length
dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and
intrans., refuse

dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
plur., ten each, ten (on each side,
or in sets of ten)
dēnique, adv., at last; finally: multo
denique die, not till late
dēns, dentis, m., tooth
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, crowded,
dense
dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
declare, warn
dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus,
trans., drive off, drive away
dēperdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, trans.,
lose, be deprived of

dēpereō, -periēre, -periī, -perītūrus,
irr., intrans., be lost
dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
trans., lay down, lay aside,
place, deposit; give up, lose,
abandon
dēpōpulor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.,
ravage, lay waste
dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
carry off, carry away, remove
dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p.p.,
trans., demand, call for
dēpositus, -a, -um, p.p. of depono
dēprecātor, -ōris, m., mediator: eo
derecat, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.

and intrans., beg off, pray for
pardon, ask for quarter
dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.,
fight it out, fight decisively
dēpulsus, -ā, -um, p.p. of depello
dērēctē, adv., straight: ad perpen-
diculum (perpendicularly)
dērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of derigo
dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [de-
regō], trans., straighten out. — dē-
rēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.,
straight, perpendicular
dēripio, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [de-
rapio], trans., snatch away, tear
away, pull down
dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., take
away, withdraw
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-
sūrus [de-scando, climb], intrans.,
descend, come down, have recourse
to, adopt (with ad)
dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, trans.,
cut off
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sērūs, trans.,
abandon, forsake. — dēsērō, -a,
-um, p.p. as adj., deserted, solitary
dēsērōtor, -ōris, m., deserter
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
feel the want of, desire, miss, find
missing, lose
dēsīdia, -ae [deses, idle], f., idleness,
sloth
dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
mark out, indicate, mean
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sūtūrus [de-
salio, leap], intrans., leap down,
leap off, jump out, jump over-
board
dēsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītūrus, intrans., cease, stop, desist from, abandon

dēspectus, -a, -um, p.p. of despicio
dēspectus, -ūs [despicio], m., a view down, view from a height: oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices)

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., cease to hope, despair. — despērātus, -a, -um, as pass., despair of. — Also as adj., desperate
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [de-specio, look], trans. and intrans., look down, look down on; despise
dēspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., strip, deprive
dēstīnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., fasten, make fast, make firm

dēstitī, see desisto
dēstituō, -stītuerē, -stītūī, -stītūtus [de-status], trans., set down, abandon, desert
dēstrictus, -a, -um, p.p. of destingo
dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, trans., draw, unsheathe
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be wanting, fail: equites Romanis desunt, the Romans lack horsemen, the Romans are without horsemen
dēsuper, adv., from above
dēterior, -ius, adj., inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (impair)
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, trans., frighten off, deter, prevent
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [de-teneo], trans., delay, stop
dētrāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of detraho
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, trans., drag off, draw off, snatch away, take away, take off, withdraw
dētrectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., avoid, shun
dētrimentum, -ā [detero, rub off], n., loss, injury; defeat, disaster
dēturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-turbo, disturb], trans., drive off (in confusion)
deus, -ī (nom. plur. dei or dī, dat. or abl. plur. deīs or dīs), m., a god
dēvehō, -vehere, - vexī, vectus, trans., carry away, bring along
dēveniō, -veniēre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans., come (to a place, without having planned to come there), get to
dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, trans., conquer completely, overcome
dēvōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of devoveo
dēvoveo, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, trans., vow. — dēvōtus, -ī, m., p.p. as noun, a sworn follower
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right (on the right hand). — dextra, -ae (sc. manus), f., the right hand

diablintēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in northwestern Gaul
Diāna, -ae, f., goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo
diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, sway
dicō — dirimō

dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.*, adjudge, assign: se in clientelam (bind); se in servitutem (surrender)
dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus, *trans. and intrans.*, say, speak, name; appoint, fix; ius (administer); sen-
tentiam (give)
dictator, -ōris [*dico*], *m.*, dictator
dictiō, -ōnis [*dico*], *f.*, a speaking, a pleading: causae (pleading one's cause, trial)
dictum, -i [*n. p. p. of dico*], *n.*, statement, command: dicto audiens esse alicui, be obedient, obey
dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*dis-
duco*], *trans.*, draw apart, separate, divide
dīēs, -ēi, *m.* (rarely *f.* in some uses), day: in dies, from day to day; diem ex die ducere, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus [*dis-
fero*], *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; differ
dificilis, -e [*dis-facilis*], *adj.*, not easy, difficult: iter (hard to pass over)
dificultās, -ātis [*dificilis*], *f.*, difficulty, trouble
dificulter [*dificilis*], *adv.*, with difficulty
diformō, -fidere, -fīsus sum [*dis-fido*], *semi-dep.*, *intrans.*, distrust
difundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus [*dis-
undo*], *trans.*, spread out
digitus, -i, *m.*, finger: pollex (thumb); finger's breadth
dignitās, -ātis [*dignus*], *f.*, worth, dignity, prestige, rank
dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy
dīlūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*dis-iudico*], *trans. and intrans.*, decide, determine
dilēctus, -a, -um, *p. p. of diligo
dilēctus, -ūs [*diligo*], *m.*, selection, levy
diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, with care, with exactness: parum diligenter, too carelessly
diligentia, -ae [*diligens*, careful], *f.*, care, pains, diligence
dilīgō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*dis-
lego*, choose], *trans.*, love, be fond of
dilūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, *intrans.*, grow light, dawn
dimēnsus, -a, -um, *p. p. of dimetior
dimētor, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [*dis-
metior*], *dep.*, *trans.*, measure out (esp. of a camp). — dimēnsus, -a, -um, measured
dimīcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [*dis-mico*, move to and fro], *intrans.*, fight; risk an engagement
dimidiōs, -a, -um [*dis-mediōs*], *adj.*, half. — Neut. as noun, a half
dimmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*dis-
mitto*], *trans.*, send away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss
direptus, -a, -um, *p. p. of diripio
dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus [*dis-
emo*, take], *trans.*, break up (a conference)
diripio — distō

diripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [dis-rapiō, seize], trans., plunder, pillage, ravage
dis-, di- (dir-, dif-), adv. in compounds, apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-
Dis, Ditis, m., Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: ab officio (fail in one's duty); spes hostibus (forsake, fail)
dissensus, -ūs, m., departure, withdrawal
discipulīna, -ae [disco], f., instruction, a system (of doctrine etc.), a course of instruction
discludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis-claudō], trans., keep apart, separate, divide
discō, discere, didici, no p. p., trans. and intrans., learn
discrimen, -inis, n., crisis, risk, peril, danger
discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio
discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [dis-quatio, shake], shake apart, drive away, clear away, remove
disiciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectus [dis-iacio], trans., disperse, ruin, destroy, tear off (yards). — disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder
disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio
dispālātus, -a, -um, adj., wandering, straggling
dispār, -paris, adj., unequal, ill-matched
dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus [dis-spargo, scatter], trans., scatter, disperse
dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispergo
dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., station (variously), array (at several posts)
dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispono
disputātiō, -onis [disputo], f., discussion, dispute
disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, investigate
dissēnsiō, -onis [dissentio], f., disagreement, dissension
dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, intrans., disagree (ab, with)
dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdī [dis-sedeo], intrans., sit apart; disagree, have a quarrel (with ab)
dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-simulo, make like], trans. and intrans., conceal, disguise; dissemble
dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., scatter, disperse: dissipati, straggling troops
dissuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus [dis-suadeo, advise], trans., advise to the contrary
distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [disteneo], trans., keep apart, cut off (in military sense), isolate
distō, -stāre [dis-sto], intrans., stand apart, be distant: quantum iunctura distabat, as far as the distance between etc.
distráho — domicilium

distráho, -trähere, -träxí, -träctus, trans., drag asunder, separate
distribuó, -ure, -uī, -útus, trans., assign, distribute, divide
distringó, -stringere, -strínxi, -stríctus [dis-stringo], trans., engage, occupy
distulí, see differo
ditissimus, -a, -um, superl. of dives
diū, adv., for some time, long: tam
diu, so long; quam diu, as long as; diutius, any longer, rather long, too long; diutíssími̇, for the longest time
diurnus, -a, -um [dies], adj., of the day, daily: nocturnis diurnísque itineríbus (by night and day)
diūtínus, -a, -um [diu], adj., long continued

diūtius, diūtiíssími̇, comp. and superl. of diu

diūturnítas, -ātis [diuturnus], f., length of time, long continuance
diūturnus, -a, -um, adj., long-continued, long (in time)
diversus, p. p. of diverto
divertó, -vertere, -vertí, -versus [divertó], intrans., separate. — diversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different
dives, -itis, adj., rich

Diviciācus, -ī, m.: 1. A pro-Roman leader of the Hæduí, brother of Dumnorix. — 2. A leader of the Suessiones

Divícō, -onis, m., a leader of the Helvetii

dividó, -videre, -visi, -visus, trans., divide, separate. — divísus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., divided: Gallia divisa est
dívínum, -a, -um, adj., of the gods, divine: res divínae, matters of religion, religion
divísus, -a, -um, p. p. of dividó
dó, dare, dēdī, datus, irr., trans., give, concede, assign, grant: eo mihi minus dubitatiȯs datur, I have the less hesitation; se vento (run before the wind); hostes in fugam (put to flight); negotium uti (employ one to etc., engage one to etc.); verba (deceive, outwit)
doceō, docēre, docúi̇, doctus, trans., teach, show, inform
docūtus, -a, -um [doceo], m., teacher
documentum, -í [doceo], n., warning, example
doleō, doläre, doluí, dolítīrus, intrans., feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve
dolor, -órīs [doleo], m., pain, distress, indignation: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant; magnō esse dolori, be a great annoyance or sorrow; almost concrete, grievance
dolus, -i, m., deceit, tricks, stratagem
domesticus, -a, -um [domus], adj., one’s own, at home, private, personal: bellum (internal)
domicilium, -ī [domus], n., house, dwelling place, home
dominor, -āri, -ātus [dominus], dep., intrans., rule, be master
dominus, -i, m., master, owner
domus, -i (-ūs), f., house, home: domī, at home; domum, home, to one's home
Donnōtaurus, -i, m., a Gallic name. —Esp., C. Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron
dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [donum, gift], trans., present, give: civitate aliquem donare, give a person the rights of citizenship
dōnum, -i, n., gift
dormiō, -ire, -ivi, intrans., sleep
dōs, dōtis [do], f., marriage gift, dowry
dracō, -onis, m., dragon, serpent
Druidēs, -um, m. plur., the Druids, the priests of the ancient Gallic religion
Dubis, -is, m., the Doubs, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing from the Jura Mountains
dubitātīō, -onis [dubito], f., doubt, hesitation: eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, I feel the less doubt or hesitation
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [dubius], trans., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate
dubium, -i, n., doubt: sine dubio, undoubtedly

dubiōs, -a, -um, adj., doubtful: est dubium, there is doubt
ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., two hundred
dūceō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, trans., lead, draw, bring, take, spin out; beguile along, keep waiting; consider. —With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man)
dum, conj., while, so long as; till, until
Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., an anti-Roman leader of the Hādui, brother of Diviciacus
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., plur., two
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., twelfth
duōdēvigintī [duo de viginti], indecl. num. adj., eighteen
duplex, -plicis, adj., twofold, double: acies (in two divisions)
duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplex], trans., double
dūritia, -ae [durus], f., hardness, hardship
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe, difficult: si quid erat durius (any severe contest)
Dūrus, -i, m., a Roman family name. —Esp., Q. Laberius Durus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain
dux, ducis [duco], c., leader, guide, commander

e, shortened form of ex, prep. with abl.
eā, adv., that way, in that direction
Eburōnēs — elephantus

Eburōnēs, -um, m. plur., a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine

Eburowičēs, -um, m. plur., in full Aulerci Eburowices, a Gallic tribe south of the Seine not far from the coast

ēdicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictus, trans., proclaim, announce, appoint

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p.p. [ex-discō], trans., learn by heart, commit to memory

ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. of edo

eūdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditus [ex-do (put)], trans., put forth, utter: exempla cruciatusque (make an example by inflicting severe torture).—

ēditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., elevated, raised, high

ēdōceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [ex-docē], trans., explain, inform, instruct

ēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [ex-duco], trans., lead out, draw (a sword)

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-femina], trans., enervate, weaken: animos (enfeeble)

efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus [ex-fero], irr., trans., carry out, bring out, carry away; spread abroad, make known; puff up, elate

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī [ex-fervesco], intrans., boil up, boil over

efficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [ex-facio], trans., make, enable, cause, produce: ut praebērent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posset (make possible); classem (get together, construct)

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [ex-fodio], trans., dig out, gouge out

effossus, -a, -um, p.p. of effodiō

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugio], trans., escape, fly from

egēns, -entis, see egeo

egeō, egēre, egūi, no p.p., intrans., need, be in want of, lack.— egēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute

egeistās, -ātis [egens], f., poverty, destitution

ego, mei, pron., 1st person, I, me.

— Plur., nōs, we, us

ēgredivor, -gredivi, -gressus [ex-gradior, step], dep., intrans., go out, come forth, march out, move beyond:

nave, e navi (land, disembark);
in terram egredior, go ashore

ēgregiē [egregius], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well

ēgregius, -a, -um [ex-grex, herd], adj., remarkable, eminent, notable, superior, excellent

ēgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of egrediō

ēciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ex-iacio], trans., cast out, drive out. — With reflex., rush out, rush

eiusmodī, as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of effero

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of eligō

elephantus, -i, m., elephant
eligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [ex-lego, choose], trans., pick out, select.—
elēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., picked (troops)
Ellusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [ex-migro, depart], intrans., remove (per-
manently), emigrate
ēminus [ex-manus], adv., at a dis-
tance, at long range
ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ex-
mitto], trans., let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl.—Pass., or with reflex., rush out
emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, trans.,
buy, purchase
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ex-nascor],
dep., intrans., spring out, grow out
ēnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of enascor
enim, conj., for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for that matter even . . . not (but neque enim . . . neque is simply for neither . . . nor)
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-numero],
trans., count out, enumerate, relate
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-nuntiō],
trans., report, disclose, reveal
eō, ire, ī, itūrus, irr., intrans., go, pass, march, advance, proceed
eō, n. abl., see is
eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there, to that place
eōdem, adv., to the same place, in
the same place
ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles)
ephippium, -ī, n., horsecloth (with cushions), saddle (less complete
than ours)
epistula, -ae, f., letter
Eporedorix, -īgis, m.: 1. A noble-
man of the Hædui (vii, chap. 63).
— 2. Perhaps a different Hæduan chief (vii, chap. 67)
eques, -itis [equus], m., horseman, rider.—Plur., cavalry.—Esp. (as originally serving on horseback),
a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, who were next in rank to the senate). So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class)
equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., of
knights, of cavalry
equitātus, -ūs [eques], m., cavalry
equus, -ī, m., horse .
ērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of erigo
ēreptus, -a, -um, p.p. of eripio
ergā, prep. with acc., toward
Ēridanus, -ī, m., a river
ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ex-rego],
trans., set up straight, raise up, arouse, encourage.—ērēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, upright
ēripō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ex-
rapio, seize], trans., snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one’s self from
doing a thing
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., wan-
der, stray; be mistaken
error, -ōris [erro], error, mistake, delusion
ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [ex-ruptō], trans. and intrans., cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally
ēruptīō, -ōnis [erumpō], f., a breaking out, sortie, rush
essedārius, -ī [essedum], m., chariot fighter
esselum, -ī, n., chariot (of Gaulish pattern; used in war especially by the Britons)
Esuvīī, -orum, m. plur., a tribe in northwestern Gaul
et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and
etiam, adv., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more
etiamtum [etiam-tum], adv., even then
Etrūria, -ae, f., a country of western Italy
etsī, conj., even if, although, though
Eumenēs, -is, m., king of Pergamum (in Asia Minor), 197–159 B.C.
ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], intrans., go forth, escape
ēvello, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [ex-vello, pluck], trans., pull out, pluck out
ēvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ex-venīō], intrans., come out, turn out, happen
ēventus, -ūs [evenīō], m., result, issue, fate, success
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-voco], trans., call out, call forth, summon.-ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and noun, reënlisted veteran
ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ex-volo, fly], intrans., fly out, rush out
ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, from; in consequence of, according to: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march (starting from it); ex vinculis, in chains (doing something from them); so, ex equis, on horseback.—In composition, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-
exāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exigo
exagītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-agito, freg. of ago, drive], trans., harass, persecute
exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [examen, tongue of a balance], trans., weigh
exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-animus], trans., deprive of breath, kill.—exanimātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted
exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsus, intrans., be inflamed, be provoked, rage
exaudīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, trans., hear distinctly
excedō, -cédere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., go out, withdraw, retire
excellō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, trans. and intrans., surpass, excel
excīdō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ex-caedo], trans., cut out, cut off, break down (gates)
excio — expio

exciō, -cīre, -civī, -citus, trans., call out, summon

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex-capio], trans., take up, receive; follow, come after; vada (meet, be exposed to, of ships)

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., rouse, stimulate; raise (towers), kindle (fire)

excludo, -cludere, -clusi, -clusus [ex-claudo], trans., shut out, cut off

excīgo, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ex-ago], trans., pass, finish: aestas exacta erat (was ended)

exiguē [exiguus], adv., scantily, meagerly, barely

exiguītās, -ātis [exiguus], f., scantiness, meanness

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, scanty, small, meager

eximius, -a, -um [ex-emo, take], adj., exceptional, remarkable; very high (opinio)

existimātiō, -ōnis [existimo], f., estimate, opinion

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimo], trans. and intrans., estimate, believe, think, suppose, judge, deem, imagine

exitus, -ūs [cf. exeo], m., outlet, exit; end, last part; result, turn (of fortune), outcome

expedio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [ex-pes], trans., set free, free, extricate; arrange, station (of troops). — expeditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order

expeditiō, -ōnis [expedio], f., expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached)

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive out; dispel

expeīriō, -perīrī, -pertus, dep., trans., experience, try: fortunam (risk, try)

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., expiate: incommodum (wipe out, make good, retrieve)
expleō — faber

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, trans., fill out, fill up, complete
explicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī (-plicuī), -plicātus (-plicitus), trans., explain, describe, state
explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., investigate, search, examine.—explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory; habere omnia explorata, know certainly
expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, trans., place out, set forth: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array)
exporto, -āre, -avi, -atus, trans., carry out, carry away
exposco, -poscere, -poscī, no p. p., trans., demand
exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus
[ex-pressō], trans., force out; raise up
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., take (by storm), capture
expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello
exquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus
[ex-quaero], trans., search out, ask for
exquisītus, -a, -um, p. p. of exquiro
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow out, follow up: ius (enforce, execute)
exsilīō, -silire, -silui [ex-salio], intrans., leap out
exsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītūrus, intrans., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue)
exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., look out for, wait to see, expect, anticipate; wait
exstinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstinguo
exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctus, trans., extinguis, destroy
exstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, intrans., stand out
exstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstruo
exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, trans., heap up, build up
exsul, -ulis, m., exile
exter, -era, -erum, adj., outer, outside.—extremus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; ad extremum, till the last, at last
extimesco, -timescere, -timui, no p. p., trans. and intrans., fear greatly, dread
extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., outside, out of
extrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of extraho
extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, trans., drag out, draw out
extrāmus, see exter
extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, trans., shut out (by dikes)
exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, trans., strip off: armis exutis, deprived of arms
exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, trans., burn up
faber, -brī [facio] (m. of faber, skillful), mechanic, engineer (in an army)
Fabius — felicitas

Fabius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.
— Esp.: 1. Q. Fabius Maximus, consul and dictator in the Second Punic War.— 2. Q. Fabius Labeo, consul in 183 B.C.— 3. Q. Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. on the Rhone.— 4. C. Fabius, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.— 5. L. Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e [facio], adj., easy, convenient.— facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently

facinus, -oris [facio], n., deed; misdeed, crime

facii, facere, feci, factus, trans. and intrans., make, do, act.— Used in a great variety of senses as in English: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed).— So in pass., happen, result, occur: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that. — factum, -i, n. of p.p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, act, thing done, etc.— fiō, fieri, as pass. in all senses

factiō, -onis [facio], f., party, faction

factum, -i, see facio

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -ī, f., beech (tree or wood)

Falernus, -a, -um, adj., Falernian (of the Falernus ager in Campania)

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus, trans. and intrans., deceive: spes aliquid (disappoint).— falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived; false, unfounded

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning hook.
— Also, hook (of similar form for demolishing walls)

fāma, -ae, f., speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

famēs, -is (abl. famē, fifth decl.), f., hunger, starvation: famem tolerate, keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, f., collection of attendants, household; kin, kin and their dependents

familiāris, -e [família], adj., of the household: res (estate, property).
— Esp. as noun, friend

fās, n., indecl., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed)

fastigātē, adv., sloping

fastigium, -i [fastigo], n., elevation, slope, descent

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring to a point.— Esp., fastigātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., inclined, sloping

fātum, -i [for, speak], n., fate, lot, destiny

faucēs, -ium, f. plur., throat, jaws

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, intrans., favor, be favorable to

fāx, facis, f., torch, firebrand, fire

fēellisse, see fallo

felicitās, -ātis [felix, lucky], f., good fortune, good luck
feliciter — Flamininus

feliciter [fēlīx, lucky], adv., luckily, successfully
fēmina, -ae, f., woman
femur, -inis or -oris, n., thigh
ferax, -ācis [fērō], adj., fertile
ferē, adv., almost, about; usually, for the most part.—With negatives, hardly
ferō, ferre, tuli, latus, irr., trans. and intrans., bear, carry, endure, tolerate: magno dolore ferre, be much pained, take it very hard; moleste (graviter) ferre, be annoyed at, take amiss, be indignant at.—Also, assert, declare, say
ferramentum, -ī [ferrum], n., tool (of iron), implement
ferrāria, -ae [ferrum], f., iron mine
ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron)
ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel, sword
fertilis, -e [fērō], adj., fertile, fruitful
fertilitās, -ātis [fertilis], f., fertility, productiveness
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, ferocious
fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [ferveo-facio], trans., heat, heat red-hot
ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, no p.p., intrans., glow, be hot, be red-hot
fibula, -ae [figō, fasten], f., clasp, buckle
fictilis, -e [fingo], adj., made of clay, earthen
fictus, -a, -um, p.p. of fingo
fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., faithful
fidēs, -ei, f., promise, pledge: fidem
facere, give assurance.—Also, good faith, fidelity, pledge, promise; belief; Caesāris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one's self to); in fidem se permettere (venire), place themselves under the protection of etc.
fidūcia, -ae [fidus, trusty], f., confidence, reliance
figūra, -ae, f., shape, form
filia, -ae, f., daughter
filius, -ī, m., son
fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus, trans., mold; invent, contrive.—fictus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.; n. plur. as noun, fictions
finīō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus [finis], trans., set bounds to, limit, measure
finis, -is, m., limit, end: quem ad finem, as far as.—Plur., territories, country
finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., neighboring, adjacent.—Mas. plur. as noun, neighbors
fiō, pass. of facio
firmiter [firmus], adv., steadily, firmly
firmītūdō, -inis [firmus], f., solidity, strength (of resistance)
firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm, steady
fistūca, -ae, f., pile driver
Flaccus, -ī, m., a Roman family name
flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., demand earnestly
Flamininus, -ī, m., T. Quinctius Flamininus, Roman envoy sent
Flaminius — frumentarius

to demand the surrender of Hannibal
Flaminius, -i, m., C. Flaminius
Nepos, consul, commander in the battle of Lake Trasimenus
flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, trans., bend, turn
fleō, flère, flēvī, flētus, trans. and intrans., weep; weep for
fleütus, -ūs [fleō], m., weeping, lamentation
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, intrans., blow
flōrēns, -entis [pres. p. of florō, bloom], adj., blooming.— Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential
fluctus, -ūs [fluo], m., wave
flūmen, -inis [fluo], n., river
fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus, intrans., flow
foederātus, -a, -um [foedus], adj., allied, federated
foedus, -eris, n., treaty, league, compact
fōns, fontis, m., fountain, spring
fore, for futūrum esse; see sum
forem, for essem; see sum
foris, -is, f., door
fōrma, -ae, f., shape, form, appearance; beauty
fors, fortis, f., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, as it happened
forte, see fors
fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous
fortīter [fortis], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly
fortūtūdō, -inis [fortis], f., bravery, prowess
fortuitō, adv., by chance, accidentally
fortūna, -ae, f., luck, fortune, chance, fate, lot (one's fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad); plur., fortunes, property
forum, -i, n., market place
fossa, -ae [fodio, dig], f., ditch, trench
fovea, -ae, f., pitfall
frāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of frango
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, trans., break, wreck; break down, crush
frāter, -tris, m., brother
frāternus, -a, -um [frater], adj., of a brother, fraternal
fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, fraud
Fregellae, -ārum, f., a town of Latium
fremitus, -ūs [fremo, roar], m., murmuring, confused noise, roar
freqüēns, -entis, adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on
frigidus, -a, -um [frigéo, be cold], adj., cold
frīgus, -oris [frigéo, be cold], n., cold.— Plur., cold seasons
frōns, frontis, f., front, brow: a fronte, in front
frūctuosus, -a, -um [fructus], adj., fruitful
fructus, -ūs, m. [fruor], crops, income, profit, returns
frumentarius, -a, -um [frumentum], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions)
frumentatio — Gallus

frumentatio, -onis [frumentor], f., foraging expedition
frumentor, -āri, -ātus [frumentum], dep., intrans., forage, gather grain
frumentum, -i [fruor], n., grain. — Plur., crops
fruor, fruī, frūctus, dep., intrans., enjoy (abl.)
frūstrā, adv., to no purpose, without effect, in vain
frūstror, -āri, -ātus [frūstrā], dep., trans., disappoint, deceive
frūx, frūgis, f. [cf. fruor], fruit. — Plur., crops
Fufius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. See Cita
fuga, -ae, f., flight: se fugae mandare, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight
fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitūrus [fuga], trans. and intrans., flee, fly from, run away. — Fig., shun, avoid. — fugiens, pres. p. as noun, fugitive fugītivus, -a, -um [fugio], adj., runaway. — As noun, runaway slave
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fuga], trans., put to flight, rout
fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., smoke
fūmus, -i, m., smoke
funda, -ae, f., sling
fundamentum, -i, n., foundation
funditor, -ōris [funda], m., slinger
fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, trans., pour; scatter; rout
fünembris, -e [funus], adj., of a funeral. — Neut. plur. as noun, funeral rites
fungor, fungī, fūctus, dep., intrans., perform, discharge (abl.)
fūnis, -is, m., rope
fūnus, -ēris, n., death, funeral
Furius, -i, m., L. Furius, consul in 196 B.C.
furor, -ōris, m., madness, frenzy, fury
fūrūm, -i [fur, thief], n., theft, a theft
fūsilis, -e [fundo], molten, liquid, soft.
fūsus, p.p. of fundo
futūrus, see sum

Gabali, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people, dependents of the Arverni
Gabinius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
gaesum, -i, n., javelin
Gāius, -i, m., Caius, a Roman prænomen
Galba, -ae, m., a Gallic and Roman family name. — Esp., P. Sulpicius Galba, consul in 200 B.C.
galea, -ae, f., helmet (usually of leather)

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Rubicon, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Gals, Gallic
gallina, -ae, f., hen
Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic. — As noun, a Gaul, the Gals. — Also, a Roman family name
Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne
Garumnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees
Gatēs, -ium, m. plur., a Gallic people of Aquitania
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, semi-dep., intrans., be delighted, rejoice
gaudium, -i [gaudeo], n., joy
gāvīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of gaudeo
Geminus, -i, m., C. Servilius Geminus, consul in 217 B.C.; killed in the battle of Canna, 216 B.C.
Genāva, -ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva
generātim [genus], adv., by tribes
gēns, gentis, f., tribe, clan, people
genus, -eris, n., race, family (stock); kind, sort, class.—Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae)
Gergovia, -ae, f., a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul
Germania, -ae, f., Germany, bounded by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea
Germanicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Germans, German
Germanus, -a, -um, adj., German.—As noun, a German
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, trans., carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business).—Pass., be done, go on (of operations): res gestae, exploits, operations, campaign; gesta, events
gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero
gignō, gignere, genui, genus [gens], trans., bring forth, produce.—In pass., spring up, arise
gladius, -i, m., sword
glāns, glandis, f., nut, acorn.—Also, ball, missile
Glauce, -ēs (acc., -ēn), f., daughter of Creon king of Corinth
glēba, -ae, f., clod, lump
glōria, -ae, f., fame, glory
glōrior, -āri, -ātus [gloria], dep., intrans., glory in, boast of (abl.)
Gnaeus, -i, m., a Roman praenomen
Gobannitiō, -onis, m., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix
Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city in the territory of the Haudui
Gortynii, -ōrum, m., Gortynians (of Gortyna, a city in Crete)
Gracchus, -i, m., Ti. Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 and 213 B.C.
Græcia, -ae, f., Greece
Græcus, -a, -um, adj., of the Greeks, Greek.—As noun, a Greek
Grāiocielī, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of the Alps
Grāius, -a, -um, adj., Graian (referring to a section of the Alps).—Adj. or noun, Grecian
grandis, -e, adj., large, of great size
grātīa, -ae, f., gratitude, good will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship.—Esp.: gratias agere, thank; gratias habere, be grateful; gratias (gratiam) referre, pay off an obligation; gratiam inire, secure
gratulatio — herba

declare the gratitude of any one. — *With gen.*, for the sake of, on account of
gratulatio, -ōnis, f., congratulation, rejoicing
gratulor, -āri, -ātus [gratus], dep., intrans., congratulate
gratus, -a, -um, adj., agreeable, pleasing, grateful
gravis, -e, adj., heavy. — *Fig.*, serious, severe, hard: gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid acciderit, if anything serious should occur; ne quid gravius statueret, that he would not pass any very severe judgment
gravitas, -ātis [gravis], f., weight. — *Fig.*, importance, power
graviter [gravis], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — *Fig.*, severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart
gravē, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gravis], trans., make heavy. — *Pass. as dep.*, be unwilling, object
gubernātor, -ōris [guberno, steer], m., pilot, helmsman
gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., taste, eat

habēō, habēre, habūi, habitus, trans. and intrans., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: castra (occupy); orationem (deliver); se habere, be; rationem habere, have regard for. — *With p.p.*, have, hold, keep: redempta habere, buy up and hold. — *Also*, consider

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., dwell, live
hāc, adv., by this route, this way, here
Hadrūmētum, -ī, n., a town on the coast of Africa
Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Hāedui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — *Masc. as noun*, a Hāeduan, the Hāeudi
haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [freq. of haereo, stick], intrans., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh)
Hamilcar, -aris, m., father of Hannibal
Hannibal, -alis, m., the great Carthaginian, one of the greatest of generals
Harpīiae, -ārum, f. plur., Harpies (loathsome creatures, half women, half birds)
Harūdēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland
haud, adv., not at all, not
Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius)

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Helvetii
Helvii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province
herba, -ae, f., plant
Hercules, -is, m., mythical Greek hero, son of Jupiter
Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)
héréditás, -ätis [heres, heir], f., inheritance
Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland
hibernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.).—Neut. plur. (sc. castra), winter quarters
hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj. and pron., this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing).—Referring to things mentioned before (but with more emphasis than is): hic pagus unus, this one canton.
—hóc, n. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much.—Often hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off)
hic, adv., here, in this place, there (of a place just mentioned)
hiemō, -äre, -ävi, -ätūrus [hiems], intrans., pass the winter
hiems, -emis, f., winter
hinc, adv., from here, hence
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain
Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., Spanish
hodiē [hoc die], adv., to-day, now
homō, -inis, c., human being, man (including woman)
honestus, -a, -um [honori], adj., respected, honorable
honor (honōs), -ōris, m., honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect.—Also, honorable position
honōrificus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj., honorable
hōra, -ae, f., hour (of the day).—The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day
horreō, horrēre, horrui, no p.p., trans. and intrans., bristle; shudder at, dread
horribilis, -e [horreo], adj., terrible, dreadful
horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, urge on, address
hospes, -itis, m., host.—Also, guest, stranger. Hence, guest-friend
hospitium, -i [hospes], n., the relation of host (or of guest or of guest-friend). Hence, friendship, hospitality
hostia, -ae, f., animal for sacrifice, victim
hostis, -is, c., stranger, enemy (of the state)
húc, adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place etc.; cf. eo, adv.): huc accedebant, to these were added
huiusmodi, see hic and modus
hūmanitās, -ätis, f., civilization, cultivation, refinement
hūmanus, -a, -um [homo], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**humilis** — imitor

**humilis, -e [humus, ground], adj.,**
low, shallow.—**Fig.**, humble, poor **humilitas, -atis [humilis], f., lowness, shallowness.** — **Fig.**, humble position, insignificance

**Hylas, -ae, m.,** one of the Argonauts

**I, Roman numeral for one**

**iaceo, -ère, -uí, -itūrus, intrans., lie, lie dead.** — **iacentes, pres. p. as noun,** the slain **iacē, iace, iēcī, iactus, trans.,**
throw, hurl, cast: **aggerem** (throw up)

**iactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of iacio],**
trans., toss, bandy about (of talk), discuss, boast 

**iactūra, -ae [iacio], f.,** loss, sacrifice (of men in war)

**iactus, -a, -um, p.p. of iacio**

**iaculum, -i [iacio], n.,** javelin

**iam, adv., now, by this time, at last, already, at length**

**ianua, -ae, f., door**

**Iásōn, -onis, m.,** leader of the Argonauts

**ibi, adv., there**

**Iccius, -ī, m.,** a nobleman of the Remi

**ictus, -ūs [ico, strike], m.,** stroke

**Īd., abbr. for Īdus**

**idem, eadem, idem [is-dem], dem.**
adj. and pron., the same; the same thing (things), the same

**identidem, adv.,** repeatedly, again and again

**idōneus, -a, -um, adj.,** fit, suitable, adapted

**Īdūs, -uum, f. plur.,** the Ides (a day of the month falling originally at the full moon; in Cæsar's time, on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months)

**igitur, adv., therefore, then**

**ignis, -is, m., fire.** — **Plur.,** camp fires

**ignōminia, -ae [in-, not, (g)nomen, name], f.,** disgrace

**ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ignarus, ignorant], trans.,** not know, be ignorant of. — **Pass.,** be unobserved

**ignōscō, -noscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in-, not, (g)nosco, know], intrans.,** overlook, pardon

**ignōtus, -a, -um [in-, not, (g)notus, known], adj.,** unknown, strange

**ille, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron.,** that (of something remote; **cf. hic); as pronoun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: **hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other; the latter . . . the former**

**illic, adv., there (more remote; opposed to hic, near by), in that place**

**illo, adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way**

**İllīricum, -i, n.,** Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace)

**imber, imbris, m.,** rain storm, rain

**imator, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.,** imitate, copy
immanis — impulsus

immānis, -e, adj., monstrous, huge, enormous
immittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against, let loose
immolō, -are, -avi, -ātus [in-mola, meal], trans., sacrifice
immortalis, -e, adj., immortal
immunitās, -ātis [immunis, free], f., freedom (from public burdens)
impedimentum, -ī [impedio], n., hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp. in plur., baggage, baggage train (including the beasts of burden)
impediō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus [in-pes], trans., entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede
impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, trans., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel
impendeō, -ere, intrans., overhang
impēnus, -a, -um, adj., expensive, very high (of price)
imperātor, -ōris [impero], m., commander (in chief), general
imperātum, -ī [n. p.p. of impero], n., an order, a command
imperītus, -a, -um [in-peritus], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in
imperium, -ī [impero], n., command, control, supremacy, power (military), rule (both sing. and plur.); order, command
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., demand; order (in military sense), rule, command
impetro, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request)
impetus, -ūs, m., rush, attack, violence, fury: impetum facere, charge
impius,-a,-um, adj., impious (offending divine law)
implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., implore, beseech
impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., place on, mount (men on horses), put (on board)
importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., import
impositus, -a, -um, p.p. of impono
impraesentiārum [inpraesentia rerum], adv., for the present
imprimis or in primis, adv., among the first, especially, particularly
improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad, wicked
imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly
implūdens, -entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, off one's guard
implūdenter [implūdens], adv., unwisely, imprudently
implūdentia, -ae [implūdens], f., ignorance, want of forethought
impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., attack, invade, charge
impulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of impello
impune — incredibilis

impune [impunis, unpunished], adv., with impunity

impunitas, -atis [impunis, unpunished], f., freedom from punishment, impunity

imus, see inferus

in-, prefix, with the force of a negative; cf. English un-

in, prep. (a) With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on, into, on, within, to, against, among. — Of time, for, to, till. — Often where English has a different conception, in, on: abdere in silvas, hide in the woods; in eos exempla edere (visit on). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: in eam sententiam, to this purport. — EsP.: in Caesar- rem incidit, happened to meet Caesar; in fugam conicere, put to flight

(b) With abl., of rest, in, on, among, within. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — EsP.: in ancoris, at anchor; in primis, among the first, especially

(c) In composition, as adv., in, on, toward, against

inanis, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle

incautē, adv., incautiously, carelessly

incendium, -i [incendo], n., a burning, fire

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnus, trans., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite

incēnus, -a, -um, p.p. of incendo

inceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of incipio

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy

incidō, -cidere, -cidē, -cāsūrus [incado], intrans., fall upon, fall into; fall in with, meet, occur, happen

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [incapio], trans. and intrans., begin, undertake

incipus, -a, -um, p.p. of incidō

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — incitātus, -a, -um, p.p., angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — EsP., se aestus incitare (rush in)

includō, -ere, -clusī, -clusus [inclaudo], trans., shut in, imprison

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown: res (that I know nothing about)

incola, -ae, c., inhabitant

incolō, -colere, -colui, no p.p., trans. and intrans., inhabit, live, dwell

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, unhurt, safe

incommode, adv., inconveniently, unfortunately

incommodus, -a, -um, adj., inconvenient, unfortunate. — incommo-
dum, -i, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss

incrēdibilis, -e [in-, not, credo], adj., marvelous, extraordinary, incred-
ible
increpito — inferus

increpito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., upbraid, taunt, revile

incursiō, -onis [incurro, run at], f., attack, invasion

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., upbraid, rebuke, chide

inde, adv., from there, thence, from the place (which etc.); then

indiciōm, -ī, n., information; indication, sign: per indicium, through an informer

indīcō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dictus, trans., order, proclaim, appoint

indīgeō, -ère, -uī, intrans., need, want, be dependent on

indignitas, -ātis [indignus], f., unworthiness, disgrace, outrage

indignor, -āri, -ātus [indignus], dep., intrans., be indifferent

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy

indīligēns, -entis, adj., negligent, careless, heedless

indīligenter [indīligens], adv., carelessly, negligently

indīligentia, -ae [indīligens], f., carelessness

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., draw on. Hence, cover: scuta pellibus. — Also, lead on. Hence, induce, impel

indulgentia, -ae [indulgeo], f., indulgence, favor, clemency

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsi, no p.p., intrans., favor, treat with indulgence

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, trans., put on

indūtiae, -ārum, f. plur., truce

Indūtiomārus, -ī, m., a chief of the Treveri

ineō, -ire, -iī, -itus, irr., trans.; enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — Esp.: inita aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, make a calculation, adopt a scheme; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate

inermis, -e [in-., not, arma], adj., unarmed, defenseless

iners, -eritus [in-., not, ars], adj., cowardly, sluggish, unmanly

infāmia, -ae [infamis, infamous], f., dishonor, disgrace

infandus, -a, -um [in-for, speak], adj., unspeakable, awful

infāns, -antis [in-., not, fans, pres. p. of for, speak], c., child, infant

infestus, -a, -um [in-., not, factus], adj., not done. — Esp., re infecta, without success

infelīx, -icis, adj., unfortunate, unhappy

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., bring in, import, put on: bellum (make); signa (advance, make a charge); terrorem (inspire). — Fig., cause, inflict, commit

inferus, -a, -um, adj., low: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river. — infimus (imus), -a, -um, superl., lowest, the bottom of: infimus collis, the foot of the hill

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [in-facio], trans., stain, infect
infimus — inrumpē

infimus, see inferus
infinitus, -a, -um, adj., unbounded, countless, endless
infirmitās, -ātis [infirmus], f., feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness
infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, feeble: naves (unseaworthy)
infiter, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., deny
inflexās, -ātis, -flexi, -flexus, trans., bend down.—Pass. or with reflex., become bent
inflexus, -a, -um, p.p. of inflecto
inflō, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxūris, in-trans., flow into, empty into
infrā, adv., and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than
infundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus, trans., pour in
ingēns, -entis, adj., huge, enormous
ingrediōr, -gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., march into, enter, march in
inciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [in-iacio], trans., throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire
iniecctus, -a, -um, p.p. of incio
inimicītia, -ae [inimicus], f., enmity, hostility
inimicus, -a, -um [in-, not, amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile.—Masc. as noun, enemy (personal, or not in war)
iniquitās, -ātis [iniquus], f., inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness
iniquus, -a, -um [in-, not, aequus], adj., uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair.—Comp., inquieror
locus, less favorable position

initium, -i [ineo], n., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, begin, start; initium facere transeundi, start to cross, begin crossing
initus, p.p. of ineo
iniūria, -ae [in-, not, ius], f., injustice, outrage, wrong
iniussū, adv., without orders
inlātus, p.p. of infero
inligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., bind on, attach, fasten to
inlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsi, -lūsus, trans., make sport of, deceive
inlūstriis, -e, adj., distinguished, famous: inlustriore loco natus, of distinguished ancestry
innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, dep., in-trans., be inspired, be excited
innitor, -nītī, -nīxus or -nīsus, dep., intrans., lean upon.—innixus, -a, -um, p.p., leaning on
innocēns, -entis [in-, not, nocens], pres. p. of noceo], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent
innocentia, -ae [innocens], f., blamelessness
inopia, -ae [inops, needy], f., scarcity, privation, want of supplies
inopīnāns, -antis, adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting
inquam, inquis, inquit, etc., defective, intrans., say
inrīdeō, -ridere, -risī, -risus, trans. and intrans., ridicule, laugh at
inridiculē, adv., without humor
inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, trans. and intrans., break in, break into, storm
inruptio — integō

inruptio, -onis [inrumpo], f., attack, raid, incursion

insciēns, -entis, adj., not knowing, unaware

inscientia, -ae [insciens], f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with

inscius, -a, -um, adj., not knowing, unaware

İnsecūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of inse- quor

İnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow up, pursue

İnserō, -serere, -serui, -sertus, trans., insert, stick in

İnsidiae, -ārum [insideo, sit in]. f. plur., ambush, treachery, plot: per insidias, with deception, treacherously

İnsidior, -ārī, -ātus [insidiae], dep., intrans., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against

İnsignis, -e [in-signum], adj., marked, memorable. — insigne, -is, n. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers)

İnsiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultus [in-salio, leap], trans., leap on

İnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., charge, accuse

İnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-sinus, bosom], trans. and intrans., slip in. — With reflex., slip in

İnsistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p.p., trans. and intrans., stand on, stand, keep one's footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae)

İnsolenter, adv., insultingly, insolently, arrogantly

İnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes

İnstabīlis, -e, adj., unsteady

İnstar, n., indecl., in the likeness of (with gen.)

İnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [in-statuum], trans., set up, set in order: opus (finish). — Also, provide, procure, get ready. — Also, set about, undertake, adopt (a plan etc.), begin, set on foot. — So, teach, train, habituate

İnstitūtum, -i [n. p.p. of instituo], n., habit, practice, custom

İnsto, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, intrans., be at hand, press on; threaten, impend, menace

İnstrūctus, -a, -um, p.p. of instruo

İnstrumėntum, -i [instruo], n., furniture, equipment, tools and stores

İnstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus, trans., build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange, draw up (of troops)

İnsuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., trained

İnsuētus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed, unused

İnsula, -ae, f., island

İnsuper, adv., on the top, from above

İnteger, -gra, -grum [in-, not, tango, touch], adj., untouched, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integrā, before anything was done

İntegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, trans., cover over (turre coriis)
interlegō — interpōnō

interlegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [interlegen, gather], trans., learn, know, find out, discover, understand

intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, trans., stretch, strain.—Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this business

inter, prep. with acc., between, among: inter aciem, in the line. — Of time, within, for.—Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with (to, from, etc.) each other or one another; cohortari inter se, encouraging each other or one another; similarly, obside inter eos dandos curavit, arranged for their exchanging hostages

intercedō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., come between, go between, lie between, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Hædui

interceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of intercipio

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [intercapio], trans., intercept, cut off

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [intercludo], trans., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off)

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, trans., forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdicere, exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, adv., in the daytime

interdum, adv., for a time, sometimes

interēa, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime

interēō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, irr., intrans., perish, die, be killed

interficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [interficcio], trans., kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [interiectio], trans., throw in (between).

— Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto (intervening; i.e. at a . . . distance, after an . . . interval)

interim, adv., meanwhile

interior, -ius, adj., inner, interior, more intimate.—Masc. plur. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town

interitus, -ūs [interreo], m., destruction, death

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, trans. and intrans., leave off, discontinue, stop: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; noxte intermissa, a night intervening

internecīō, -onis [cf. neco], f., extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -ponere, -posuī, -positus, trans., put in between, interpose, allege: nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder
Latin-English Vocabulary

**interpres — ipse**

interpres, -pretis, c., mediator, interpreter

interpretor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., interpret, explain

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., question, ask

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans., break down (of bridges), destroy

interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, trans., tear down

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be between, be in, be engaged in: non amplius interest, there is an interval of not more than etc.—Esp., impers., it is of importance, it concerns

intervallum, -ī, n., distance apart, interval

interveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans., come up, arrive

interventus, -ūs [intervenio], m., intervention, help

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, trans., weave in, weave together

intra, prep. with acc., into, within, inside

intritus, -a, -um, adj., unwearied

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., enter, go in

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., lead in, bring in, march in (troops)

introeo, -īre, -īi, -itus [intro, within, eo, go], trans. and intrans., come in, enter

introitus, -ūs [introeo], m., entrance, approach

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misī, -misus, trans., send in

intrōrsus [intro, within, versus, p.p. of verto], adv., inside, within

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus, dep., trans., look at

intuli, see infero

inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed

inūtilis, -e, adj., of no use, unserviceable

inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, trans., find, learn

inventor, -ōris, m., discoverer

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., become established, become fixed.—Perf., be an old campaigner (in)

invictus, -a, -um, adj., unconquerable, invincible

invideō, -videre, -vīdī, -visus, intrans., envy

invidia, -ae, f., hatred, envy, unpopularity

inviolātus, -a, -um, adj., inviolate; sacred

invisus, -a, -um, p.p. of invideo

invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., invite, request, attract

invitūs, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.—Often rendered as adv., against one's will

ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., himself etc. (as opp. to some one else; cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he etc. (emph.), he himself etc.: ipsi inter se (reciprocal), each other
**Latin-English Vocabulary**

**Ira — iūstus**

**Ira, -ae, f., anger**

**Irācundus, -a, -um [ira], adj.,** of a violent temper.

**Is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron., this (less emph. than hic),** that (unemphatic), he, she, it: quae pars ea etc., the part which etc.— eo, n. abl., so much; eo magis, all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely

**Iste, ista, istud, dem. adj. and pron.,** that of yours, that

**Ita, adv., so, in this way, thus, as follows:** ut...ita, as...so, though...yet, both...and; ita...ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very

**Italia, -ae, f., Italy (in Cæsar's time not including the great plain at the north of the peninsula)**

**Itaque, adv., and so, accordingly, therefore**

**Item, adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way**

**Iter, itineris [eo, go], n., road, march, journey:** in itinere, on the road; iter facere, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches

**Iterum, adv., a second time, again:** semel atque iterum, again and again

**Iuba, -ae, f., mane**

**Iubēō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, trans., order, command, bid**

**Iūdicium, -ī [iudex, judge], n., judgment (judical), trial, opinion; iūdicio, by design; often translated by court**

**Iūdicō, -āre,-āvī, -ātus [iudex, judge], trans., decide, judge, think, consider; declare, proclaim:** nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about etc.)

**Iugum, -ī [iungō], n., yoke:** sub iugum mittere was an insult inflicted on a conquered army.— Also, ridge

**Iūmentum, -ī [iugum], n., beast of burden**

**Iūncūra, -ae [iungō], f., a joining, joint:** quantum iunctura distabat, as far as the distance apart (of two things joined)

**Iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctus, trans., join, unite, attach together**

**Iūnior, comp. of iuvenis**

**Iūnius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name**

**Iuppiter, Iovis, m., the god of light and the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans**

**Iūra, -ae, m., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine**

**Iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., swear, take an oath**

**Iūs, iūris, n., justice, right, law:** iūs iūrandum, oath

**Iussū, abl. used as adv., by order, by command**

**Iūstitia, -ae [iustus], f., justice**

**Iūstus, -a, -um, adj., just, lawful. — Also, complete, perfect, regular:** populi Romani iustissimum est imperium, the Romans are best entitled to dominion
iuvencus, -i [juvenis], m., young bull

juvenis, -e, adj., young. — As noun, a young man (not over forty-five), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers

iuentus, -utis [juvenis], f., the youth, the young men

iuvo, iuvae, iuvi, iutus, trans., help, aid, assist

iuxta, adv., and prep. with acc., next, near, close by

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae and its cases

Kalendae, -arum, f. plur., the Cal- ends (the first day of the Roman month)

Karthaginiensis, -e [Karthago], adj., Carthaginian. — Masc. as noun, Carthaginian

Karthagō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city of Phœnician colonists on the northern coast of Africa

L, Roman numeral for fifty

L., abbr. for Lucius

Labeo, -onis, see Fabius

Laberius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Labienus, -i, m., a Roman family name. — Esp., T. Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Caesar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey

labor, -oris, m., toil, exertion; trouble, hardship

labōrō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], in-trans., toil, exert one’s self; be hard pressed, labor

labrum, -i, n., lip; edge, rim

lac, lactis, n., milk

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., Lacedaemonian. — Masc. as noun, Lacedaemonian

lacessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitus, trans., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, f., tear

lacus, -ūs, m., reservoir, lake

laedo, laedere, laesi, laesus, trans., wound. — Fig., break (fidem)

laetitia, -ae [laetus], f., joy, gladness

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad

languidē, adv., feebly

languidus, -a, -um, adj., spiritless:

languidior, with less spirit

languor, -oris, m., weariness

lapis, -idis, m., stone

laqueus, -i, m., slip noose

largior, -iri, -itus [largus, abundant], dep., trans. and intrans., give lavishly; give bribes, give presents

largiter, adv., lavishly: largiter posse, possess powerful influence

largitio, -onis [largior], f., lavish giving, bribery

lassitūdō, -inis [lassus, weary], f., weariness, exhaustion

lātē, adv., widely: latius, too far; longe lateque, far and wide

lateō, latère, latui, no p.p., intrans., be concealed, pass unnoticed

lātitūdō, -inis [latus, broad], f., breadth, width
Latobrigi, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

latrō, -onis, m., robber

latrocinium, -i [latro], n., robbery, brigandage

latus, lateris, n., side (of the body).
— Also, generally, side, flank, end (of a hill)

lātus, -a, -um, p.p. of fero

lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], trans., praise, commend

laus, laudis, f., praise, credit, glory

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), trans., wash.—In pass. used reflexively, bathe

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., loosen, open out, extend

lectica, -ae, f., portable chair, sedan, litter

lēgātiō, -ōnis [lēgo, dispatch], f., embassy

lēgātus, -ī [lēgo, dispatch], m., ambassador, envoy.—Also, lieutenant, legatus

legiō, -ōnis [lego, gather], f., legion

legiōnārius, -a, -um [legio], adj., of a legion, legionary

Lemannus, -ī, m. (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman

Lemovīcēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arverni

lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, smooth

lēnitās, -ātis [lenis], f., gentleness

lēniter, adv., gently

Lepontīi, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps

Leucī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul

levis, -e, adj., light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle

levitās, -ātis [levis], f., lightness, fickleness

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., lighten; relieve

lēx, légis, f., statute, law

Lexovii, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of northwestern Gaul

libenter, adv., willingly, gladly, with pleasure

liber, -bri, m., book

liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, unrestricted

liberālitās, -ātis [liberalis, generous], f., generosity, liberality

liberāliter, adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratione prosecutus (addressing in generous language)

liberē, adv., freely, boldly, without restraint

liberī, -orum [liber, free], m. plur., children

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [libēr], free, set free, relieve (from some bond): liberare se, secure one’s freedom

libertās, -ātis [libēr], f., liberty, freedom, independence

liceor, licēri, licitus, dep., intrans., bid (at an auction)

līcet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), intrans., impers., be allowed: id sibi etc. (that they be allowed); per te līcet, you allow, you do
Latin—English Vocabulary

Liger — magicus

not hinder; petere ut liceat, to ask permission

Liger, -eris, m., a river of western Gaul, now the Loire

Ligurés, -um, m., Ligurians, a people of northwestern Italy

linea, -ae, f., line

Lingoneş, -um, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul

lingua, -ae, f., tongue. Hence, language

lingula, -ae [lingua], f., tongue of land

linter, -tris, f., skiff, boat

Liscus, -i, m., chief magistrate of the Hædui in the year 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -i, m., a Hæduan chief

littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet).
   — Plur., writing, alphabet, letter (written message), records, literature

litus, -oris, n., shore, beach

locus, -i, m. (sing.), n. (generally plur.), place, spot, region (esp. in plur.), point, ground (in military language); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: obsidum loco, as hostages

locūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of loquor

longē, adv., far, absent, distant: non longius mille (triduo) (not more than); longe nobilissimus (far, altogether)

longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued

longitūdō, -inis [longus], f., length

longurus, -i, m., long pole

longus, -a, -um, adj., long (of space and time), tedious: in longiorum diem, to a more distant day

Longus, -i, m., Ti. Sempronius Longus, consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia

loquor, loqui, locutus, dep., trans. and intrans., speak, talk, converse

lōrica, -ae, f., coat of mail. — Also, breastwork, rampart

Lucāni, -ōrum, m., Lucanians, a people of southern Italy

Lūcānius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Lūcius, -i, m., a Roman praenomen

Lucterius, -i, m., a Gallic name

Lugotorix, -īgis, m., a British prince

lūmen, -inis, n., light

lūna, -ae, f., moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon

lūx, lūcis [cf. luceo, shine], f., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak

lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, riotous living

M, Roman numeral for thousand

M., abbr. for Mārcus

māceria, -ae, f., wall of soft clay, wall

māchinātiō, -onis [machina, machine], f., contrivance, engine, derrick

Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls

magicus, -a, -um, adj., magic
magis — manus

magis, adv., more, rather: eo magis, so much the more, all the more.
— maxime, superl.

magister, -tri, m., master, commander

magistratus, -üs [magister], m., magistracy (office of a magistrate).—
Concretely, magistrate

magnificus, -a, -um [magnus], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent

magnitūdō, -inis [magnus], f., greatness, size, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici)

magnopere, see opus

magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — maior, comp. in usual sense. — Also, maior (with or without natu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by forced marches

Māgō, -ōnis, m., brother of Hannibal

maiestās, -ātis [maior], f., majesty, dignity

maior, see magnus

malacia, -ae, f., a calm

male, adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — peius, comp. — pessime, superl.

maleficium, -i [male-facio], n., harm, mischief

mālō, mālle, māluī, no p.p. [mage (for magis), volo], irr., trans. and intrans., wish more, wish rather, prefer

mālum, -i [malus], n., evil, mischief, misfortune

malus, -a, -um, adj., bad. — peior, comp. — pessimus, superl.

mālus, -i, m., mast, beam (upright)

mandātum, -i [n. p.p. of mando], n., command, instructions; message

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., instruct, commit: se fugae (take to)

Mandubii, m. plur., a tribe north of the Hāedui

Mandubracius, -i, m., a Briton

māne, adv., in the morning

maneō, manēre, mānīsī, mānusūrus, intrans., stay, remain, stay at home. — Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod)

manipulus, -i [manus], m., handful; maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort)

Mānlius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., C. Manlius Volso, consul in 189 B.C.

mānsī, see maneō

mānsuēfacciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, trans., tame. — Pass., mānsuēfiō, be tamed

mānsuētūdō, -inis [mansuetus, tame], f., gentle disposition, kindness

manus, -ūs, f., the hand: in manibus nostris, within hand’s reach,
fighting us hand to hand; manum conserere, engage battle.—Also, company, band, troop

Märcellus, -i, m., M. Claudius Marcellus, (1) a famous Roman general; (2) a consul in 183 B.C.

Marcomanni, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Märcus, -i, m., a Roman prænomen

mare, -is, n., the sea: nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean); mare Oceanum, the ocean

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], adj., of the sea, maritime, naval, on the sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore)

Marius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., C. Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion

Märs, Märtis, m., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war.—See aequus

mäś, maris, adj., male.—Noun, a male

matara, -ae, f., javelin (used by the Gauls)

mäter, -tris, f., mother, matron: mater familias (old gen. of familia), matron

mäteria, -ae, f., wood, timber

mätrimönum, -ī [mater], n., marriage, mony: in matrimonium ducere, marry

Mätröna, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne

mätürē, adv., early, speedily

mätürō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [maturus], trans. and intrans., hasten, make haste

mätürus, -a, -um, adj., early.—Also, ripe, mature

maximē, adv., most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence

maximus, see magnus

Maximus, -i, m., a Roman family name

Mëđēa, -ae, f., daughter of Æetes king of Colchis

medicina, -ae, f., art of healing, medicine

mediocris, -cre [medius], adj., middling, moderate: spatium (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of mediocriter, adv., moderately: non mediocriter, in no small degree

Mediomatrici, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of northeastern Gaul

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius-terra], adj., inland

medius, -a, -um, adj., the middle of (as noun in English), mid-: in colle medio (half way up); locus medius
utriusque (half way between); de media nocte, about midnight

Meldī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne

melior, comp. of bonus

membrum, -i, n., limb, part of the body

memini, -isse, defective, trans. and intrans., remember

memor, -oris, adj., mindful

memoria, -ae [memor], f., memory, recollection: memoria tenere, remember; nostra memoria, within our memory, in our own time

Menapiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine

mēns, mentis, f., intellect, mind, state of mind, feeling: mentes animosque, minds and hearts

mēnsis, -is, m., month

mēnsūra, -ae [metior], f., measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water clock

mentō, -ōnis, f., mention

mercātor, -ōris [mercor, trade], m., trader

mercātūra, -ae [mercor, trade], f., traffic, trade

mercēs, -ēdis [merx, merchandise], f., hire, pay, wages

Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.

mereor, -ērī, -ītus (also mereo, active), dep., trans. and intrans., win, deserve, gain.—Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of, render service to

meridiānus, -a, -um [meridies], adj., of midday

meridiēs, -ēī [medius-dies], m., midday, noon.—Also, the south

meritum, -ī [n. p.p. of mereor], n., merit, service, kindness: quo minus merito, the less by the fault

meritus, -a, -um [p.p. of mereor], adj., deserved, fit, proper

Messāla,-ae,m., a Roman family name

mētior, mētīri, mēnsus, dep., trans., measure out, deal out, distribute

Mētius, -i, m., a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

metō, metere, messui, messus, trans., cut, reap, gather

metus, -ūs, m., fear

meus, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj., my, mine

mihi, see ego

mīles, -itis, m., soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service)

militāris, -e [miles], adj., of the soldiers, military: res militaris, warfare

militia,-ae [miles], f., military service

mille, indecl. adj. (rarely noun in sing.), with plur. milia, -ium, neuter noun, thousand: mille passus or mille passuum (cf. G. § 20. note), thousand paces, mile
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts

minimē, adv., least, very little, not at all

minimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of parvus, smallest, least.—Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little

minor, -us, adj., comp. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large.—Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not so: quo minus, that . . . not

Minucius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.—Espr.: 1. M. Minucius Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal.—2. Q. Minucius, consul 193 B.C.

minuō,-uere,-ui,-ūtus [minus], trans. and intrans., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb)

mirāculum, -i, n., wonder, miracle

mīrōr,-ārī,-ātus [mirus], dep., trans. and intrans., wonder, wonder at.

—mirātus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, surprised

mīrus,-a,-um, adj., surprising, marvelous, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor

misericordia, -ae [misericors, merciful], f., mercy, pity, clemency

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [miser], dep., trans., bewail, complain of

missus, -a, -um, p.p. of mitto

missus, -ūs, m., a sending: missus Caesaris, under Caesar’s orders

mittō, mittere, misī, missus, trans., send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke; tragulam (throw)

mōbilis, -e [moveo], adj., easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty

mōbilitās, -ātis [mobilitis], f., mobility, inconstancy, fickleness

mōbiliter, adv., easily, readily

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [modus], dep., trans. and intrans., control, regulate, restrain

modo, adv., only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: non modo, not only

modus, -i, m., measure, quantity.

Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: quem ad modum, how, just as, as

mœnia, -iwm [munio], n. plur., fortifications, walls of a city

mölēs, -is, f., mass; dike, dam

molestē, adv., heavily, severely:
molestē ferre, take it ill, be vexed at

molestia, -ae, f., annoyance, vexation

mōlimentum, -i [moliōr, strive], n., trouble, difficulty, exertion

molitus, -a, -um, p.p. of molo

mollis, -e, adj., soft; weak, feeble

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, trans., grind

moneō, -ere, -uī, -itus, trans., remind, warn, advise, urge, instruct

mōns, montis, m., mountain, height

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., point out, make known, show

mōnstrum, -i, n., wonder, monster

mora, -ae, f., delay, grounds of delay

morātus, -a, -um, p.p. of moror

morbus, -i, m., sickness, disease
mōribus — namque

mōribus, see mōs
Morini, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae

morior, morī, mortuus [mors], dep., intrans., die

moror, -āri, -ātus [mora], dep., trans. and intrans., retard, check, delay

mors, mortis, f., death: ipse sibi mortem conscivit, he committed suicide

mortuus, -a, -um, dead, p.p. of morior

mōs, mōris, m., custom, usage. — Plur., customs, habits, character
Mosa, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse

mōtus, -a, -um, p.p. of moveo

mōtus, -ūs [moveo], m., movement, disturbance, uprising: celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare)

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, trans., set in motion, move, remove: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp)

mox, adv., soon

mulier, -eris, f., woman

multītūdō, -inis [multus], f., great number; the multitude, the common people

multō, see multus

multum, see multus

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many: mucho die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night.
—multum, neut. as noun and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. — Abl., multō, much, far: mucho facīlius.
— Comp., plus, plūris, n. noun and adv.: plur., all genders, as adj., more, much, very; as noun, several, many. — Superl., plūrimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurīmi, as many as possible; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, be strongest, have very great weight

mundus, -i, m., universe, world

mūnimentum, -i [munio], n., a fortification. — Plur., a defense

mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, trans. and intrans., fortify; defend

mūnītiō, -onis [munio], f., a fortification, works, defenses

mūnus, -eris, n., duty: munus militiae, military service. — Also, gift, present

mūrālis, -e [murus], adj., of a wall, wall:— pilae (heavy javelins for service in siege operations)

mūrus, -i, m., wall

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., change

Mūsia, -ae, f., a country of Asia Minor

nactus, -a, -um, p.p. of nanciscor

nam, conj., for

Nammēius, -i, m., a Helvetian ambassador to Caesar

Nammētēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul

namque, conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam)
nanciscor, -iscī, nactus, dep., trans., find, get, obtain
Nantuātēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva
Narbō, -onis, m., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, now Narbonne
nāscor, nāscī, nātus, dep., intrans., be born, arise, spring up, be raised (of beasts). — nātus, -a, -um, p.p., sprung, born
Nasua, -ae, n., a leader of the Suebi
nātalis, -e [natus], adj., of birth: dies natalis, birthday
nātīō, -onis [cf. nascor], f., race, tribe, clan
nātivus, -a, -um [cf. nascor], adj., native, natural
nātō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., swim, float
nātūra, -ae [cf. nascor], f., nature, character
nātus, -a, -um, p.p. of nascor
nātus, -ūs [cf. nascor], m., birth: maiores natu, elders
naufragium, -i, n., shipwreck
nauta, -ae, m., sailor, boatman
nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval
nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., of ships, naval
nāvicula, -ae [navis], f., small vessel, skiff
nāvīgātiō, -onis [navigo], f., voyage, traveling by sea
nāvigium, -ī [navis], n., vessel (a general term), boat
nāvīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [navis], intrans., sail
nāvis, -is, f., ship, vessel, boat: oneraria (transport); longa (war galley)
nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., do zealously: operam (do one's best)
-ne (enclitic), adv. and conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as a question in English), do, etc. — See also necne
nē, conj., lest, that ... not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), in order that ... not, for fear that. — After verbs of fearing, that. — Also adv., ne ... quidem, not even
nec, see neque
necessarius, -a, -um [necesse], adj., necessary: tempus (critical). — Also, as noun, kinsman, close friend. — Abl. as adv., necessāriō, necessarily, unavoidably
necessē, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable. — With est, one must
necessitās, -ātis [necesse], f., necessity, constraint, compulsion
necessitūdō, -inis [necesse], f., intimacy, close relations
necne [nec-ne], conj., or not (in double questions)
necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., put to death, kill, murder
neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [neglego, gather], trans., disregard, neglect
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., say no, say ... not, refuse
gōtor, -āri, -ātus [negotium], dep., intrans., do business
negótium — nōminātīm

negótium, -ī [-nec-otīum, ease], n., business, occupation, undertaking: quid negoti, what business? dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to. —Less definitely, matter, thing. — Also, difficulty, trouble

Nemetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō [ne-homo], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one

nēquāquam, adv., in no way, by no means

neque (nec), conj., and not, and yet ... not, nor: neque ... neque, neither ... nor; neque enim, for ... not

nēquīquam, adv., to no purpose, in vain

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Nervii, Nervian

Nervius, -a, -um, adj., Nervian. — Masc. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul

nervus, -ī, m., sinew, muscle. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī, not know: nescio quis, I know not who

neu, see neve

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter], adj. and pron., neither. — Plur., neither party, neither side

nēve (neu), conj., and not, nor

nex, necis, f., violent death, execution

nihil, see nihilum

nihilum, -i [ne-hilum, trifle] (also indecl., nihil), n., nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil respondere, make no answer. — nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no; nihilō minus, none the less; nihilō setius, nevertheless. — nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non nihil, somewhat

nisi, conj., unless, except

Nitiobroges, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania

nītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus, dep., intrans., struggle, strive: nīti insidiis (rely upon)
nix, nīvis, f., snow

nōbilis, -ē [cf. nosco], adj., famous, noble, well-born. — Plur. as noun, the nobles

nōbilitās, -ātis [nōbilis], f., the nobility, the nobles

nōcēns, see noceo

nocēō, nocēre, nocui, no p.p., intrans., injure, harm, harass. — nocēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., guilty

noctū, adv., by night

nocturnus, -a, -um [nox], adj., nightly, nocturnal, by night

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, no p.p. [ne-volo], ir., intrans., be unwilling, wish not to: noli, nolite, do not (with infin.)

nōmen, -inis [cf. nosco], n., name; account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account; nomine obsidum, under pretense of hostages

nōminātīm [nomen], adv., by name (individually)
nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., name, mention, call by name
nōn, adv., not: nōn est dubium, there is no doubt; nōn nihil, something, somewhat; nōn nūllus, some; nōn nūmquam, sometimes
nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., ninety
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōnne [non-ne], interrog. adv., suggesting an affirmative answer, not?
nōnus, -ā, -um, num. adj., ninth
Nōrēia, -ae, f., a city of the Norici
Nōricus, -ā, -um, adj., of the Norici, Norican
nōs, see ego
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, trans., learn, become acquainted with.—In perf. tenses, know
nōster, -tra, -trum, possessive pro-nominal adj., our, ours.—In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces
nōtītia, -ae [notus], f., acquaintance with, knowledge
nōtus, p.p. of nosco
novem, indecl. num. adj., nine
Noviodūnum, -ī, n.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire.—2. A town of the Suessiones
novitās, -ātis [novus], f., novelty, strangeness
novus, -ā, -um, adj., new, fresh; strange: res novae, a change of government, revolution.—novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear)
nox, noctis, f., night: prima nocte,
in the early part of the night; multa nocte, late at night
noxia, -ae [cf. noceo], f., crime, guilt
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, intrans., marry (of the woman)
nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nudus], trans., lay bare, expose, strip
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed
nūllus, -ā, -um, adj., not any, no.—As noun, no one.—nōn nūllus, some; plur. as noun, some, some persons
num, interrog. adv., suggesting an affirmative answer; no corresponding word in English
nūmen, -inis, n., will, power; divinity
numerus, -ī, m., number: in hostium numero habuit (in the place of, as, etc., euphemism for slaughtered)
Numida, -ae, m., Numidian, of northern Africa. The Numidians were famous cavalrymen under Hannibal; they were used in the Roman army also
nūmquam, adv., never
nunc, adv., now
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nuntius], trans., bring word, report
nūntius, -ī, m., messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere, send word; per eorum nuntios (agents)
nūper, adv., lately, recently, not long ago
nūptum, see nūbō
nūtus, -ūs [nuo, nod], m., a nod: ad nutum, at one's command
nympha, -ae, f., nymph
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>ob</em></td>
<td>prep. with acc., against; on account of, for: <em>ob eam rem</em>, for this reason, on this account. — <em>In composition</em>, towards, to, against, over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obae</em></td>
<td>bound in debt. — <em>As noun</em>, debtor, servant for debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obae</em>cō, <em>-cere</em>, <em>-cēi</em>, <em>-iectus</em></td>
<td><em>trans.</em>, throw against, throw in the way, present, set up, expose. — <em>object</em> — <em>a</em>, <em>-um</em>, <em>p.p.</em> as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obae</em>cus, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>p.p.</em> of <em>obcio</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obae</em>itus, <em>-us</em></td>
<td><em>obeo</em>, m., destruction, annihilation, death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obae</em>lātus, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>p.p.</em> of <em>offer</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obelin</em>ō, <em>-linere</em>, <em>-lēvi</em>, <em>-litus</em></td>
<td><em>trans.</em>, smear, daub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obliquē</em></td>
<td><em>adv.</em>, obliquely, slanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obliviscor</em>, <em>-liviscī</em>, <em>-litus</em></td>
<td><em>dep.</em>, <em>trans.</em> and <em>intrans.</em>, forget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obscūrō</em>, <em>-scūrāre</em>, <em>-scūrāvī</em>, <em>-scūrātus</em></td>
<td><em>trans.</em>, darken, cover, hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obscūrus</em>, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>adj.</em>, dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obsecrō</em>, <em>-āre</em>, <em>-āvī</em>, <em>-ātus</em></td>
<td><em>ob-sacrum</em>, <em>trans.</em>, entertain, beg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>observō</em>, <em>-āre</em>, <em>-āvī</em>, <em>-ātus</em></td>
<td><em>trans.</em>, pay attention to: <em>iudicium</em> (follow, comply with); <em>diem natalem</em> (keep, celebrate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obses</em>, <em>-idis</em></td>
<td><em>cf. obsideo</em>, c., hostage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obse</em>ssus, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>p.p.</em> of <em>obsideo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obsideō</em>, <em>-sidēre</em>, <em>-sēdi</em>, <em>-sessus</em></td>
<td><em>obsdeo</em>, <em>sit</em>, <em>trans.</em>, blockade, beset, guard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obsidiō</em>, <em>-ōnīs</em></td>
<td><em>cf. obsideo</em>, <em>f.</em>, siege, blockade: <em>obsidione liberare</em> (from besetting enemies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obsignō</em>, <em>-āre</em>, <em>-āvī</em>, <em>-ātus</em></td>
<td><em>trans.</em>, seal up, seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obstrictus</em>, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>p.p.</em> of <em>obstringo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obstringō</em>, <em>-stringere</em>, <em>-strīnāti</em>, <em>-strictus</em>, <em>trans.</em></td>
<td><em>bind</em>: <em>habere obstrictas</em> (under obligation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obtemperō</em>, <em>-āre</em>, <em>-āvī</em>, <em>-ātūrus</em></td>
<td><em>intrans.</em>, comply with, submit to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obtestor</em>, <em>-āri</em>, <em>-ātus</em>, <em>dep.</em>, <em>trans.</em></td>
<td>implore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obtineō</em>, <em>-tinēre</em>, <em>-tinui</em>, <em>-tentus</em></td>
<td><em>obteneo</em>, <em>trans.</em>, retain, maintain, occupy, possess; gain, acquire, obtain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obtrectātiō</em>, <em>-ōnis</em></td>
<td><em>f.</em>, detraction, disparagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obtuli</em>, <em>perf.</em> of <em>offer</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obveniō</em>, <em>-venīre</em>, <em>-vēnī</em>, <em>-ventūrus</em></td>
<td><em>intrans.</em>, meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>obviam</em>, <em>adv.</em></td>
<td>in the way of, to meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>occāsiō</em>, <em>-ōnīs</em></td>
<td><em>ob-cado</em>, <em>f.</em>, opportunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>occāsus</em>, <em>-ūs</em></td>
<td><em>ob-cado</em>, <em>m.</em>, a falling, a setting (of the sun): <em>solis</em> (the sunset, the west)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>occidō</em>, <em>-cidere</em>, <em>-cīdi</em>, <em>-cisus</em></td>
<td><em>ob-caedo</em>, <em>trans.</em>, kill, massacre: <em>occisi</em>, the slain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>occultō</em>, <em>-āre</em>, <em>-āvī</em>, <em>-ātus</em></td>
<td><em>occultus</em>, <em>trans.</em>, conceal, hide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>occultus</em>, <em>-a</em>, <em>-um</em></td>
<td><em>p.p.</em> of <em>occulo</em>, <em>hide</em>, <em>adj.</em>, concealed: <em>in occulto</em>, in secret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
occupātiō, -ōnis [occupo], f., occupation, business affairs: occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., seize, take possession of: regna (usurp).—occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., engaged, employed, busy

occurrō,-currere,-currī,-cursūrus [obcurro], intrans., meet, come on, find: eo (run, to meet an enemy)

Oceanus, -i, m., ocean

Ocelum, -l, n., a town in Cisalpine Gaul

octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj., eighth

octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., eight hundred

octō, indecl. num. adj., eight

Octodūrōs, -i, m., a town of the Veragri

octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., eighty

oculus, -i, m., the eye

ōdi, ōdisse, defective, trans., hate, detest

ōdium, -i [cf. odi], n., hatred

offendō,-fendere,-fendi,-fēnus [obfendo], strike, trans. and intrans., dash against, hurt: animum (hurt the feelings)

offensiō, -ōnis [offendo], f., offense: sine offensione animi, without wounding one's feelings

offers, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [obfero], irr., trans., throw in one's way, offer: se morti (expose one's self to); quos sibi oblātus (placed in his power)

officium, -i, n., service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: discedere ab officio, fail in one's duty

ōlim, adv., once on a time, once

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [obmitto], trans., let go by, disregard: consilium (leave untried, neglect)

omnīō [omnis], adv., altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (with negatives)

omnis,-e, adj., all, the whole of.— In sing., every: omni tempore, on all occasions, always. — In plur., a short expression for all others

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., for burdens: naves (transports)

onus, -eris, n., burden, weight.—Esp., tanta onera navium, ships of such weight

opera, -ae [opus], f., work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains

opieri,-perire,-perūi,-pertus, trans., cover

opiniō, -ōnis [opinor, think], f., notion, expectation, idea, reputation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinione praecipere, anticipate

opportet, -ēre,-uit, intrans., impers., it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought etc.)
oppidānus — Orpheus

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., of a town. — Plur. as noun, townspeople

oppidum, -i, n., stronghold, town

oppleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [ob-pleo], trans., fill up, fill

oppōnō, -pōnerē, -pōsuī, -pōsitus [ob-pono], trans., oppose

opportūnē, adv., opportunely

opportūnitās, -ātis [opportunus], f., timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., opportune, advantageous, lucky

oppositus, -a, -um, adj., opposite

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimō

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-premo], trans., overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise

oppugnātiō, -ōnis [oppugno], f., siege, attack

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-pugno], trans., attack, lay siege to

†ops, opis (sing. in gen., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), f., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, wealth

optātus, -a, -um [p. p. of opto, wish], adj., desired

optimē, superl. of bene

optimus, -a, -um, superl. of bonus

opus, n., indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, if anything needs to be done

opus, operis, n., work, labor. — In a military sense, a work, works, fortifications. — In abl., magnopere, very much, very, greatly; quanto opere, how much; tanto opere, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere, tantopere

ōra, -ae, f., shore, coast

ōrāculum, -i [oro], n., oracle

ōrātiō, -ōnis [oro], f., speech, address, discourse, argument

ōrātor, -ōris [oro], m., speaker, ambassador, envoy

orbis, -is, m., circle: orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world

ōrdō, -inis, m., series, row, tier, rank (of soldiers), grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), arrangement, order

Orgetorix, -igis, m., a nobleman of the Helvetii

orior, orīri, ortus, dep., intrans., arise, spring up. — Fig., begin, start, arise, have its source. — oriēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east)

ōrnāmentum, -i [orno], n., an adornment; an honor

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., adorn, equip, furnish. — Fig., honor. — ornātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., furnished, well-equipped, honored

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., speak; pray, entreat

Orpheus, -i, m., a Thracian bard, whose lyre could charm beasts and move rocks and trees
ortus — partus

ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior
ös, öris, n., the mouth, the face
Osismi, -őrum, m. plur., a coast
tribé of northwestern Gaul
ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus
[obs-(= ob-)tendo], trans., present,
show, point out, make known, state, declare
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., dis-
play, exhibit
ōtium, -ī, n., repose, inactivity, quiet
ōvum, -ī, n., egg

P., abbr. for Publius
pābulātīo, -onis [pabulor], f., a forag-
ing, getting fodder
pābulum, -ī [cf. pasco, feed], n.,
fodder
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pax], trans.,
pacify, subdue.—pācātus, -a, -um,
p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet
Padus, -ī, m., the Po, the principal,
river of Italy
paene, adv., almost, nearly
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, trans., impers.,
it repents (one), one repents, one
regrets
pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton
palam, adv., openly, publicly: palam
facere, make known
palma, -ae, f., the palm (of the
hand); palm tree
palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh
Pamphylius, -a, -um, adj., Pamphy-
lian, name of the Mediterranean
sea near Pamphylia, a region of
southwestern Asia Minor
pandō, pandere, pandī, passus or
pānsus, trans., spread out: passis
manibus, with outstretched hands;
passis capillis, with disheveled
hair
pār, paris, adj., equal, alike, like
parātus, see paro
parcē [parco], adv., sparingly, fru-
gally
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, in-
trans., spare.—Esp., save alive:
parcendo, by economy, by frugality
parēns, -entis [pario, bear], c., parent
pāreō, pārēre, pārui, no p. p., in-
trans., appear; obey, submit to
Parīi, parere, peperi, partus, trans.,
bring forth; produce, obtain
Parisii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic
tribe in the district where Paris
is now
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., pro-
cure, provide, prepare, arrange.
—parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.,
ready, prepared
pars, partis, f., portion, part, share.
—Often of position or direction
merely, side, direction, region:
una ex parte, on one side; ex
utraque parte, on both sides.—
Fig., qua ex parte, in which re-
spect; omnibus partibus, in all
respects.—Esp., tres partes, three
quarters (three parts out of four);
ex parte, in part.—partim, old
acc. as adv., in part, partly, some
... others
partim, see pars
partior, -irī, -ītus, dep., trans., divide
partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario
parum, adv., not much, not sufficiently: parum diligenter, too carelessly

parvulus, -a, -um [parvus], adj., small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, slight, little

passim, adv., in all directions, all about

passus, -a, -um, p.p. of pando; also p.p. of patior

passus, -us, m., step, pace (the distance from the point where the heel leaves the ground to the point where the same heel again touches the ground; really a double step, about five Roman feet): mille passus or mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet

patefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [pateo-facio], trans., lay open, open, open up

patefīō, -fieri, pass. of patefacio

pateō, -ere, -uí, no p.p., intrans., be extended, lie open, spread, extend. — patēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., open, exposed

pater, -tris, m., father. — Plur., ancestors

paterinus, -a, -um [pater], adj., paternal, of a father

patior, pati, passus, dep., trans., suffer, endure, allow, permit

patria, -ae [pater], f., native land, country

patrius, -a, -um [pater], adj., ancestral, of one’s fathers

patruus, -i [pater], m., uncle (on the father’s side)

paucitās, -ātis [paucus], f., small number

paucus, -a, -um, adj., almost always in plur., few, some few: paucis (pauca) respondit (in a few words, briefly)

paullātim, adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually

Paulisper, adv., a little while

paullō [abl. of paulus, little], adv., a little, slightly

Paululum [paulum], adv., a very little

paulum, -i [neut. of paulus, little], a little. — As adv., a little, a short distance, somewhat

Paulus, -i, m., see Aemilius

pāx, pācis, f., peace, favor

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., go wrong, commit a fault

pecūnia, -ae [pecus], f., money, wealth

pecus, -oris, n., cattle (esp. sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle). — Plur., cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -e [pēs], adj., a foot thick

pedes, -itis [pes], m., footman, foot soldier. — Collectively, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [pedes], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot. copiae (the foot, the infantry)

pedītātus, -ūs [pedes], m., foot, infantry

Pedius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul
peior, see *malus*
peius, see *male*
Peliās, -ae, *m.*, a mythical king of Thessaly, uncle of Jason
pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin (either on or off the body of an animal):
sub pellibus, in tents, *i.e.* in the field
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *trans.*, beat, drive, defeat, repulse
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *trans.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out.—*Also*, pay (a penalty), suffer (*punishment*)
penitus, *adv.*, far within: penitus ad extremos fines (clear to, all the way to)
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over, among, by means of.—*In composition, as adv.*, very, exceedingly, completely
perāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of perago*
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*per-capio*], *trans.*, acquire, learn, feel, hear
percontātiō, -ōnis [*percontor, inquire*], *f.*, inquiry
percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, run along
percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [*per-quatio, shake*], *trans.*, hit, strike, run through
perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart
perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of perdo*
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin.—perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. as adj.*, ruined, desperate, abandoned
perducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, *trans.*, lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, make (fossam).—*Fig.*, prolong, win over, bring
pereō, -īre, -īii, -ītūrus, *irr., intrans.*, perish, be killed
perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, ride through (or around)
perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small
perfacilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *irr., trans.*, carry through (or over): opinionem (spread); consilium (carry over); famam (bring).—*Also*, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*per-facio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish; bring about
perfidia, -ae [*perfidus*, treacherous], *f.*, treachery, faithlessness
perfringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [*per-frango*], *trans.*, break through
perfuga, -ae [*cf. perfugio*], *m.*, fugitive, deserter
perfugio, -fugerē, -fugi, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, run away, escape to, desert
perfugium, -ī [*perfugio*], *n.*, place of refuge, refuge
perfungor, -fungi, -fūctus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, fulfill, perform (*abl.*)
Pergamēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pergamum (a city of northwestern Asia Minor).—*Masc. as noun*, Pergamene
pergō — perturbātiō

pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus [perrego], intrans., keep on, advance
periclitor, -āri, -ātus [periculum], dep., trans. and intrans., try, make tests to ascertain, be put in peril
periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum], adj., dangerous
periculum, -ī, n., test, trial. Hence, peril, danger, risk
peritus, -a, -um, adj., experienced, skilled, skillful
perlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of perfero
perlegō, -legere, -léctus [perlego, read], read through, peruse
permaneō, -manère, -mānsi, -mānsurus, intrans., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist
permittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., grant, allow, give up, intrust
permoveō, -movère, -mōvi, -mōtus, trans., influence, affect. — permōtus, -a, -um, p.p., much affected, much influenced, overcome
permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus, trans., soothe, pacify
perniciēs, -ēi, f., destruction, ruin
perpaucus, -a, -um, adj., always in the plur., very few, a very few
perpendiculum, -ī, n., plumb line: ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly
perpetior, -petī, -pessus [per-patior], dep., trans., bear steadfastly, suffer, endure
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — perpetuō, abl. as adv., forever, constantly, continually
perquīrō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisitus [per-quaero], trans., search for, inquire about
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans. and intrans., break through, force one’s way through
perruptus, -a, -um, p.p. of perrumpo
perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus, trans., write in full, set down, state, describe, recount
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow up, pursue, attack
perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, intrans., persist
persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, trans., pay, suffer (punishment)
perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., see through; understand, learn, observe, discover
persuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus, trans. and intrans., induce, persuade. — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (dat. of person), be satisfied, believe
perterreo, -terēre, -teruí, -territus, trans., terrify, alarm
pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, obstinate], f., obstinacy, stubbornness
pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, no p.p. [per-teneo], intrans., tend, extend; have to do with: eodem illo ut etc. (have the same purpose)
pertulō, see perfero
perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbo], f., disturbance, alarm, panic
perturbó — plüs

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify
pervagor, -ari, -ātus, dep., 'intrans., roam about, scatter
perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, intrans., arrive at, reach, come, arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall)
pēs, pedis, m., foot. — Esp., pedem referre, draw back, give way
petō, petere, petīvi, petitus, trans., attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. Hence, ask, request: pe-tentibus Haeduis (at the request of etc.); fugam (take to)
Petrosidius, -ī, m., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., L. Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Cæsar’s army
phalanx, -angis, f., phalanx
Phāsis, -idis (acc. -im), m., a river flowing into the Black Sea
Phīneus, -ī, m., a blind king of Thrace
Philippus, -ī, m., Philip (V), king of Macedonia, 220-179 B.C.
Phrixus, -ī, m., son of Athamas (a mythical king)
Pictonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe south of the Loire
pīlum, -ī, n., javelin
pīlus, -ī, m., century (of third line of legionary soldiers): prīmi pīli centurio, primipilar centurion, the ranking centurion of the legion
pīnna, -ae, f., parapet, battlement
pīcis, -īs, m., fish
Pīsō, -ōnis, m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. L. Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar’s wife; consul with A. Gæbinius in 58 B.C. — 3. M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B.C. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian
pīx, picis, f., pitch
placēō, -ēre, -ūi, -ītūrus, intrans., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines
plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., pacify, appease
plānē, adv., flatly, clearly, entirely
plānitīēs, -ēī [planus], f., plain
plānus, -a, -um, adj., flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding)
plausus, -ūs, m., clapping (of hands), applause, approval
plēbs, -is (or plēbēs, -ēī), f., the common people
plēnē, adv., fully, entirely, completely
plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full
plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., only in plur., most of, very many. — plērumque, acc. sing. as adv., generally, usually, for the most part, very often
plumbum, -ī, n., lead
plūrimus, see multus
plūs, see multus
poena — post

poena, -ae, f., penalty; punishment
Poenus, -a, -um, adj., Carthaginian.
— Masc. as noun, Carthaginian
pollex, -icis, m., the thumb
polliceor, -licis, -licitus, dep., trans.,
offer, promise: liberaliter (make liberal offers)
pollicitatiō, -onis [polliceor], f., offer, promise
pollicitus, -a, -um, p.p. of polliceor
Polybius, -ī, m., a celebrated Greek historian, intimate friend of
the younger Scipio, whom he accompanied on his military expeditions
Polyphemus, -ī, m., one of the Argonauts
Pompeius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile or family name.—Esp.: 1. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with M. Crassus in
55 B.C. — 2. Cn. Pompeius, an interpreter of Q. Titurius Sabinus
pondus, -eris, n., weight
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, trans.,
lay down, place, put: castra
(pitch); praesidium (station, but see below).—Fig., place, lay, make
depend on: in fuga praesidium
and spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek). — positus, -a, -um,
trans., situated, lying, depending on
pōns, pontis, m., bridge
Pontus, -ī, m., a country of northeastern Asia Minor
populātiō, -onis [populor], f., a plundering, raid
populor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans.,
ravage, devastate

populus, -ī, m., people, nation, tribe:
populus Romanus (the official
designation of the Roman state)
porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, trans.,
stretch forth: correcta loca pertinens (stretch out in extent)
porta, -ae, f., gate
portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., carry,
bring, convey
portōrium, -i, n., duty, toll
portus, -ūs, m., harbor, haven, port
poscō, poscere, poposci, no p.p.,
trans., demand, require, claim
positus, -a, -um, p.p. of pono
possessō, -onis [possideo], f., possession, occupation; possessions, lands
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [por- (= pro-)sedeo, sit], trans., occupy
(in a military sense), possess, hold
possum, posse, potuī, no p.p., irr.,
intrans., be able, can, etc.: pluri-
mum posse, be most powerful,
have very great influence; largiter
posse, have great influence; tan-
tum multitudine posse, be so strong in numbers; equitatu nihil
posse, have no strength in cavalry;
quicquid possunt, whatever power
they have; quid virtute possint, the prowess of, how formidable
they are by their valor; fieri posse,
be possible; ut spatium inter-
cedere posset (might intervene);
quam maximum potest, the great-
est he can
post, adv., and prep. with acc.,
behind, after: post se, in their rear
**postea — praeclārus**

*postea, adv., afterwards*

*posteāquam, conj., after*

*posterus, -a, -um, adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last. — postrēmō, abl. as adv., lastly, finally*

*postquam, conj., after*

*postrēmō, see posterus*

*postrēmus, see posterus*

*postridē [posterus-dies], adv., the next day: postridie eius diei, the next day after that*

*postulātum, -i [n. p.p. of postulo], n., demand, request, claim*

*postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., claim, ask, request, require: tempus anni (make necessary)*

*potēns, -entis [pres. p. of possum], adj., powerful, influential*

*potentātus, -ūs [potens], m., the chief power, supremacy*

*potentia, -ae [potens], f., power, authority (not official or legal)*

*potestās, -ātis [potis, able], f., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them*

*potior, potirī, potitus, dep., intrans., become master of, get the control of (abl. or gen.)*

*potior, -us, -ōris, adj., preferable. — potius, acc. as adv., preferably, rather*

*potissimum [potissimus], adv., in preference to all else, most of all, chiefly*

*potitus, -a, -um, p.p. of potior*

*pae, prep. with abl., before, in comparison with. — esp. with words implying hindrance, for, on account of (some obstacle). — In composition, before others, very, before, at the head of*

*paeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened to a point, pointed*

*paebeō, praeberē, praebuī, praebitus [praehabeo], trans., offer, present, furnish*

*pae caveō, -cāvere, -cāvi, -cautus, intrans., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one’s guard*

*paeceōdo, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans., go before; excel, surpass*

*paeceps, -cipitis [praecaput], adj., headlong, in haste: locus paeceps, a steep incline, a precipitous place*

*paeceptum, -i [p.p. of praeceptio], n., an instruction, an order*

*paeceptiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [prae-capio], trans., take beforehand, anticipate; order, give instructions*

*paeceptitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [paeceps], trans., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong)*

*paecepuē [paecepuus, special], adv., especially*

*paeclārus, -a, -um, adj., brilliant; splendid, famous*
### Latin—English Vocabulary

**Praeconinus — praeterea**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Praeconinus, -i, m.</td>
<td>a Roman family name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praecurrō, -currere, -curre (-currī), -cursūrus, intrans.,</td>
<td>run before, outstrip, anticipate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praeda, -ae, f.</td>
<td>booty, prey, plunder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., proclain, assert, describe, boast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praedico, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, trans., foretell, predict</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praedor, -āri, -ātus [praeda], dep., intrans., plunder, take booty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praedūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead before, construct in front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., place before, esteem above, prefer, prefer to (with quam): se alicui (show one's self better than)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [praefacio], trans., put before, place in command of, set over. — praefectus, -i, m. of p. p. as noun, captain (esp. of cavalry), commander, officer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., send forward, send on, send ahead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praemium, -i, n.</td>
<td>reward, prize, distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, trans., break off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praecribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scrip tus, trans., order, direct, give directions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praescriptum, -i [n. p. p. of prae scribo], n., an order, orders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesēns, -entis, see praesum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesentia, -ae [praesens], f.</td>
<td>presence, the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesertim, adv.</td>
<td>especially, particularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesidium, -i [praesideo, sit before], n., a guard, garrison, a force; fortification, intrenchment; protection, safety: in fuga praesidium ponere, seek safety in flight; intra praesidia, within the lines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praestāns, -stantis [praesto], adj.</td>
<td>remarkable, conspicuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praestō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātus, trans. and intrans., stand before, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better. — Also, causatively, furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans.,</td>
<td>be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistratui (hold). — praesēns, -entis, pres. p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praeter, adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to praetereā, adv.</td>
<td>furthermore, besides</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
praetereō, -īre, -ī, -itus, irr., *trans.*
and intrans., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p.p.
as adj., past. — Esp., praeterita, n. plur., the past
praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, *trans.*
and intrans., go by, pass by, pass over.
— praeteritus, -a, -um, p.p.
as adj., past. — Esp., praeterita, n. plur., the past
praetor, -ōris [praeeo, go before], m.,
commander. — Esp., prætor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome:
legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in command, acting as a prætor)
praetorius, -a, -um [praetor], adj.,
of a prætor (in all its senses):
praetoria cohors, the bodyguard of a commander
praeeuro, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustus, *trans.*
burn at the end
premō, premere, pressī, pressus,
*trans.*, press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress
prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnus,
*trans.*, seize, take, grasp
pretium, -i, n., price, cost, value
† prex, precis (sing. in dat., acc.,
and abl. only; plur. entire), f.,
prayer, entreaty
prīdiē, adv., the day before
primipilus [primus-pilus], m.,
the first centurion
primō [abl. of primus], adv., at first
primum [acc. of primus], adv., first,
in the first place: cum primum,
as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible
primus, see prior
prīnceps, -ipis [primus-capiō], adj.,
first, chief, foremost: locus (chief,
highest); ea princeps persoißit
(was the first to). — Often as noun, leader, chief: legationis
(head)
principātus, -ūs [princeps], m., fore-
most position, first place, leadership
prior, -us, -ōris, adj., former, before:
prior, see prior
priore, see prior
prīsusquam, conj., earlier than, be-
fore. Often separated, prīus . . . quam
prīvātim [privatus], adv., privately,
as private persons
prīvātus, -a, -um [p.p. of privo,
deprive], adj., private, personal
prō (prōd in some compounds), prep.
with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for,
as, on behalf of: pro explorato,
ascertained, as certain. — Also, in
view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in re-
turn for, for. — In composition,
before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward)
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, ap-
prove, test, prove, show, be satis-
ished with
procéðō — proinde

procéðō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, intrans., go forward, advance: longius (go to a distance)

Procillus, -i, m., a Roman family name

prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., proconsul, ex-consul (during his term of service abroad)

prōcul, adv., at a distance, afar, from afar

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p. [pro-cumbo, lie], intrans., fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., care for, have charge of, attend to

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run forward, charge, rush out

prōdeo, -ire, -ii, -itūrus [pro (see pro), eo], irr., intrans., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward

prōdītiō, -ōnis [prodo], f., treachery

prōdītor, -ōris [prodo], m., traitor, betrayer

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo

prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [pro-do, put], trans., give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down

prōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., lead out, bring out, draw up (troops); protract, prolong

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [proelium], dep., intrans., fight (in war)

proelium, -ī, n., battle, contest, skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle)

profeciō, -ōnis [proficiscor], f., a setting out, departure

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficio

professus, -a, -um, p. p. of profiteor

proficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [profacio], trans. and intrans., accomplish: satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory

proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus, dep., intrans., start, leave, depart, set out: ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey)

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [pro-fateor, confess], dep., trans. and intrans., declare publicly, state

profugio, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., dash to the ground; put to rout, rout

profuō, -fluere, -flūxī, no p. p., intrans., flow forth. rise

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, intrans., flee, escape

prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus, p. p. of (g)nascor], adj., sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of

prōgresdior, -gredī, -gressus [pro-gradior, step, go], dep., intrans., go forward, march forward: proceed, go

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōgresdior

prōhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [pro-habeo], trans., keep off, repel. stop, prevent. forbid; protect

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [prō-iacio], trans., throw forward, throw away, abandon: se ex navi (leap)

proinde, adv., therefore, hence
prömittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
trans., send forth.—Fig., promise
prömovere, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
trans., move forward, advance, push forward
prömptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, quick, active
prömunturium, -i, n., headland
prōnē, adv., with a slope
prōnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
make known, communicate, give orders, declare, make proclamation
prōpateulum, -i, n., open place; court
prōpe, prep. with acc., near.—Fig.,
almost, nearly.—propius, comp.,
adv., nearer: propius tumulum
(as prep.)—proximē, superl.,
adv., lately, last
prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus,
trans., drive away, repulse, rout, dislodge, force back
proberē, adv., quickly
proberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans.,
hasten, hurry
propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f.,
vicinity.—Esp., nearness in blood, relationship
propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near at hand, near.—Esp. by blood, related.—As noun in plur., relatives
propior, -us, -ōris [prope], adj.,
nearer.—proximus, superl., nearest, next, neighboring: bellum (last).—With force of prep., proximi Rhenum, nearest the Rhine
prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus,
trans., place before; offer, put in the way, make known, state, represent
propius, -a, -um [prope], adj., of one's own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark)
propter [prope], adv., and prep.
with acc., close by.—Also, on account of
propterea, adv., on this account.—With quod, because
prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, intrans.,
fight in defense
prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
repel, keep off, drive off
prōra, -ae, f., prow (of a ship)
prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, trans.,
dash down, overturn, demolish
prōrūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of proruo
prosequor, -sequi, -secutus, dep.,
trans., pursue, escort; address
prōspectus, -ūs [prospicio], m., outlook, view
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus,
trans., look forward, look out, watch; provide for, take care
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, irr., intrans.,
be useful, benefit, assist
prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [protego],
trans., protect, cover
prōtinus, adv., straightway, forth-with, at once
prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge
prōvectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proveho
proveho — quadrāgintā

prövehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, trans., carry forward. — In pass., be carried forth, sail

prövideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, trans., foresee, take care, provide, arrange beforehand: satis est provisum, sufficient provision has been made

prövincia, -ae, f., office (of a commander or governor), province (in general); also, a province (governed by a Roman magistratet). — Esp., the Province (of Gaul)

pröviciālis, -e [prövincia], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the Province (of Gaul)

prövisus, -a, -um, p. p. of provideo

prövolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., rush out, fly out (of cavalry etc.)

proximē, see prope

proximus, see propior

prūdentia, -ae [prudens, foreseeing], f., foresight, discretion

Prūsiās, -ae, m., a king of Bithynia (in northern Asia Minor) to whom Hannibal fled

Ptīānī, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

pūblīcē, adv., in the name of the state, publicly

pūblīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [publicus], trans., make state property, confiscate

pūblīcus, -a, -um [populus], adj., of the people, of the state, public:

res publica, commonwealth, state

Pūblius, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen

pudor, -ōris, m., sense of shame, sense of honor

puer, -ī, m., boy, servant, slave. — Plur., children (of either sex): a pueris, from childhood

puerīlis, -e [puer], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood)

puerulus, -ī [puer], little boy

pugna, -ae, f., fight: ad pugnam, for fighting

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., fight, engage. — Often impers. in pass., pugnatum est etc., they fought, the fighting continued

Pullō, -onis, m., T. Pullo, a centurion in Cæsar’s army

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello

pulsus, -ūs [pelo], m., stroke, beat: pulsu remorum praestare (the working etc.)

pulvis, -eris, m., dust

puppis, -is, f., stern

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., clean, clear; excuse, free from suspicion

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., think, suppose, consider

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., only with montes, the Pyrenees, mountains between France and Spain

Q., abbr. for Quintus

quā, rel. adv., by which (way), where

quācumque, rel. adv., by whichever (way), wherever

quadragēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., forty each, forty (each being often omitted in English)

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty
quadringlentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., four hundred

quaerō, quaequere, quaesīvī, quaestītus, trans., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask: eadem (make the same inquiries)

quaesīvī, see quaerō

quaestīō, -onis [quaero], f., investigation

quaestor, -ōris [quaero], m., quaestor (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army)

quaestus, -ūs [quaero], m., acquisition, gain

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort? qualis ascensus (what is the nature of?)

quam, adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., how? — 2. Rel., as, than. — Often with superlatives, as... as possible: quam maximus, the greatest possible; quam maxime, (to) the utmost; quam maxime potest, as much as he can

quamdiū (often written separately, see diū), rel. adv. (with antecedent omitted), as long as

quamquam, conj., although

quamvis, adv., as you please, however, no matter how

quandō, adv., at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever

quantō [quantus], adv., by how much, (by as much) as

quantus, -a, -um, adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?) —

2. Rel., as great as, as much as: tantum... quantum, so (as) much... as

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor], num. adj., fourth

quasi, conj., as if

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., fourteen

-que, conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other

quæror, queri, questus, dep., trans.and intrans., complain, bewail, lament

questus, -a, -um, p.p. of queror

qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj., which? what?

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, that. — Often where a dem. pron. is used in English, this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever. — quō, abl. of measure of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.)

qui, qua (quae), quid, used after si, ne, ubi, etc., indef. adj., any

quicquam, see quisquam

quicumque, quae-, quod-, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whichever, whatever

quidam, quac-, quod-, (quid-), indef. adj. and pron., a certain, certain, a kind of: quidam ex militibus (one)

quidem, adv., indeed, at least, certainly: ne... quidem, not even, not... either

quīēs, -ētis, f., rest, sleep, repose
**Latin-English Vocabulary**

**quiētus — quot**

**quiētus, -a, -um** [a.p. of quiesco, keep quiet], adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable

quo [qui (old abl.), -ne]: 1. Corroborative adv.: quiō etiam, nay even, in fact.— 2. Conj. after expression of negative thought (doubt, hindrance, abstention, etc.) modified by negative word, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing): non dubito quin, I do not doubt that

quīnam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, interrog. pron., who? etc. (emph.): quibusnam manibus (with what possible?)

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., fifteen

quīngenti-, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., five hundred

quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., five at a time, five each

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj., fifty

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., five

quīnquēris, -is, f., quinquereme (a vessel with five banks of oars)

quīnquiēs [quinque], adv., five times

quīntus, -a, -um [quinque], num. adj., fifth

Quīntus, -i [quintus], m., a Roman prænomen

quis, quae, quid, cuius: 1. Interrog. adj. and pron., who? which? what? 2. Indef. pron., one, any one, anything

quisnam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, interrog. pron., who? etc. (emph.)

quispiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, any thing

quīsquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, anything

quīsequse, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., each, each one, every

quīsquis, quaequa, quicquid, cuius-cuius, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whatever

quīvis, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever)

1. quō, see qui

2. quō, adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel., whither, into which, as far as. — 3. Indef., anywhere

3. quō, conj., in order that (with comparatives), that: magis eo quam quō (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not, from (doing a thing)

quoad, conj., as far as, until, as long as

quod, conj., because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that: quod si, but if

quō minus, see 3 quo

quoniam [quom (= cum), iam], conj., inasmuch as, since, as

quoque, adv., following the word it affects, also, as well

quoqueversus or quōquōversus, adv., in every direction, all about

quot, indecl. adj.: 1. Interrog., how many? 2. Rel., as many, as many as, the number which
quotannis — redimo

quotannis [quot-annus], adv., every year, yearly

quotiens, adv.: 1. Interrog., how often? how many times? — 2. Rel., as often as

quotienscumque [quotiens], adv., however often, whenever

rādīx, -īcis, f., root. — Plur., roots (of a tree); foot (of a mountain)

rāda, -ae, f., wagon

rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough

rapiditās, -ātis [rapidus, swift], f., swiftness, rapidity

rapina, -ae [rapio, seize], f., plunder. — Plur., plundering

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, trans., snatch, seize

rārus, -ā, -um, adj., scattered, few; rare, unusual

ratiō, -onis [reo], f., a reckoning, an account. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, plan, science, manner, method, consideration: rationem habere, take an account, have regard to; rationem habere ut, take care that etc.

ratis, -īs, f., raft

ratus, -a, -um, p. p. of reor

Rauraci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine

re-, red-, prefix, back, again, away

rebelliō, -onis [re-bellum], f., renewal of war, uprising

recēns, -entis, adj., new, fresh, late

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio

receptus, -ūs [recipio], m., retreat, way of retreat, refuge

recessus, -ūs [recedo], m., retreat

recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [re-cado], intrans., fall again, fall back, fall upon, be visited, recoil, return

recipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-capio], trans., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit. — With reflexive, retreat, withdraw

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., read aloud

rēctē, adv., rightly

rēctus, -a, -um [p. p. of rego], adj., straight

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., get back, recover, regain

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- causa], trans. and intrans., refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections; followed by quin or quo minus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur)

red-, see re-

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of reigo

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [red-do (put)], trans., give back, restore, pay, render

redemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo

redeō, -dre, -diī, -duration, irr., intrans., go back, return, come down again: summa (be referred)

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actus [red-ago], trans., bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus [red-emolo], trans., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

redintegro — rémigō

redintegro, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [redintegro, make whole], trans., renew, restore, revive
reditiō, -ōnis [redeto], f., return
reditus, -īs [redeto], m., return
Redonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul, between the lower Loire and the Channel
redūcō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, trans., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back
referō, referre, rettuli, relātus, irr., trans., bring back, return, report. — Esp.: gratias (gratiam) (make return, show one’s gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back). — With reflexive, retreat; retire
reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-facio], trans., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover)
refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo
refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [re-frango], trans., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break)
refugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus, intrans., run away, escape
refulgeō, -fulgère, -fulsi, intrans., flash back, gleam, shine
rēgia, -ae [rex], f., palace
rēgiō, -ōnis, f., country, district
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [regnun], rule, reign, govern
rēgnun, -ī [cf. rego], n., kingdom, royal power, throne.— Plur., royal power
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, trans., direct, manage, rule, have control of
reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [re-iacio], trans., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off
relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p., intrans., be weakened, be deadened
relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero
relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo
reliquiō, -ōnis [re-ligo, bind]. f., religious scruple, religion, religious observance, religious matter, service of the gods, superstition
relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus, trans., leave behind, abandon, leave.— Pass., be left, remain
reliquiae, -ārum [reliquus], f., remnants
reliquus, -ā, -um, adj., left, remaining, the rest, the others, future: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.— Masc. plur. as noun, the rest
remaneō, -manere, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, intrans., remain behind, remain, stay
remedium, -ī, n., remedy, cure
rēmex, -igis [remus], m., oarsman, rower
Rēmi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belge about the present site of Rheims
rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., row
remigrō — rēs

remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., move back, return
reminiscor, -miniscī, no p.p., dep., trans. and intrans., remember
remittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, trans., let go back, send back, throw back; relax, cease to use, give up
remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p.p., intrans., soften, become feeble
removeō, -moveō, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., move back, move away, send away, remove, put out of the way.— remōtus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., far away, remote
remūneror, -āri, -ātus [re-munus], dep., trans., repay, requite
rēmus, -i, m., oar
Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the Remi
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. novus], trans., renew
renuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring back word, report, proclaim
reor, rērī, ratus, dep., trans., think
repellō, repellere, reppuli, repulsus, trans., drive back, repulse: ab hac spe repulsi, disappointed in this hope
repente, adv., suddenly
repentīnus, -a, -um [repens, sudden], adj., sudden, hasty, unexpected.— repentīnō, abl. as adv., suddenly
reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertus [re-pario, get], trans., find out, discover: reperti sunt multi, there were many
repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitus, trans., seek again, demand back, ask for: poenas (inflict, exact)
rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus [cf. serpens], intrans., creep, crawl
repōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, trans., put back, store away
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., carry back
repperī, see reperiō
repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make present, do at once
reprehendō,-hendere,-hendi,-hensus, trans., blame, censure
repressus, -a, -um, p.p. of reprimo
reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus -[re-premo], trans., check
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., spurn, refuse, reject
repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., resist; be in opposition
repulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of repello
requiro, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus [re-quāero], trans., seek again, request, need, miss: in se indulgentiam (lament the loss of)
rēs, reī, f., property, business, affair, matter, thing (in the most general sense), fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act.— Often to be translated from the context.—Esp.: imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; commutatio rerum, change of fortune; re vera, in truth, really; rem gerere, conduct operations, fight; res secundae, prosperity; res publica, commonwealth; res familiaris, property;
rescindō — rōstrum

res militaris, warfare; res frumentaria, grain supply; novae res, revolution; quà rē, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance etc.), why; quam ob rem, interrog., why? — rel., on which account, for which reason

rescindō, -scindere, -scīdī, -scissus, trans., cut away, break down, destroy
resciscē, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, trans., find out, learn, discover
rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, trans., transfer (by writing)
resēdisse, see resīdo
reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve
residō, -sīdere, -sēdī, intrans., sit down; settle down, become calm, subside
resistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., intrans., stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain
respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [re-specio, look], trans. and intrans., look back, look back at, consider, regard
respondeō, -spōndēre, -spōndī, -spōn-sus, trans. and intrans., reply, answer
respōnsum, -ī [n. p. p. of respondeō], n., reply. — Plur., reply (of several parts)
rēs pública, see res
respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p. p., trans., spit out; spurn, reject
restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stītūtus

[re-statuo], trans., replace, restore, make anew
retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineō
retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [re-teneō], trans., hold back, retain, maintain, restrain (quin, from doing something), arrest: memoria (presērve)
retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, trans., drag back, bring back
revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, trans., tear away, pull away
revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, intrans., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return, go back, come back
revinciō, -vincere, -vīnxi, -vincitus, trans., make fast, fasten, bind
revoćō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call away, call off, recall
rēx, régis, m., king
Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine
Rhodanōs, -ī, m., the Rhone
Rhodiōs, -a, -um, adj., of Rhodes (an island S.W. of Asia Minor), Rhodian. — Masc. as noun, Rhodian
ripa, -ae, f., bank
risus, -ūs, m., laugh, laughter
rivus, -ī, m., brook, stream
rōbur, -oris, n., oak [powerful robustus, -a, -um [rōbur], strong,
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., ask, request, ask for
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome
Rōmanōs, -a, -um, m., Roman. — Masc. as noun, a Roman
rōstrum, -ī [rodo, gnaw], n., beak.
— Esp. of a ship, beak, ram
rotā, -ae, f., wheel
ruber, -bra, -brum, adj., red
rubus, -i, m., bramble
Rūfus, -i, m., a Roman prænomen
rūmor, -ōris, m., rumor, report
rūpēs, -is, f., cliff, rock
rūrsus, adv., back, again, in turn
Rūtēnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sābinus, -i, m., a Roman family name; see Titurius
Sabis, -is, m., a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre
sacrificium, -i [sacrum, sacred thing, facio], n., sacrifice
sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacrificium], trans. and intrans., sacrifice
saepe, adv., often: minime saepe, most rarely—saepius, comp., many times, repeatedly
saepenumerō, adv., oftentimes, many times
saepēs, -is [cf. saepio, hedge in], f., hedge
saeviō, -īre, -īi, -itūrus [saevus, fierce], intrans., be angry, rage, be violent
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow
sagittārius, -ī [sagitta], m., archer, bowman
sagulum, -i, n., cloak (military)
Saguntum, -i, n., a town of eastern Spain
Salmydessus, -i, m., a town in Thrace
saltus, -ūs, m., wooded height, mountain pass

salūs, -ūtis, f., health, well being, welfare, safety
sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sānctus [cf. sacer, sacred], trans., make sacred, solemnly establish (by law).—sānctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, m., blood
sānitās, -ātis [sanus], f., sound mind, good sense
Santonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe on the western coast of Gaul
Santonī, see Santones
sarcina, -ae [sarcio, sew up], f., pack.—Plur., baggage (soldiers’ packs)
sarmentum, -i, n., only in plur., fagots, brushwood
satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.—Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere, consider sufficient, be satisfied
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, intrans., satisfy, make amends, excuse one’s self, apologize
satisfactiō, -ōnis [satisfacio], f., apology
saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded
saxum, -i, n., rock
scālae, -ārum [scando, climb], f. plur., ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat
scelērātus, -a, -um [scelus], adj., villainous, accursed
scelus, -eris, n., crime, wickedness
scientia, -ae [sciens, pres. p. of scio], f., knowledge, skill
scilicet [scire licet], adv., evidently
scindō — sententia

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, trans., cut, tear, tear up
sciō, sciō, scīvī, scītus, trans., know
Scipio-ōnis, m., a Roman family name.
— Esp.: 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, who defeated Hannibal at Zama
scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, trans. and intrans., write
scūtum, -i, n., shield
se, see sui
secessō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, intrans., go apart, go away, withdraw
secrētō [secretus, separate], adv., in private, privately
sectō, -onis [seco, cut], f., booty
sectūra, -ae [seco, cut], f., mine, shaft
secum, for cum se
secundum, see secundus
secundus, -a, -um [sequor], adj., following, second; favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity. — secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with: secundum flumen, down stream
secūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of sequor
sed, conj., but, but yet
sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen
sedēō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus, intrans., sit, be seated
sēdēs, -is [sedeo, sit], f., seat. Hence, abode, settlement
sēditiosus, -a, -um [se ditio, sedition], adj., seditious, factious

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps
Sedusīi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Germans
Segonax, -actis, m., a British king
Segontiāci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Britain
sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se-, apart, grex, flock], trans., separate, keep out, exclude
Segusiāvi, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of Gaul west of the Rhone
sēiu ngō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūnctus [se-, apart, iungō], trans., disunite, separate
semel, num. adv., once: semel atque iterum, more than once, again and again
sēmentis, -is [ semen, seed], f., a sowing: sementes facere, sow grain
sēmita, -ae, f., path
semper, adv., all the time, always
Sempronius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
sēnātor, -ōris [ senex], m., senator
sēnātus, -ūs [ senex], m., senate. — Esp., the senate (of Rome)
se nex, gen. senis, adj., old. — As noun, old man
sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., six each, six
Senonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Seine
sententia, -ae [sentio], f., opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence
sentio — sibi

sentio, sentire, sensī, sensus, trans., perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn
sentis, -is, m., brier
separātim, adv., separately, privately
separō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., separate. — Esp., separātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., separate
septem, indecl. num. adj., seven
septentriōnēs, -um [septem-triones, plow oxen], m. plur., the seven plow oxen (the stars of the Great Bear). — Hence, the north
septimus, -a, -um, num. adj., the seventh
septuāgēsimus, -a, -um [septuaginta], num. adj., the seventieth
septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., seventy
sepultūra, -ae [sepelio, bury], f., burial, burying
Sēquana, -ae, f., the Seine
Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul on the Rhone). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Sequani
sequor, sequi, secūtus, dep., trans., follow, accompany: poena (be inflicted on); fidem (come under, surrender to)
Ser., abbr. for Servius
sermō, -onis, m., conversation, talk
serō, serere, sēvī, satus, trans., plant, sow
serpēns, -entis [part. of serpo, creep], f., serpent
Sertiōrus, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

servilis, -e [servus], adj., of a slave, servile: tumultus (the servile revolt, the war of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73–71 B.C.)
Servilius, -ī, m., a gentile name
serviō, -ire, -īi, -itūrus [servus], intrans., be a slave to: rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow)
servitūs, -ūtis [servus], f., slavery, servitude
Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain)
servulus, -ī [servus], m., young slave, boy
servus, -ī, m., slave
sescenti, see sexcentī
sēsē, see sui
sēsquipedālis, -e [†sesquiped- (a foot and a half) + alis], adj., a foot and a half (thick)
sētius, adv., less: nihilō setiōs, none the less
seu, see sive
sevēritās, -ātis [severus, strict], f., strictness, harshness
sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call aside, call out
sex, indecl. num. adj., six
sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., sixty
sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., six hundred
Sextius, -ī, m., a gentile name
si, conj., if. — Esp., to see if, whether: id si fieret, should this happen
sibi, see sui
Sibusātēs — soleō

Sibusātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

sic, adv. (with v.; cf. tam with adj. or adv., ita with either), so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus.—
sic utī, as conj., just as, just as if

ee, adj., like, similar

simulātōriō, -onis [simulō], f., pretense, deceit
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., pretend

siccitas, -atis [siccus], dry, drought, dry weather

siccus, -i, adj.

siccus, -i, m., sun. — Also personified, Sol, the Sun

situs, -ūs, m., situation, position

sive (seu), conj., if either, or if: sive ...

soldurius, -ī, m., soldurius, follower

soleō, solēre, solitus, semi-dep., intrans., be wont, be accustomed
sōlitūdō — stipendium

solitudo, -inis [solus], f., loneliness.  
Hence, wilderness
sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
stir up, instigate, offer bribes to, tempt
solum, -ī, n., soil, foundation, bottom, earth: solum agri, bare ground
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.— sōlum, n. acc. as adv., alone, only
solūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of solvo
solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, trans.,
unbind, lose. — Esp., with or without navem (naves), set sail
somnus, -ī, m., sleep
soror, -ōris, f., sister: soror ex matre, half sister
sors, sortis, f., lot (for divination), chance
Sōsilus, -ī, m., a Spartan (of Sparta, a city in Greece), teacher and historian
Sōtiātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus, trans., scatter, sprinkle
spatium, -ī, n., space, extent, distance; time, space of time: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for
speciēs, -ēī [specio, see], f., sight, show, appearance
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [specio, see], trans. and intrans., look at, regard; face
speculātor, -ōris [speculor], m., spy, scout
speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculator],
adj., scouting, reconnoitering (navigia)
speculor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans. and intrans., spy, reconnoiter: speculandī causa, as a spy
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spēs], trans., hope, hope for, expect
spēs, -ēī, f., hope, expectation: summam in spem venire, have the greatest hope
spiritus, -ūs [spiro, breathe], m., breath.—Also, spirit. Hence, in plur., pride, arrogance, temper
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., rob, deprive
sponte (abl.), f., of one's own accord, voluntarily
stabilitās, -ātis [stabilis, steady], f., steadiness, firmness
stabulum, -ī [sto], n., stable, stall
statim [sto], adv., at once, immediately
statiō, -ōnis [sto], f., position, post, picket: in statione, on guard
statua, -ae [sto], f., statue
statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [status], trans., set up; establish, resolve upon, determine, decide
statūra, -ae [sto], f., stature, size
status, -ūs [sto], m., position, condition, situation
stetī, see stō
stipendiārius, -a, -um [stipendium],
adj., tributary, under tribute
stipendium, -ī [stips, gift, pendo], n., tribute
sto — subsum

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, intrans., stand, abide by
strāmentum, -ī, n., straw, thatch
strepitus, -ūs [strepo, roar], m., noise, confused din
stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictus, trans., draw, unsheathe
studeō, studere, studui, no p. p. [studium], intrans., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (with dat.)
studium, -ī, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm; a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation
stultē, adv., foolishly
stupēō, -ère, -uī, intrans., be stunned, be amazed
sub, prep. (a) With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes
(b) With acc. (of motion towards a place), under, close to.
— Of time, toward, just before:
sub vesperum
(c) In composition, as adv., under; up to; secretly; in succession; slightly
subducō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., draw up, lead up: navem (beach, draw up)
subēō, -ère, -īi, -itus, irr., trans., go under, undergo, come up, approach
subfodiō,-fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, trans., dig under, stab (underneath)
subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of subfodiō
subiciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectus [subjectio], trans., throw under, place below, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — subjectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near
subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [sub-ago], trans., bring under, subdue
subitō, see subitus
subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of suboe], adj., sudden, quick, hasty. — subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly
sublātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tollō
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., lighten, raise, raise up, assist. — With reflexive, rise up. — sublevātus, p. p., supporting one's self
sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake
subluō, -luere, -lūtus, trans., wash beneath, wash
subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., supply, furnish, provide
submitto, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., send up, send to one's assistance, reënforce
submoveō, -movere, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., drive off, dislodge
subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, trans., dig under, undermine
subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow on, follow, succeed to
subsidium, -ī [sub-sedeo, sit], n., reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance
subsistō, -sistere, -stī, no p. p., intrans., stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancora (hold)
subsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be under, be near, be close by, approach
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**subtrahō — superō**

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, *trans.*, take away, carry away

subvectīō, -ōnis [subvehō], f., bringing up, transportation, conveyance

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, bring up

subvenīō, -venīre, -venī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come under, come to the support of, assist

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [sub-cedo], *trans.* and *intrans.*, come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper

succeedō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnus, *trans.*, set on fire

successus, -ūs [succeedo], *m.*, close approach

succidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [sub-cedo], *trans.*, cut under, cut down

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -currūrus [sub-curro], *intrans.*, run to support, run to help, succor

sucus, -i, *m.*, juice

sudis, -is, *f.*, stake

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m.* *plur.*, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Swabian. —

*As noun, a Swabian (man or woman)*

Suessionēs, -um, *m.* *plur.*, a tribe of the Belgae

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub-facīo], *trans.*, appoint, choose; *intrans.*, be sufficient, be adequate

suffrāgium, -i, *n.*, ballot, vote

Sugambri, -ōrum, *m.* *plur.*, a German tribe

sui, sibi, sē, *reflex. pron.*, himself, etc. — *Often to be translated by the personal pron.*, he, etc.; also, each other. — *Esp.*, *inter se*, from (with, by, etc.) each other

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, L. Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator

Sulpicius, -i, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be (exist). — *Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula).*

— *Phrases*: sibi esse in animo, that they had in mind, intended; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)

summa, -ae, *f.*, top; sum, total, main part: belli (the general management, the chief control); imperi (chief command)

summus, see superus

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus [sub-emō, take], *trans.*, take, get, assume: sumere supplicium de, inflict punishment on; laborem (spend); vitam (take)

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sumptus], *adj.*, expensive, costly

sūmptus, -ūs [sumo], *m.*, expense

superbē, *adv.*, haughtily, arrogantly

superior, see superus

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *trans.* and *intrans.*, be superior to, prevail,
supersedeō — Syria

overcome, conquer, defeat; survive (vitā)
supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, intrans., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from
supersum, -esse, -suī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be over, be left, remain, survive
superus, -a, -um, adj., higher, being above (of space only). — Comp., superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), superior, victorious. — Superl., supremus, highest. — Also, summus, highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent
suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus [sub-peto, aim at], intrans., be on hand, be supplied, hold out
supplēmentum, -ī, n., supply, reinforcement
supplex, -icis, c., suppliant
suppliētiō, -onis [supplico, supplicate], f., supplication; a thanksgiving (to the gods, decreed by the senate)
suppliciter, adv., as suppliants
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment (usually of death)
suppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [sub-pono], trans., place under
supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-porto], trans., bring up, convey, supply, furnish
suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., above, beyond
suprēmus, see superus
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [subs (= sub), capio], trans., take upon one's self (sibi), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo
suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnus [subs (= sub), pendo], trans., hang up, hang
suspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of suspicor
suspicīō, -onis [sub-specio, look], f., suspicion, an indication: neque abest suspicio, and suspicion is not wanting
suspicor, -āri, -ātus [cf. suspicio], dep., trans., suspect: p.p. as adj., under suspicion
sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sustineo], trans. and intrans., sustain, hold out
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [subs (= sub), teneo], trans. and intrans., hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; sustinere se, stand up
sustuli, see tollo
suus, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj. (reflex., referring back to the subject), his, her, its, their, etc. — Often without a noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions; se suae omnia, themselves and all they had
Symplegādes, -um, f. plur., fabulous rocks, dashing against each other, in the Black Sea
Syria, -ae, f., a country bordering on the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea
T., abbr. for Titus

Tabellarius, -i [tabula], m., letter carrier, messenger

Tabernaculum, -i [taberna, hut], n., tent

Tabula, -ae, f., record (written on a board covered with wax), document, list

taceo, tacere, tacui, tacitus, trans. and intrans., be silent; keep secret, conceal. — tacitus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., silent, in silence

talis, -e, adj., such, so great, this (of something preceding), the following

tam, adv. (with adj., p., or adv.; cf. sic) so, so much

tamen, adv., yet, nevertheless, still, however

Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames, a river of Britain

Tametsi, conj., although, though

Tamphilus, -i, m., see Baebius

Tamquam, conj., as if

tandem, adv., at last. — In questions, to add emphasis, pray, tell me, or translated only by emphasis

tantō [tactus], adv., by so much

tantopere, see opus

Tantulus, -a, -um [tactus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling

Tantummodo, adv., only, merely

Tantus, -a, -um, adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude): tantus est, is of so much weight; tanta exiguitas temporis, so little time.

— tantum, n. as adv., only, merely

Tarbelli, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania

tardē, adv., slowly, tardily, with delay

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tardus], trans., retard, check, hinder

tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish

Tarusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Aquitania

Tasquetius, -i, m., a prince of the Carnutes

taurus, -i, m., bull

Taximagulus, -i, m., a prince of Britain

Tectosagēs, -um, m. plur., a branch of the Volcae

tēctum, -i [n. p.p. of tegō], n., roof, house

tēctus, -a, -um, p.p. of tegō

tegimentum, -i [tego], n., covering
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, trans., cover, thatch, hide, conceal
tēlum, -i, n., weapon (of offense), javelin, spear

Temerarius, -a, -um [temere], adj., reckless, rash, hasty

temerē, adv., blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily

temeritās, -tātis [temere], f., indiscretion, rashness, haste, foolhardiness

tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of a wagon etc.)

Temperantia, -ae [temperans, pres. p. of tempero], f., self-control, prudence

Temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tempus], trans. and intrans., control; refrain, restrain one’s self from (quin)
tempestas, -ātis [tempus], f., season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, storm
templum, -ī, n., temple
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., try, attempt, make an attempt on: per vim temptō, try to force
tempus, -ōris, n., a division of time, a time, time (in general), occasion, opportunity, a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always
tenctēri, -ōrum, m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, trans., stretch, stretch out, pitch (tent)
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, no p. p., trans., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: se tenere, remain; memoriā tenere, remember
tener, -era, -erum, adj., delicate, tender, young
tenuis, -e, adj., thin, delicate, feeble, poor
tenuiter [tenuis, weak], adv., thinly, slightly
ter, num. adv., three times, thrice
Terentius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., C. Terentius Varro, consul, defeated by Hannibal at Cannae
tergum, -i, n., the back: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear
ternī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., three each, three at once
terra, -ae, f., earth; land, region; ground. — Plur., world

Terrasidius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], adj., of earth
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, trans., frighten, alarm, deter
terribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, frightful
territō, -āre, no perf., no p.p. [terreo], trans., frighten
terror, -ōris [terreo], m., fright, alarm, panic
tertiō [tertius], adv., for the third time
tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third (in order); pars (one third)
testamentum, -ī [testor, testify], n., a will
testimonium, -ī [testis], n., proof, evidence
testis, -is, c., witness
testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise. — Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another)
Teutonēs, -um (-i, -ōrum), m. plur., a great German people in Jutland, who, with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C.; defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquae Sextiae
texō, -ere, -uī, -tus, trans., weave
Thermopylae, -ārum, f., a pass on the east coast of Greece, site of three famous battles
Thēseus, -ī, m., a mythical king of Athens
Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly, a country in northern Greece
Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace, a country north of Greece
Ti., abbr. for Tiberius
Tiberis — trāiectus

Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated

Tiberius, -i, m., a Roman prænomen (first name)

tignum, -i, n., a log, a timber, a pile

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., of the Tigurini. — Masc. plur., the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii

timeō, -ere, -uī, no p. p., trans. and intrans., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear). — timentēs, pres. p. as noun, the timid, the fearful

timīdē, adv., with timidity: non timide, fearlessly

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid

timor, -ōris [timeō], m., alarm, fear, dread

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīunctus, trans., wet, dye

Titurius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Q. Titurius Sabinius, a legatus of Cæsar, killed in an ambushade prepared by Ambiorix

Titus, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation)

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, trans., raise, carry, carry off: ancoras (weigh). Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off). — Esp., sublātus, -a, -um, p. p., elated

Tolōsa, -ae, f., an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m. plur., the people of Toulouse

torrentum, -ī [torqueō, twist], n., torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles)

torreō, torrēre, torrui, tostus, trans., scorch, burn

tot, indecl. adj., so many
totidem, indecl. adj., just as many, the same number

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout

trabs, trabis, f., a beam, a timber

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of trahō

trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītus [trans-do (put)], trans., hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend. — Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate, relate

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [trans-duco], trans., lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer

trāgula, -ae, f., javelin

trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, trans., drag, drag along, drag in, draw in

trāciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [trans-iacio], trans., throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of tracio

trāiectus, -ūs [tracio], m., passage, route
trānō — trini

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [trans-no, swim], trans. and intrans., swim across

tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillus, still], f., stillness, calm

trānō, prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of.— In composition, as adv., over, across, through

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, adj., Transalpine

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-sūrus [trans-scando, climb], intrans., climb across, board (ships)

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -ītus, irr., trans. and intrans., cross, pass over, pass through, pass by

trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., carry over, transfer, change the place of: bellum ad aliquem (direct against)

trānsfigō,-figere,-fixī,-fixus, trans., pierce through

trānsgreōdior, -gredi, -gressus [trans-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., step across, step over, cross

trānsitus, -ūs [transeo], m., going over, crossing

trānslātus, -a, -um, p.p. of transfero

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring over, carry over

Trānsrhenānus, -a, -um, adj., living across the Rhine.— Masc. plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine

trānstrum, -ī, n., thwart, rib (of a ship)

trānsversus, -a, -um [p.p. of trans-vero, turn across], adj., transverse: fossa (a cross ditch)

Trasimēnus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, famous for Hannibal’s victory over the Romans in 217 B.C.

Trebia, -ae, m., a river in northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C.

Trebius, -ī, m., a gentile name

Trebonius, -ī, m., a gentile name
trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., three hundred
trepidō,-āre,-āvī,-ātus, trans.and intrans., tremble at; shake, tremble

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three

Trēverī,-ōrum, m. plur. (sing. Trē-vir), a people in northeastern Gaul

Tribocēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

tribūnus, -ī, m. (with or without militum or militaris), tribune of the soldiers, military tribune

tribuo,-uere,-ui,-ūtus [tribus, tribe], trans., distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: magno-pere virtuti (attribute it so very much to valor)

tribūtum, -ī [n. p.p. of tribuo], n., tribute

triduum, -ī [tres-dies], n., three days’ time, three days

triennium, -ī [tres-annus], n., three years

trigintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty
trīnī,-ae,-a, distrib.num.adj., plur., three each, three sets of
Trinovantes, -um, m. plur., a people of southern Britain

Tripartitus, -a, -um [tres-partitus], adj., divided in three. — Esp., tripartitum, abl. as adv., in three divisions

Triplex, -icis [tres; cf. plico, fold], adj., threefold: acies (triple, in three divisions or lines)

Trirēmis, -is, f., trireme (a vessel with three banks of oars)

Tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy, dejected

Tristitia, -ae [tristis], f., sadness

Truncus, -i, m., trunk

Tū, tuī, plur. vōs, pers. pron., 2d person, you

Tuba, -ae, f., trumpet

Tueor, tueī, tūtus, dep.: trans., watch, guard, protect

Tuli, perf. of fero

Tulingi, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

Tullius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Tullus, -i, m., a Roman family name

Tum, adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also

tumultus, -ūs [cf. tumeo, swell], m., uproar, confusion, commotion. — Esp., uprising, revolt

Tumulus, -i [tumeo, swell], m., hill, mound

Tunc [ tum ], adv., then, at that time, just then

Turma, -ae, f., squadron, troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men)

Turonī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Also called Turones

Turpis, -e, adj., ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable

Turpitūdō, -inis [turpis], f., baseness; disgrace

Turris, -is, f., tower

Tūtus, -a, -um [p.p. of tueor], adj., protected, safe, secure. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely

Ubi, adv. and conj., where, in which:

ubi ubi, in the place where. — Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as

Ubiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine

Ubique, adv., everywhere, anywhere

Ulciscor, ulcisciō, ultus, dep., trans., punish, take vengeance on, avenge

Ullus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., a single, any. — Masc. as pronoun, anybody, any one

Ulterior, -us, -ōris [ultra], adj., farther, more remote. — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last: ultimi, those in the rear

Ultrā, adv., and prep. with acc., beyond

Ultrō, adv., to the farther side, beyond: ulto citroque, this way and that, back and forth. — Esp.: voluntarily, freely, besides

Ultus, -a, -um, p.p. of ulciscor

Umbra, -ae, f., shadow, shade

Umquam, adv. (with neg.), ever: neque . . . umquam, and never
una, adv., together, along with them etc., at the same time, in the same place, also
unde, adv., whence, from which
undecimus, -a, -um [unus-decimus], num. adj., eleventh
undique, adv., from every side, from all quarters
unguentum, -i, n., ointment
universus, -a, -um [unus-versus, p.p. of verto], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire
ünus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., one, a single, the same, alone, only. — Neut. as noun, one thing
urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], adj., of a city. — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city
urbs, urbis, f., city. — Esp., the city (Rome)
ūrō, īrere, īssī, īstus, trans., burn
Usipetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the lower Rhine
ūisque, adv., all the way, even to, all the time, till, even till
ūsus, -a, -um, p.p. of ūtor
ūsus, -ūs [UTOR], m., use, practice, experience; advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need; ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, turn out, come to pass
ut (uti), adv. and conj.: (a) Interrog., how? — (b) Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was: ut semel, when once, as soon as. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that; after verbs of fearing, that not
uter, -tra, -trum, gen. -trīus, adj. and pron.: (a) Interrog., which (of two)? — (b) Rel., whichever (of two), the one who or which (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., whether
utere, utra-, utram-, gen. utrīus-, adj. and pron., both: medium
utriusque, between the two. — Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties
uti, see ut
ūtilis, -e, adj., useful, of use, helpful
ụtilitas, -ātis [utilis], f., advantage, benefit, service
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., intrans., with abl., use, exercise, practice, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess
utpote, adv., inasmuch as, seeing that (see the note on lviii, 5)
utrimque, adv., on both sides
utrobīque, adv., on both sides, in both ways
utrum, see uter
uxor, -ōris, f., wife

V, Roman numeral for five
Vacalus, -i, m., the west branch of the Rhine at its mouth
vacātiō, -ōnis [vaco], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity
vacō — vēnēnātus

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste

vacuus, -a, -um [cf. vaco], adj., free, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.)

vadum, -i [cf. vado, go], n., ford.— Plur., ford, shoals, shallows.— vado, by fording

vagina, -ae, f., sheath

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., roam about, roam, wander

valēns, -entis, pres. p. of valeo

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, intrans., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.— Often with n. pron. or adj. as acc. of kindred meaning: plus valēre, be more powerful; pluralum valēre, be very strong, have great influence; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiīs valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry. — valēns, pres. p. as adj., strong

Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

valētūdō, -inis [valeo], f., health.— Also, ill health, illness

valēs, -is, f., valley

vāllum, -ī, n., palisade, rampart

Vangionēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine

varius, -a, -um, adj., various, diverse

vās, vāsis (plur. vāsa, -ōrum), n., vessel, jar

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastus], trans., lay waste, devastate, ravage

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; immense, vast

vāticinātīō, -onis [vaticinor, foretell], f., divination

-ve, conj., enclitic, or

vectīgal, -ālis [cf. vēho, carry], n., tribute.— Plur., revenues

vectīgālis, -e [cf. vēho, carry], adj., tributary: vectīgāles habent, make tributary

vehementer [vēhemens, violent], adv., violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly

vehō, vēhere, vēxī, vectus, trans., carry, bear.— Pass., be borne, go, ride, sail

vel, conj., or: vel . . . vel, either . . . or.— As adv., even

Velānius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

Velōcassēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Senones

vellus, -ēris, n., fleece

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, quick

vēllum, -ī, n., curtain, veil; sail

velut, adv., even as, just as: velut si, just as if

vēnatiō, -onis [venor, hunt], f., hunting, the chase.— Plur., hunting, hunting excursions

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [venum, sale, do (put)], trans., put to sale, sell

Venellī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul

vēnēnātus, -a, -um [venenum], adj., poisonous, venomous
venenum, -i, n., poison

Veneti, -ōrum, m. plur., a coast tribe of western Gaul

Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of the Veneti

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, in-trans., come, go.—See also usus

ventus, -I, in., wind: vento se dare, run before the wind

Venusia, -ae, f., a town in southern Italy

Veragri, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people on the upper Rhone

Verbigenus, -ī, m., a canton of the Helvetii

verbum, -i, n., word: pluribus verbis, at great length; verba dare, deceive, outwit; facere verba, speak

Vercingetorix, -īgis, m., a young noble of the Arverni, head of the Gauls in their great war for independence

vereor, -ērī, -itus, dep., trans. and intrans., fear, be afraid, dread.—

veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p., in-trans., incline, slope

vergobretus, -ī, m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hāedui

verīsimilis, -e [verus-similis], adj., probable, likely

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor

vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, certainly.

—With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [verto], trans., turn, deal with.—Esp., in the pass. as dep., engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context)

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto

versus [p. p. of verto], adv., and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: ad (in) . . . versus, towards

versus, -ūs [verto], m., a turning; a verse (of poetry)

Verticō, -ōnis, m., one of the Nervii

vertō, vertere, verti, versus, trans., turn: terga (turn and flee)

Verucloetius, -ī, m., a noble of the Helvetii

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; right: rerum, in truth, really.—Neut. as noun, the truth

verūtum, -i, n., light spear, dart

Vesontio, -onis, in., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon

vesper, -erī, m., evening

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., your, yours

vēstigium, -i, n., footprint, footprint, track.—Esp., eodem vestigio, in the same spot

vestis, -is, f., garment, robe, dress

vestitus, -ūs [vestio, clothe], m., clothing, garments

veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], adj., veteran

vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus, trans., forbid
vetus, -eris, adj., old, former, of long standing

vēxītum, -i, n., flag

vēxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., harass, annoy, over-run, ravage

viā, -ae, f., road, way, route, march

viātor, -ōris [via], m., traveler

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., twenty (apiece)

Vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., twentieth: secundo et vicesimo, twenty-second

vīcis (gen.), f., change, turn: in vicem, in turn

vīctima, -ae, f., victim, sacrifice

vīctor, -ōris [vincō], m., victor.—Often as adj., triumphant, victorious

vīctorīa, -ae [victor], f., victory

vīctus, -a, -um, p.p. of vincō

vīctus, -ūs [vivo], m., life; means of living, food

vīcus, -i, m., village

vīdeo, vidēre, vīdi, vīsus, trans., see, observe, examine, take care.—In pass., be seen; seem, seem best

Vienna, -ae, f., a town of the Allobroges, or the Rhone, now Vienne

vigilia, -ae [vigil, awake], f., watch.

The Romans divided the night into four watches

vigintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty

vimen, -inis, n., twig (flexible, for weaving)

vincō, vincere, vīnxi, vīctus, trans., bind, fetter

vincō, vincere, vīcī, vīctus, trans. and intrans., conquer, defeat, prevail

vīncītus, -a, -um, p.p. of vincō

vīnculum, -i [vincō], n., chain: ex vinculis, in chains

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., demand; avenge: in aliquem (inflict punishment); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of Gaul)

vīnea, -ae, f., vine arbor; shed (defense, for a besieging party)

vīnum, -i, n., wine

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., abuse: hospites (injure)

vir, vīri, m., man, husband

vīrēs, see vis

virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin

virgultum, -i, n., only in plur., shrubbery, thicket, bushes

Viridomārus, -i, m., a nobleman of the Hāedui

Viridovix, -icis, m., a prince of the Venelli

vīritim [vīr], adv., man by man, to each separately

Viromandui, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe near the Remi

virtūs, -ūtis [vīr], f., manliness, valor, courage.—Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue; plur., merits, brave acts

vis, vis, f., force, might, violence.—Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vim facere, use violence.—Plur., vīrēs, strength, force, powers, bodily vigor

visus, -a, -um, p.p. of video

visus, -ūs, m., sight, vision
vita — Zētēs

vita, -ae [cf. vivo], f., life, the course of life
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., escape, avoid, dodge
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, intrans., live: lacte (live on)
vivus,-a,-um [vivo], adj., alive, living
vīx, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely
vōbīs, see tu

Vocātēs, -ium, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call by name, call, summon, invite
Vocontiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe in southeastern Gaul
Volcae, -ārum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province
Volcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan (the god of fire and metals)
volgus, -ī, n., the crowd, the common people.—volgō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere
volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of volnero
volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volnus], trans., wound, hurt
volnus, -eris, n., wound
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., fly
volō, velle, volui, no p. p., irr., trans. and intrans., wish, be willing, want: quid sibi vellent, what they wanted

Volsō, -ōnis, m., see Manlius
voltus, -ūs, m., look, expression, countenance, face:voltum fingere, conceal one's feelings
volucrē, -cris, -cre [cf. volo, fly], adj., winged; fem. as noun, bird
voluntās, -ātis [volo, wish], f., willingness, consent, desire, will, approval
voluptās, -ātis [cf. volo, wish], f., pleasure, delight
Volusēnus, -i, m., a Roman family name. Esp., C. Volusenus, one of Cæsar’s officers
Vorēnus, -i, m., L. Vorenus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army
vōs, see tu

Vosegus, -i, m., the Vosges (mountains in eastern Gaul)
voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtus, trans. and intrans., vow, make a vow
vōx, vōcis [cf. voco], f., voice. word, expression, shout.—Collectively, cries, words, talk.—Plur., talk, reports

Χ, Roman numeral for ten

Zama, -ae, f., a town in northern Africa, near which Scipio was defeated by Scipio in 202 B.C.
Zētēs, -ae, m., one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind
GRAMMATICAL INDEX

The numerals refer to sections of the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 405 ff.). References preceded by L. C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.

ablative
absolute, 117. a–f; L. C. 46
of accompaniment, 113
of accordance, 111
of agent, 104
of attendant circumstance, 112
of cause, 109
of comparison, 105
of description, 116
of duration of time, 119. note
of manner, 110
of material, 103
of means, 106
of measure (degree) of difference, 114
of origin, 102
of place from which, 101. a and note
of place in which, 120 and a
of respect (specification), 115
of separation, 101
of time at which or within which, 119
of value or price, 108
of way by which, 120. note 1, 106. a
with special words, 107. a–c

two accusatives — direct object and secondary object, 93; direct object and adjunct accusative, 94
with compounds, 95

adjectives
agreement of, 59, 62, 63
attributive, 61
comparatives, special meaning, 122
comparison, meaning, 121; regular, 14; irregular, 16
declension, first and second, 10; irregular, 11; third, 12; of comparatives, 15
denoting a part (medium, imus, summus), 125
numeral, 19
predicate, 60
substantive use, 127
superlatives, special meaning, 123; with quam, 124
with adverbial meaning, 126

adjunct accusative, 94

adverbs
comparison, 17, 18
negative, 146, 147
special meanings, 145

agreement, 58–69
aliquis, declension, 31; use, 31. a, 144. b
alius, declension, 11; used in pairs, 144. d; used twice in different cases, 144. i
alter, declension, 11. a; used in pairs, 144. d
antecedent  
in the relative clause, 140  
omission of, 142  
repetition of, 141
antequam, with indicative, 197. a;  
with subjunctive, 197. b
appositives, agreement of, 58; definition of, 54
attraction, subjunctive by, 214
base, definition of, 1. a
calendar, Roman, 227
Calends, 227. d
cardinal numerals, 19
causal clauses  
with cum, 189; denoting time and cause, 195  
with quod, quia, etc., with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b  
relative clauses of cause, 190
characteristic clauses, 177 and a
clauses  
definition, 56  
coördinate, 56. b; subordinate, 56. a;  
moods in subordinate, 174–198
coepti, conjugation, 46. I
commands, with imperative, 173;  
with subjunctive, 172. b, c
comparatives, declension, 15; special meanings of, 122, 145
comparison, of adjectives, 14, 16; clauses of, 200
complementary infinitive, 217. c
concessive clauses, with indicative, 191; with subjunctive, 192
conditional sentences (L.C. 33)  
future more probable, 199. II. a  
future less probable, 199. II. b  
past non-committal, 199. III. a  
past contrary to fact, 199. III. b  
present non-committal, 199. I. a  
present contrary to fact, 199. I. b  
in indirect discourse, 210–213
confidō, with ablative, 107, b
conjugation of verbs  
defective (coepi, memini, òdii), 46. I  
deponent (hortor, vereor, sequor, partior), 37  
impersonal (licet), 46. II  
irregular (sum, possum, prōsum, volō, nōlō, mālō, ferō, ēō, fiō), 39–45  
periphrastic (amātūrus sum, amandum sum), 38. I, II  
regular (amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō), 32–36
conjunctions, coördinating, 151. a;  
subordinating, 151. b
copula, definition of, 48. II. b; position of, L.C. 4. e
cum, as enclitic, 150. a
cum clauses  
causal, 189  
concessive, 192  
temporal, 194. a, b  
denoting time and cause, 195  
with the meaning ‘whenever,’ 196
dative  
of apparent (implied) agent, 87  
of indirect object, 82  
of possession (possessor), 88  
of purpose ("double dative"), 89  
of reference, 85  
of separation, 86  
with adjectives, 90  
with compounds, 84; explanation of, L.C. 63. note 2  
with passive of special verbs, 83. a  
with special verbs, 83; explanation of, L.C. 63. note 1
decensions  
of adjectives, 10–15
of nouns, 2–9
of pronouns, 21–31
defective verbs (*coepī, memīnī, ὅδι*), 46. I
deliberation, subjunctive of, 172. d;
in indirect discourse, 207. II. b
demonstrative pronouns, declension,
  25; uses, 134, 135
depONENT verbs (*hortor, vereor, sequor,
  partio*), 37
descriptive clauses, 177 and a
direct discourse or direct quotation,
definition, 202
domī, 'at home,' 120. a
dōnec, 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,'
  198. III. a, b
dubitō, nōn dubitō, with subjunctive,
  186
dum, 'while,' 198. I; 'as long as,'
  198. II; 'until,' 198. III. a, b
duo, declension, 20
ego, declension, 21; in nominative,
  for emphasis, 129
eō, conjugation, 43
etsi, in concessive clauses, 191
fearing, verbs of, 184
ferō, conjugation, 43
fīā, with ablative, 107. b
fīō, conjugation, 45
frētus, with ablative, 107. b
fruor, with ablative, 107. a
fungor, with ablative, 107. a
future conditions, more probable, 199.
  II. a; less probable, 199. II. b
future perfect tense, 158
future tense
  indicative, 155
  infinitive, 166. b and 3
  participle, 167
genitive, 72
  objective, 75. b
  of the whole (partitive), 76
possessive, 73
subjective, 75. a
  of description, 77
  of material, 79
  of measure, 77. b
  of value, 78
  with adjectives, 80
  with verbs, 81. a–d
gerund, 223. a–d; expressing purpose,
  225. a, b
gerundive, 224. a–d; expressing purpose,
  225. a, b; in -i with *mei, tiē, suī, nostrī, and vestī*, 224. c
hic, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a,
  L. C. 57. a
hindering and opposing, verbs of,
  185
historical infinitive, 218
historical present, 153. a
īdem, declension, 25
īdes, 227. d
ille, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a,
  L. C. 57. a
imperative, in commands, 173 and
  note; in indirect discourse, 205,
  206
impersonal verbs, conjugation (*licet*),
  46. II; definition, 66
implied indirect discourse, 208. b
indefinite pronouns, declension (*quis, quī, quisque, quīdam, quisquam, alīquī*), 28–31; uses, 31. a, 144.
  a–d
indicative mood, 168
  in causal clauses, 188. a
  in concessive clauses, 191
in conditional clauses, 199. I. a, II. a, III. a
in questions, 170
in relative clauses, 178
in statement of facts, 169
in temporal clauses, 194. a, 196, 197. a, 198. I, II, III. a
indirect discourse
definition, 203
conditional sentences in, 210-213
declarative sentences in, 204 and a
imperative sentences in, 205
prohibitions in, 206
questions in, real, 207. I; rhetorical, 207. II. a, b
subordinate clauses in, mood of, 208; tense of, 209 and note
indirect questions, 201
infinitive mood
definition, 215
as object, 217. a–c
as subject, 216. a, b
complementary, 217. c
historical, 218
in indirect discourse, 217. b, 204
tenses of, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1–3
intensive pronoun, ipse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b
interest, with genitive, 81. c
interrogative particles, 170. a. 1–3, b. 1, 2
interrogative pronoun, quis, declension, 27
intransitive verbs, definition, 50; dative with, 83
ipse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b
irregular verbs, conjugation, 39–45
is, declension, 25; uses, 135
iste, declension, 25; use, L.C. 57. a
licet, conjugation, 46. II
locative case, 120. a
mālō, conjugation, 42
memini, conjugation, 46. I
memory, verbs of, 81. a
mille, declension, 20; use, 20. note
moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
-ne, in questions, 170. a. 1, b. 1
nē, conjunction
general use, 147
with clauses of purpose, 174
with hortative subjunctive, 172. a
with optative subjunctive, 172. c
with subjunctive in prohibitions, 172. c
with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 184; after verbs of hindering etc., 185
negatives, 146 and a, 147
neuter, declension, 11. a
nōli, conjugation, 42; use, 172. c. note 1, 173. note
nominate, as subject or predicate of a finite verb, 70; as subject of the historical infinitive, 71
nōn, 146 and a; with clauses of result, 179
Nones, 227. d
nōnne, 170. a. 2
nōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
nouns
first declension, 2
second declension, 3
third declension, 4–6
fourth declension, 7
fifth declension, 8
special declensions (deus, domus, vis, iter), 9
as predicates or appositives, 58
nullus, declension, 11.
num, in direct questions, 170. a. 3; in indirect questions, 201. note
umerals, 19

object, direct, 91; indirect, 82
objective genitive, 75. b
ódi, conjugation, 46. I
optative subjunctive, 172. e. 1-3
opus est, with ablative, 107. c
order of words, L. C. 1-4, a-e
ordinal numerals, 19

paenitet, with genitive, 81. b
participles
definition, 219
as nouns, 221
declension of present active, 13
equivalent to clauses, 220. a-e
in the periphrastic conjugations, 222
tenses of, 167; wanting, L. C. 45

passive voice, intransitive verbs in, 83. a; dative retained with, 83. a
past absolute, 156. b
past participle, with habeō, 156. b.
note
past perfect tense, indicative, 157; subjunctive, 159. c
past tense, indicative, 154; subjunctive, 159. b

perfect tense
indicative, 156. a, b
infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 2
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a

periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
active use, 222. I
passive use, 222. II
impersonal use, 222. II. note, L. C. 53

personal pronouns
declension, 21
in the nominative, 129
of the third person, 130
with -cum as enclitic, 150. a
with gerundive, 224. c

phrase, definition, 51

place
from which, 101. a and note
in which, 120 and a
to which, 97 and note

plús, declension, 15

possessive pronominal adjectives,
declension, 23, 24; use. 131.

postquam, conjugation, 40

potential subjunctive, 172. f
potior, with ablative, 107. a; with

predicate, definition, 48. II and a

predicate adjective, 60

predicate noun, agreement, 58

prepositions
use, 148
with ablative, 150
with accusative, 149

present tense
historical, 153. a
indicative, 153
infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a
with dum, 198. I

primary tenses, 161
126 GRAMMATICAL INDEX

priusquam, with indicative, 197. a; with subjunctive, 197. b

prohibitions, 172. c and note 1; in indirect discourse, 206

pronouns, declensions, 21-31; uses, 128-144

prōsum, conjugation, 41

purpose clauses
adverbial, 174
relative, 175; containing a comparative, 176
substantive, 183

quam, with comparatives, 105. note 1; with superlatives, 124

quamquam, with indicative, 197

quamvis, with subjunctive, 192

quando, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b

questions
deliberative, 172. d
double, 170. b
indirect, 201
rhetorical, 171
in indirect discourse, 207. I, II. a, b
introductory discourse, 170 (entire)
quī, indefinite, declension, 28; use, 31. a

quī, relative, declension, 26; uses, 137-143. See relative pronoun

quia, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b

quidam, declension, 29; use, 144. a

quin, after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185; after nōn dubitō, 186;
in characteristic clause, L. C. 17

quis, indefinite, declension, 28; use, 31. a, 144. a

quis, interrogative, declension, 27; use, 170

quisquam, declension, 30; use, 31. a, 144. c

quisque, declension, 28

quō, with purpose clauses, 176

quoad, with indicative, 198. II, III. a; with subjunctive, 198. III. b

quod, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b; in substantive clauses of fact, 182 and a

quō minus, after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185

quoniam, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b

quotations, direct, 202; indirect, 203

reflexive pronouns
declension, 22
direct, 132
indirect, 133
with gerundive, 224. c

relative clause
antecedent in, 140
antecedent repeated in, 141
causal, 190
descriptive(characteristic), 177 and a
of fact, 178
of purpose, 175
of result, 180
preceding antecedent clause, 139

relative pronoun
agreement of, 137
agreement with predicate noun or appositive, 138
beginning a new sentence, 143
declension, 26

reminiscor, with genitive, 81. a

result clauses
adverbial, 179
relative, 180
grammatical index

substantive, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

rhetorical questions, definition, 171; in indirect discourse, 207. II. a, b

Roman calendar, 227

Roman year, 228

secondary tenses, 161

sentences, kinds of, 47. a-c; forms of, 55. a-c

separation, ablative of, 101; dative of, 86

sequence of tenses, explanation of, 161; rule for, 162

sī, with conditional clauses, 199

sōlus, declension, 11. a

stem, definition of, 1. a

subjunctive mood

after nōn dubitā, 186

after verbs of fearing, 184

after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185

by attraction, 214

in causal clauses, 188. b, 189, 190

in clauses of comparison, 200

in clauses of description, 177

in clauses of purpose, 174-176, 183

in clauses of result, 179, 180, 187

in commands, 172. b

in concessive clauses, 192

in conditional clauses, 199. I. b, II. b, III. b

in cum clauses denoting time and cause, 195

in exhortations, 172. a

in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 208

in indirect questions, 201

in prohibitions, 172. c

in questions of deliberation, 172. d

in temporal clauses, 194. b, 197. b, 198. III. b

optative, 172. e, 1, 2, 3

potential, 172. f

substantive clauses

after nōn dubitā, 186

after verbs of fearing, 184

after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185

of fact, 182 and a

of purpose, 183

of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

sum, conjugation, 39; use as copula, 48. II. b

supine, in -um, 226. a; in -ū, 226. b

suus, sui

decension, 22, 23

as direct reflexive, 132

as indirect reflexive, 133

special use with gerundive, 224. c

temporal clauses

indicative uses

with antequam or priusquam, denoting a fact, 197. a

with cum in definitive clauses, 194. a

with cum meaning 'whenever,' 196

with dum meaning 'while,' 198. I

with dum, dōnēc, or quoad meaning 'as long as,' 198. II

with dum, dōnēc, or quoad meaning 'until,' denoting a fact, 198. III. a

with postquam, ut, ubi, etc., 193
subjective uses
  with *antequam* or *priusquam*, denoting anticipation, 197.
b  with *cum* in descriptive (circumstantial) clauses, 194.
  with *cum* denoting time and cause, 195
  with *dum, dò nec*, or *quoad*, denoting anticipation, 198.
III. b
  tenses
    of the indicative, 153–158
    of the infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1–3
    of the participle, 167
    of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 160; in independent clauses, 159.
    sequence of, 161, 162
  tótus, declension, 11.
  transitive verbs, 49; object of, 91
  très, declension, 20
  tū, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

ubi, with indicative, 193
úllus, declension, 11. a; use, 31. a, 144.
únum, declension, 11
úsus est, with ablative, 107.
ut
  with clauses of purpose, 174
  with clauses of result, 179

with concessive clauses, 192
with temporal clauses, 193
uter, declension, 11. a
utinam, with the optative subjunctive, 172. c. 1–3
útor, with ablative, 107. a
utrum . . . an, 170. b. 1

velut, velut si, with subjunctive, 200
verbs
  agreement of, 65–69
  defective, conjugation, 46. I
  deponent, conjugation, 37
  impersonal, conjugation, 46. II
  intransitive, 50
  irregular, conjugation, 39–45
  moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
  periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
  uses, 222. I, II
  regular, conjugation, 32–36
tenses, see tenses
  transitive, 49
vocative, 100
volitive subjunctive, 172. c. note 2
volo, conjugation, 42
vōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

wishes, see optative subjunctive
words, order of, L. C. 1–4, a–e

year, the Roman, 228